



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

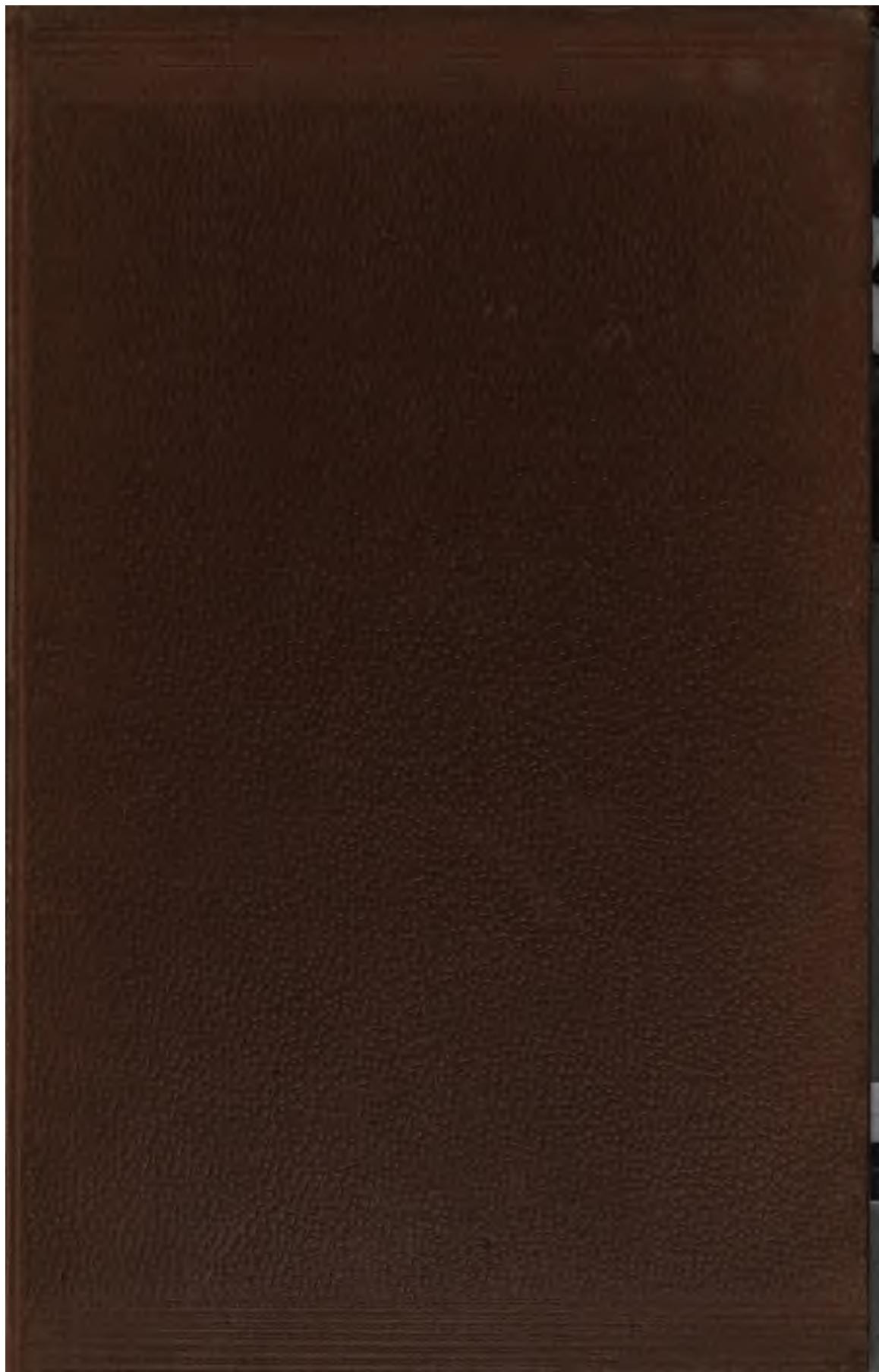
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

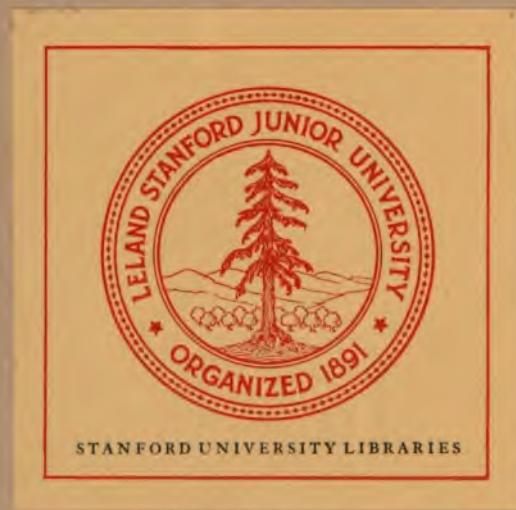
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>









PRECIS
OF THE
ARCHIVES

STANFORD UNIVERSITY
JUL 1967

STACKS
LIBRARY

CAPE OF GOOD HOPE

JANUARY, 1656—DECEMBER, 1658.

RIEBEECK'S JOURNAL, &c.

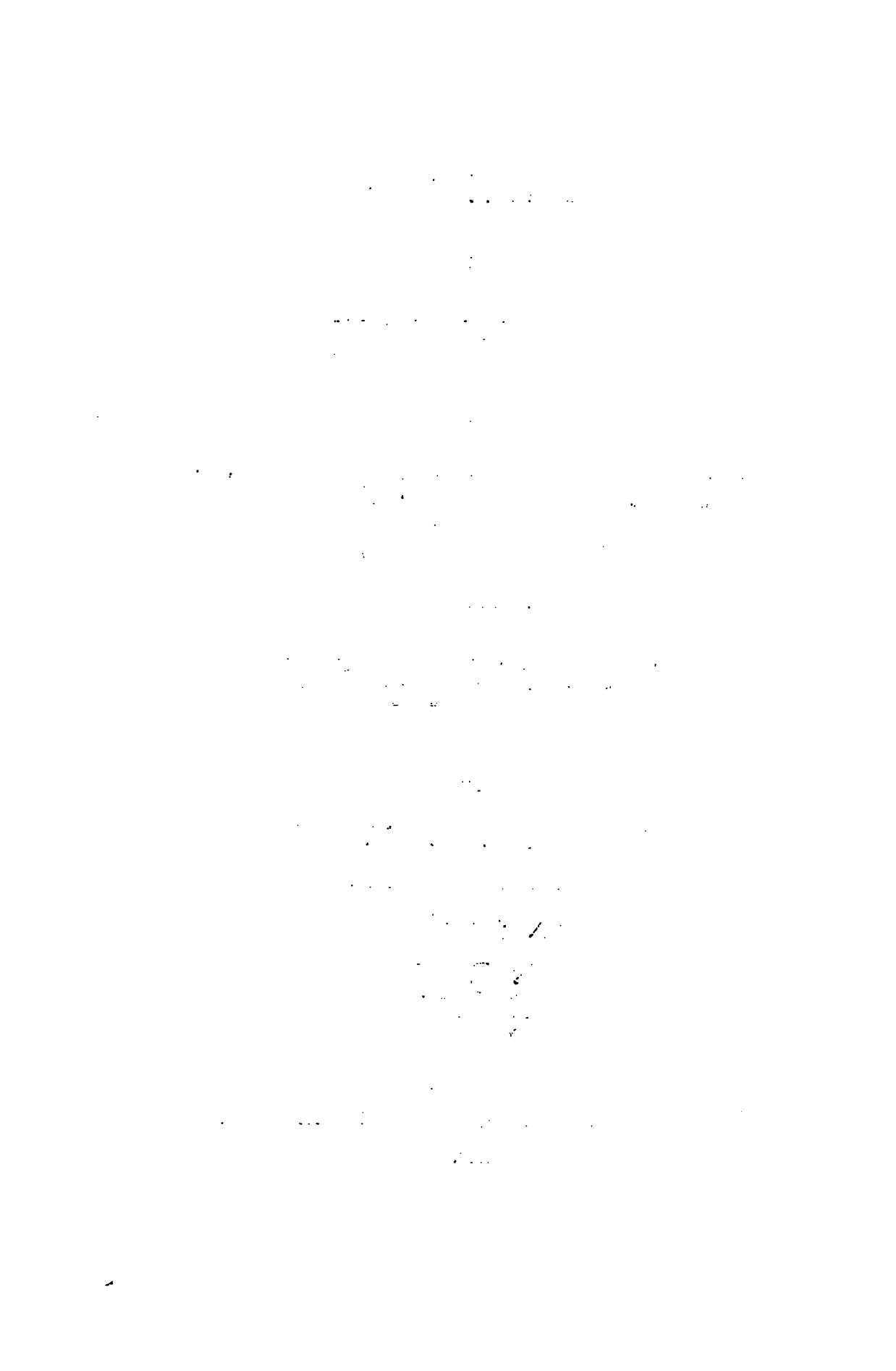
BY
H. C. V. LEIBBRANDT,
KEEPER OF THE ARCHIVES.

PART II.

CAPE TOWN:
W. A. RICHARDS & SONS, GOVERNMENT PRINTERS.

1896.

1897.





ANTHONY VAN RIEBEECK, JAN'S SON,

FATHER OF JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK.

DIED IN MAY, 1639, IN THE BRAZILS,

AND BURIED AT OLINDA DE PHARNAMBUCO, IN THE CHURCH OF
SAN PAOLO.



ELIZABETH (GOVERT'S DAUGHTER) VAN GAASBEECK,

MOTHER OF JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK,

BORN ?

DIED 7TH NOVEMBER, 1629,
AND BURIED IN SCHIEDAM.

ENGLISH PRECIS OF JOURNAL OF THE FORT OF GOOD HOPE.

1656.

January 1st and 2nd.—Fine weather. Wind South-west.

1656.

—

January 3rd.—Rainy; strong breeze from N.W. Fire seen on Robben Island during the night; suppose that ships have been sighted or that the men have been molested. The *Robbejacht* ordered at once to proceed thither, but the weather being too stormy and her fore-sail blown to rags, she returned.

January 4th.—Weather still too stormy to send a boat with oars to the island, and the wind too unfavourable for the *Robbejacht* to proceed.

January 5th.—Fine weather. West wind, at night somewhat southerly. *Robbejacht* leaves with 36 sheep, to be placed on the island, and if the fires meant nothing particular, to proceed to Dassen Island for skins, and carry the necessary communications to the men there.

January 6th.—Fine weather; light breeze from N.W.

January 7th.—Ditto.

January 8th.—Ditto. Wet weather in the morning.

January 9th (Sunday).—Dry. S.S.E. breeze.

January 10th.—Weather as yesterday. Herry arrived this morning at the fort with one of his wives, but loitered outside the bridge until he was unexpectedly confronted by the Commander, proceeding to the gardens. He was kindly asked where he had been so long, and replied that he had remained at a distance because the Commander had so much cattle, and there was not sufficient pasture, but when the grass grew again he would come with his all to the fort. He was shaking with fear all the time, and could hardly speak. Everything was done to give him courage. At noon he was fed from the Commander's table and given some wine, whilst pleasant conversations were held with him to remove his fears. We felt however that he was suspecting us, caused by the hatred of the men of the garrison, in consequence of his treachery, and who threatened to kill him. He complained of this to the Commander, and said that if the latter left, he would not dare to come to the Fort. He was told not to mind the men, as he saw that the Commander liked him. This made him more at ease, though the Commander hardly dared to look up or speak to anyone, as he at once supposed that he spoke about him. It was therefore difficult to manage him with his restless conscience.

Those of the forest reported that he was encamped in 7 carts at the foot of the mountain below the forest, having with him a good number of cows and sheep. Last night he had asked them in the forest for English tobacco, but was told that they had none, but only two strong English dogs and fire-arms. He said nothing and went away.

He wished, at dinner, to advise us to protect our cattle with 30 or 40 soldiers against the Saldanhars, as 10 of the latter were supposed, with their assegais, to be able to overpower one of our men. They could muster in great force, but not we, unless ships were in the bay; so that they would take us unawares when at our weakest. Though it is necessary to be on our guard, we consider his statement entirely false, as the fuel-carriers, Caapmen and others, have often told us that he has many times endeavoured to persuade them to assist him again to steal our cattle. He likewise still retains the animals procured with the Company's copper, which he professes to have been stolen from him. Payment must be made however in time. Our cattle now guarded by 13 or 14 sturdy soldiers, and, when we see many natives in the neighbourhood, by 20 to 25 men.

Herry requested to sleep in the fort, not being willing to trust himself in the company of the Caapmen. The latter are strongly prejudicing us against him, saying that he will do his best to make some more profit for himself out of the Company's cattle, as soon as he has the chance.

At night, strong wind from S.S.E.

January 11th.—Full moon. S.E. too strong to work at the kilns. The men sent to the mountains for fuel for the second kiln. The first kiln contained 40,000 bricks, well burnt, and which are to be used for making the Corps de Garde and other buildings on the other side, along the curtain; also to make the gate strong and fireproof. The heaviest work has been all completed, viz., cellars, stores and dwellings for the chief officers, likewise the battery, four feet thick all round; the rest will therefore be easy and soon done.

Eclipse of the moon, total.

January 12th.—Fine weather. Herry took careful notes of the walls of the fort and the cattle kraals; he was allowed to do so, but carefully watched. At table he stated, on being asked what he thought of the works, that the Saldanhars could easily take the cattle from the kraal at night (every one having 12 assegais) by cutting the cord with which the gate is fastened: but he did not know and was not told that at night the gate was closed with a good lock. In the meantime the hunters were ordered to go to Herry's camp and see how things were there. Whilst still at table 3 or 4 Hottentos came to tell Herry to return home at once, as swarms of bees had come into his camp, greatly troubling the inmates and cattle, so that they would be obliged to move, &c. Herry then left, taking all the fuel carriers, &c., with him, so that not one Hottentoo remained with us. The story of the bees was false, the hunters

having found at Herry's camp only the stout Captain of the Caapmen with 2 wives and 150 cattle without even a herd ; on their return many Hottentoos, walking briskly, had passed them about a musket shot distance, and going in the direction of Herry's camp. As at present only Herry's people and the Caapmen are here, and our fuel carriers have left in the same manner as when the cattle were stolen, we carefully watched Herry, and therefore have sent out scouts to see what is going on, whilst the guns on the fort are loaded with grape, especially those near the kraal. The guards are also strengthened and the rounds are made oftener. On their return the soldiers reported that they had found Herry with 20 men in his five huts, eating thick milk and unarmed ; their arms they hide in the bushes ; his cattle numbered about 100 large and 200 small. All this the rascal procured with the copper of the Company, which he pretended he had been robbed of. A certain girl, called by us Eva (living in the house of the Commander, properly clothed, and in that way already able to converse in Dutch) had told our people that Herry intended to pitch his tents nearer to the fort. Of our fuel carriers not more than 2 or 3 were with him ; all had joined the Caapmen, making us fear that the cattle is in danger, for the chief of the Caapmen was also in Herry's huts, with not more than 2 or 3 women and only a few children. Strong N.W. wind and clear sky.

January 13th.—S.S. East wind and cloudy sky.

January 14th.—Westerly breeze, and clear sky.

January 15th.—Dark sky, wind N.W. 16th. the same.

January 17th.—As above, dark sky and a dry west wind, destroying the pasturage so that nothing almost is left for the cattle to eat ; some old cows are failing in consequence, and we are compelled to kill them for food ; the milk cows are drying up ; every year it becomes plainer that during the dry season very little can be obtained from them. From June to October they yield milk fairly. The horses also feel it much, but are daily fed on barley ; as they are working heavily at the kilns and the carrying of sand and salt, they are getting very thin. Herry has gone to the Hout Bay with his cattle ; his and our cattle are together too much for the pasture. We dare not send ours too far away lest they be stolen by the number of Hottentoos about. To set an example, Gerrit C. Stensz : of Zwolle, marine, and Severyn Abrahamsz : of the Hague, soldier, have to-day been condemned to serve $\frac{1}{2}$ a year in chains for stealing in the gardens, and are also to receive 50 lashes each with the forfeiture of a month's wages.

January 18th.—S.S.E. wind and slight showers ; the latter blown off by the former.

January 19th.—Strong S.E. wind and drought.

January 20th.—Fine weather, western breeze.

January 21st.—Ditto. Died Marten Jansz : of Enckhuysen, sailor of the *Avond Star*, left behind here sick.

January 22nd.—Wind and weather as above. 23rd, ditto.

1656. January 24th and 25th.—Ditto. The boat returned from Robben Island, stating that everything was progressing there favourably. A larger boat sent back with provisions and orders to bring back Marten Cornelisz, who is dilatory in his work there; also not to voyage any more in the small boat, which is only to be used for fishing.

January 26th.—New moon. Heavy wind; S.S.E.: drought continues; pasture getting worse; cattle finding nothing almost to eat and growing very thin. Arrival of a galiot in the morning; because of the heavy wind it anchored on the other side of the bay.

January 27th.—Fine warm weather; galiot arrives, and proves to be the *Nachtglas* from Tristan da Cunha. Officers report that the coast was very rough and landing difficult; and because of the misty sky they had never been able properly to take their bearings. Ceaseless hurricanes, heavy seas, and frightful depths to within a stone's throw off the shore, where there was no sand, but only stone and rock, and not more than 4 or 5 fathoms broad, bare and bleak and for the rest stony mountains, impossible to climb; everywhere else the same, as the mountains overhang the sea; no grass or anything green except some thin reeds; these were the results of their investigations. Fish, however, could be had there in abundance, also water, but with great danger. There was no suitable roadstead, for in consequence of the steep ground and the little wind, which blows there daily very strongly, the anchors could not hold, and no shelter could be found anywhere. The Company, therefore, can do nothing there, and no more vessels should be ventured thither; all these matters are fully contained in the journals of the skipper and mates, and also the charts, of which we are making copies to send home.

Four men arrive during the afternoon, among them 2 Englishmen, sent by Woutersz: in a small boat from Dassen Island, and belonging to an English smack named the *Arosia* or *Star*, and commanded by Capt. Edward Stanjan, very ill and lame in hands and feet; 13 men on board, and mounting 4 small iron pieces of one and two-pounders. Had on board Spanish money, cloth and lead to carry to Bantam or Coromandel. Had left London 20th March last year. He would have been glad to come here, but was kept back by calms and S. Easters. Requested some refreshments, &c. Jan Woutersz: also asked for the *Penguin* to continue the seal fishery in Saldanha Bay, as the animals are very shy at Dassen Island, caused no doubt by the Company's and English ships which called there.

Two LETTERS OF J. WOUTERSZ: d:d: 10 AND 24 JANUARY.

"On 30th Dec. the English vessel *Arosia* arrived, carrying 13 men and four small guns; Captain lame in hands and feet; vessel laden with cash, red and purple (cloth), and lead. Intends to proceed to Bantam and the coast of Coromandel; left London 20 March last year. The seal fishery not yet successful; would have already been at Saldanha Bay if we had a vessel, and would

have left those here in peace until our return from the Bay ; they cast their young chiefly during November and December.

1656.

—

Expect both sloops as soon as possible, also provisions ; would also like to have two smart young sailors and another quartermaster on the small sloop, as the present one is much too hot-headed, and falls out with the men during their trips from one island to another, when I am not present. Send you 1900 small and 269 large and also 40 well prepared skins. Wish you a happy New Year, &c.

2. This encloses the above to inform you of matters here ; to save time 4 well armed men bring it overland. Send them back with the *Penguin* and with our stores ; with the *Robbejacht* we might then proceed to Saldanha Bay (should we be allowed to have that boat also), where we expect to obtain many animals, as for a whole month the wind here has blown otherwise than southerly.

The mate of the *Robbejacht* states that he is badly provided with anchors. We told him he could lie close under the island here, and therefore also in the bay, where there is less danger. Spoke as if he had no intention to accompany me to the bay unless by letter from you to himself. Please send the English Captain, an entire invalid, if you can, some turnips and other greens, &c."—Dassen Island, 24 Jan., 1656.

January 28th.—Fine warm weather. The *Nachtyglas* having suffered on its voyage to Tristan da Cunha, it was resolved to beach her at Saldanha Bay for the necessary repairs (see Resolution). The sloop *Penguin* is to proceed to Saldanha Bay in accordance with request of Woutersz :.

January 29th.—Fine warm sunshine. 30th (Sunday).—Ditto.

January 31st.—Ditto, at night strong S.E., carrying the *Nachtyglas* and *Penguin* towards Saldanha Bay, with letters and provisions for the men there—1 firkin arrack, 1 anker brandy, 1 cask meat, 3 casks bread (each of 630 lbs.), 2 casks rice (1080 lbs.), 1 anker vinegar, 1 cow, 3 bags cabbage, 2 bags carrots, some cucumbers, radishes, turnips, &c.

February 1st.—Fine weather.

February 2nd.—In the morning dark sky and N.W. breeze with rain. Arrival of the English vessel with the lame captain ; the mate dead, and still having 13 men on board ; allowed water and vegetables.

February 3rd.—Dry, calm weather.

February 4th.—Dry, calm weather. Riebeeck proceeds to False Bay (the roads being favourable), accompanied by a guard of soldiers, to see whether the canal proposed by V. Goens could be made across the isthmus ; took the river course to see whether it at all approached False Bay. Found that the Sweet River (now Liesbeeck), which with the Salt River runs into Table Bay, runs snakelike 3 or 4 leagues crosswise over the isthmus, and at some places appears to be stagnant, forming small lakes, between which

1656.

— low and sandy lands lie, until within a league of certain high sandhills of False Bay, where it again turns into small streams, which gradually become broader and form a river of fresh water running further on into a large lake almost as broad as the Meuse and about 2 hours on foot in circumference, with deep and brackish water full of sea-cows and sea-horses, and supp'ied from the downs of False Cape. There was apparently no opening, but the water percolated through the sands. The lake is still about $1\frac{1}{2}$ hours on foot from the seashore, which is about $\frac{1}{2}$ an hour's walk broad ; the downs about a league, and so high that they are almost mountains, 20 or 24 behind one another. It would, therefore, be impossible to cut them through. Besides there would be lakelets in the flats, some $\frac{1}{2}$ others $\frac{1}{4}$ league broad, to be cut through, in order to let one run into the other. This would also be difficult, because of the stony ground, as we found the next day, after having spent the night in the veld. The matter is, therefore, impossible, and would be useless and most injurious to the Company, as the canal could not be made so wide and deep as to prevent the natives from swimming across with their cattle. In case it is supposed that on this side the passage would be closed to them, it must be borne in mind that a large sheet of water on the south side of False Cape, about 3 hours' walk in circumference, becomes a large dry and salt flat in summer, so that no proper canal could be pierced through it, as the sand is soft and the downs are high, which latter would continually fill up the channel ; thousands of men would be required to keep it open, so that the Company cannot for a moment think of it, as the expense would be enormous in comparison with the advantages to be derived. Millions of gold would be required, and if finally the work be finished and communication with the natives cut off, it would be absurd to suppose that they could be confined on this side, for the artificial island would have such dimensions that in order to control it a large number of men would be required, scattered everywhere in the veld, not a few but a good many soldiers.

The idea that such a canal would enable the householders to live more securely is hardly worth considering, as those who may choose to live here and there may build stone dwellings sufficiently strong to protect them from the natives. And should such free householders cost the Company so much that soldiers are to be kept for their defence instead of their assisting the Company and enabling the latter to reduce the garrison, it would be better that no free-men should be allowed here excepting a few about the fortress for the convenience of the passing ships, who might breed fowls, geese, ducks, pigs, &c.

February 5th.—Fine dry weather. Commander returned home in the evening ; kept from sleep the preceding night by the numbers of sea-cows, lions, tigers and other wild animals, which continued their noises near the tents, as generally also happens around the walls of the fortress.

February 6th.—Same weather. English Captain visits the Commander, apologising for declining the latter's invitation to dinner in consequence of his lameness, the food having to be brought to his mouth; is very grateful for the kindness shown him, especially for the permission to lodge in the barber's dwelling.

February 7th.—Fine weather, but not good for the cattle, as it makes the pasture dry and the animals lean. The brick kiln, with 250,000 bricks, set on fire. During the night heavy S.E. wind.

February 8th.—Fine, S.S.E., and calm weather, during the day the wind became very strong and lasted until midnight.

February 9th.—Fine sunshine. The English captain daily visits the Commander for a chat; told the latter that in August, 1644, he had been at Mosambique on board of the English ship *John*, whence they had to take the Governor, whose time had expired, to Goa. The Captain of the *John* having arrived at one of the Mayotta Islands had left on shore the speaker (Captain Tangan), who was then of lower rank, and others of the king's party, running away with all the possessions of the Governor. Upon this the Queen had the Governor and his family transferred in a canoe to Mosambique, whence they were afterwards removed by an English ship. During all that time passed at Mosambique, and also from the Governor and other Portuguese, he had heard that all their supplies of rice, beans, peas, wax, honey, &c., were obtained at Madagascar from the North-west coast, between 12 and 15°, with small vessels of 10 to 20 lasts, carrying only one or two pedereros or 7 or 8 muskets, and commanded by 1 or 2 native Portuguese, the rest of the crew being about 8 or 10 half castes with better courage. These vessels obtain there also much amber for gold, cloth, copper, tin, iron, beads, &c., also cattle and sheep, as at the Cape, for refreshing the Portuguese ships trading with Mosambique, and which besides St. Helena have now no other refreshment station, and must call at Mosambique just as the Company's ships do at the Cape. He believed that with one handy yacht and one small galiot with 3 masts, like his own, and somewhat like the *Tulp*, that traffic might be taken from the Portuguese, and those of Mosambique be reduced to great straits, as they have many mouths to feed and must get their supplies from Madagascar. On Mosambique Island only oranges, bananas, lemons, and such fruit are abundantly found, but no rice or anything to serve for bread. On the continent it is just the same, and thence the supply of water is to be drawn and brought on in boats. Of their cattle, which they have in abundance, a large quantity is annually consumed by the ships and themselves, so that they must always recoup themselves from Madagascar. Should we visit Madagascar, the natives would show us the harbours frequented by the Portuguese. The vessel should however in the first voyage sail under a Portuguese or English flag, and the natives should be well treated until they grow accustomed to us. This would greatly perplex the Governor and the people of Mosambique, as they cannot live without Mada-

1656. — gascar. The Portuguese obtain much amber there at small cost, and this trade could be taken from them by trafficking with Madagascar; those of Mosambique would then be greatly inconvenienced and compelled to give up the settlement, and the Portuguese losing that station would, with difficulty, be able to continue their Indian navigation, as they would have no refreshment station on their outward voyage.

Regarding the East Coast, he stated that from False Cape to Corrientes navigation was dangerous because of the heavy winds and seas rolling towards the land, so that with little wind it was very difficult to keep away from land, but between Cape Corrientes or north of the tropic, along the coast of Sofala towards Mosambique and lower, it was generally easy for light yachts or galiots, which might look for the gold fetchers sailing from Sofala to Mosambique, which are as small vessels as those used for the trade with Madagascar. He wished that he had a letter of marque against the Portuguese (now friends of the English), for he would then voyage thither with his small vessel and venture his all in the matter. According to him it would be profitable to the Company to cause distress to those of Mosambique, and endeavour to obtain possession of that place. This would greatly hinder the Portuguese in their Eastern voyages, for they would lose their necessary refreshment station; and he also told us that the Portuguese feared this danger from our occupation of the Cape, having heard it mentioned by their agent in London; also that the new viceroy voyaging to Goa had decided, if the wind favoured him, to do mischief to the Company at the Cape and ruin the fortress and plantations. He therefore advised us to be more on our guard and better prepared, as numbers might easily overpower us, the facilities in the way of landing being greater than the number of men at hand for preventing it. The fortress could easily be approached and besieged, and in this he spoke the naked truth.

Wind W.N.W. and warm sunshine.

February 10th, 11th, and 12th.—The same.

February 13th.—Heavy S.E. and drought.

February 14th to 19th.—Fine weather. Wind west, weather sometimes cloudy. The English captain having somewhat recovered wished to leave, but his sister's son and his cabin boy, who had daily to feed him, having run away, his mate having died, and with nobody on board able to navigate (for he always had the altitude taken by his sister's son) he could not leave without that boy, and requested us to help him to get him back. We sent some Hottentoes to search for them, promising them tobacco, arrack and food, and within a few hours the runaway was brought back, but the cabin boy could not be found, and we promised him to send the youngster on to England when caught. To-morrow he will already be 11 months from England, with little hopes of more prosperous progress, as he has no mates and very unwilling men.

February 20th (Sunday).—Heavy N.W. wind. English Captain very ill again—his cabin boy not yet found. Between 2 and 3 o'clock this morning the youngest child of the Commander died, so that the twins are now both with the Lord.

1656.
—

February 21st.—West wind. Arrival of the *Nachtglas* with 400 skins—left Saldanha Bay on the 17th, where it had been thoroughly overhauled and repaired; brought the following letter from Woutersz: “The *Nachtglas* and *Penguin* arrived on the 1st, left at once for Saldanha Bay—will return to Dassen Island or St. Helena Bay when no more seals can be obtained here; can still continue killing here for another month, and hope to obtain about 3000: will write again per *Robbejacht*. Received the provisions, &c., in good order—but only $\frac{1}{2}$ cask of meat and $\frac{1}{2}$ anker brandy, in presence of skipper Jan Jacobsz. On the 8th a French vessel, the *St. George*, arrived here, which had left Madagascar 28 days ago; the Captain had been killed by the natives because of the stealing and murdering committed by the crew; said ship had met our galiot at the island St. Maria, and the Frenchman told us that our people had already obtained a quantity of rice and 14 slaves, among them 4 women; also that two cannons had burst on board the *Tulp*, but the particulars you will gather from the lad, who came to me with his own free will from the Frenchman. His name is Boudewyn van den Abele, of Bruges, and before this he had left an English ship to go on board the Frenchman. We also send you in addition to the skins sent overland the hides of two sea lions and $1\frac{1}{2}$ firkins of oil; with the *Robbejacht* we will send more.”—Saldanha Bay, 16 Febr., 1656.

The boy told the following story:—He had left Nantes about 2 years ago with the French ship, had touched at Cape Verde for water, &c. There were 100 men on board and 20 guns. Had taken six months to reach Madagascar and the French fort there, distant about 3 leagues from St. Lucie Bay, and called Tolanhaer, garrisoned by 50 or 60 Frenchman and their slaves. Said fort is merely a square enclosure of poles no thicker than spars; the houses made of sticks, bamboos and leaves; the guns lying useless on the ground without any carriages—only 3 are mounted on very old carriages; hardly half the number of men are provided with guns or side arms; they have at present only one small keg of gunpowder, but continue to make war on the natives, of whom they had killed a king, a prince and many men. Four of the captive children are on board the *St. George* to be taken to France, also a box with minerals taken from certain goldmines shewn them by the said king, from whom they had also obtained some pots filled with pieces of eight which had been buried. The French business consisted of collecting hides, wax, ebony and gum—they also there put together their small vessels obtained from France for their piratical expeditions in the Red Sea. The governor of Nantes, La Miliery, had the charter of that settlement, and as they often for many years see no ship from France, they had by means of their

1656. — slaves commenced to cultivate rice for their support. Of all these hides, wax, &c., the ship had a large cargo on board for France, also 200 rolls of tobacco, each of 100 lbs. weight, and grown on the island Mascarenhas, where six years ago 7 French and 8 slaves had been stationed, merely for cultivating tobacco ; they lived only on pork and goats' meat ; they lived in huts made of branches and leaves.

The ship having delayed 8 months at the fort, and in the meanwhile a three-masted vessel having been put together for employment in the Red Sea, they had sailed along the Madagascar coast, as far as St. Maria island, before the bay of Antongil, thence they had proceeded with the smaller vessel to the Monamboelo and Manastram Rivers situated to the south of Antongil Bay, and where in a short time they half filled the ship with rice cheaply bought at the river Manastram ; they had also obtained some precious stones, which the Captain believed would cover the expenses of his voyage hitherto, so that he was going to abandon the trip to the Red Sea ; but getting into difficulties with the natives of that river he had been killed by them. The crew not being able to get enough cattle, &c., for refreshing themselves, had done great injury to the natives and set them against each other by the ears so that all the villages were warring on each other. Consequently those of St. Maria greatly feared the French, whose large vessel was anchored in their harbour, and who continuing to trade on the coast might also involve them in a war with those of the interior. He also stated that the king and prince who had been killed were very favourably inclined to the Dutch, who had no desire to war but only to trade with them. After 2 months' stay at Monamboela they had proceeded to the Red Sea to rob the Moors ; there they had chased a vessel supposed to be a Moor, but found it to be English, and having sent their small bark and sloop against it, were beaten off with the loss of 60 men. Disappointed they had returned to the island Saccatora, where they obtained musk, civet, and nine casks of aloes. Thence they returned to the island Mascarenhas, where the 7 French and 8 slaves were stationed for cultivating tobacco ; there they took on board the 200 rolls of tobacco and again proceeded via St. Maria to the French fortress Tolanaer at Madagascar, where they discharged the rice for the garrison, shipping about 8000 hides, some wax, gum, minerals and the said 4 Royal children, also a small box about a foot square and covered with gray cloth, which contained great value as was supposed. About six weeks ago the French ship had met at St. Maria the *Tulp*, which had obtained some rice, and had thence proceeded to Monamboela to complete its cargo. Two of the *Tulp*'s guns had burst, killing 4 men and wounding others. The one had burst at Mauritius, the other at Antongil, very likely when a salute was being fired. For the rest they were prospering well.

February 22nd.—Strong S.S.E. wind. The English vessel leaves for Bantam, and thence to Jambi for pepper. Left one

deserter behind here. Requested us not to deliver him, if found, to another English ship, but to keep him until the vessel's return from India, and to let him work for his food, &c. Was very grateful for the kindness shown him, and wished to pay, but was told that he was treated as a guest and a brother, besides nothing had been spent on his men, who were all strong and healthy. The Captain could already use his legs very well, but his hands were still lame, and the boy had to feed him, &c., and take the altitude. No other one on board who could navigate.

February 23rd.—S.S.E. wind and drought.

February 24th.—Fine sunshine. S.S.E. wind. Riebeeck goes to Robben Island to look at the cattle there, taking with him 9 sheep to be left there. At night the deserter of the English ship, whose name was , came to the fort. States that he had been in Saldanha Bay, and with his shirt on a stick had signalized to our men on the islands, but not being seen, had been obliged to return hither. During his absence had lived only on mussels, and was obliged to drink his own water. Had deserted on account of the cruelty of his Captain, who had sworn that on his arrival in India he would sell into slavery him, the gunner, and another. These threats had forced him to run away, and the whole crew would have done the same, if they could have escaped from the ship. Requested to be taken into the Company's service.

February 25th.—Strong S.S.E. Riebeeck returns from Robben Island. Found pasture there for an additional number of 2,000 sheep if necessary, in spite of its apparent dryness and the absence of a single blade of grass. The sheep have abundance to eat off the bushes there, being all extraordinarily fat. The whole island had been circumnavigated and soundings had been taken all round—a chart having been made of the whole. It was found that the Whale Rock was not more than $\frac{1}{2}$ league from the island and $1\frac{1}{2}$ league from the Lion's Tail. The passage between the mainland and the island is therefore excellent, and as soon as Table Bay is entered, everywhere good anchorage is found, where a vessel would be safe, however hard the S.E. wind may blow. No heavy seas are caused by the wind, which does not last longer than two or three times 24 hours, and vessels can always safely reach the anchorage opposite the fort. The whole bottom of the bay is sandy, as has already been stated in former advices.

The Englishman being asked by the Commander why he ran away, he repeated the same statement, requesting to be allowed to serve the Company. He was told that deserters were hardly to be trusted, but that he should not starve he might eat and drink with the men until his master's return.

February 26th.—Warm westerly weather. Galiot discharging the skins, and ordered to fetch a cargo of shells at Robben Island. Herry arriving told us that with his cattle he was at Hout Bay, and wished to come here during the rainy season. He was told,

1656.

in order to ward off suspicion, not to come during the dry season, there not being enough pasturage for the Company's cattle. The Caapmen were with their cattle about 6 miles away, but were also told not to come nearer, as they never sell anything, and are always on the lookout to steal what they can get. They were rather surprised when they saw how well we had secured the kraal, besides having placed two small guns in the half moon of the same to protect the cattle. It is now evidently impossible for them to make a raid, as the enclosure is watched day and night.

February 27th (Sunday).—Misty. Western breeze; at night strong S.S.E.

February 28th.—S.S.E., going down somewhat at noon. The *Nachtglas* proceeds to Robben Island taking 10 additional men to gather shells. S.S.E., strong during the night.

February 29th.—Fine sunshine, light N.W. breeze.

March 1st.—Fine, warm weather, N.W. breeze. Vessel sighted, also *Nachtglas* from Robben Island: at night weather S.S.E., and therefore a whaleboat was sent off to the unknown vessel, which reported that it was the *Muyden* from Texel, 4th October last, in company with the *Draak*, &c.; had been delayed 4 weeks at the Isle of Wight; has 165 men on board and only lost 2, the whole crew fairly healthy.

March 2nd.—Fine weather, West wind; yacht arrives.

March 3rd.—*Robbejacht* returns to Robben Island for shells, and 30 sheep to refresh the ships, &c. At night strong S.S.E.

March 4th.—S.S.E. Dry, warm sunshine. Men sent to drag beams from the forest for the jetty, which is to extend a good distance into the sea for the ships' boats, that the men may no longer be obliged to go up to their necks in water.

March 5th (Sunday).—Fine sunshine, N.W. breeze. Arrival of the *Weesp*, consort of the *Muyden*, all the men well; had lost 2. *Nachtglas* returns with the sheep.

March 6th.—Yesterday's weather, The *Breukel*, consort of *Muyden*, arrives. All the crew well.

March 7th.—Misty weather, Westerly breeze, *Muyden* ordered to weigh, takes with her 24 convalescents left behind; *Nachtglas* to go to Saldanha Bay for the sealskins on hand.

March 8th.—Rainy weather, N.W. breeze.

March 9th.—Arrival of the *Draak*, with healthy crew; 2 men lost by accidentally falling overboard. The *Robbejacht* brought 3,000 skins with a letter from Woutersz: as follows:—"You receive 797 large and 1,554 small skins. We hope to get 3,000 more here, and if you wish it, we may again try Dassen Island. Expect the *Robbejacht* back again with meat or pork and oil, also 100 clubs, and some arrack; $\frac{1}{2}$ anker we gave to the Mate Claas for his men. Drew from the *Robbejacht* for the *Penguin* a painter, as we lost one on the rocks of Jutten Island; it was not required by the Mate Claas, who had lost his kedge at Dassen Island." Madagascar Island, Saldanha Bay, 3rd March 1656. On the back was written,

"On the 5th we shipped additional skins as follows : 306 large and 343 small, total 649."

Before midnight the *Sea Horse* arrived, from Zealand the 22nd November, in company of the *Brouwershaven*; had been 9 days off England; had touched nowhere else; its 185 men all well, lost two men; five days ago it had been in company with the *Hercules*, &c.

March 10th.—Fine, calm weather. Another ship in sight. The *Robbejacht* sent to Robben Island for more shells and some sheep for the *Muyden*, still detained by contrary winds. The *Dolphyn* arrives, from Texel 21st November, with 213 men, lost one man. *Muyden* leaves in the afternoon.

March 11th.—Fine weather; arrival of *Hercules* from Texel 10th December, had lost 15 men and still on board 236 fairly well; also of *Brouwershaven* from Zealand 22nd November; lost two men, still on board 197 fairly well. The *Weesp* leaves for Batavia and the *Nachtglas* for Robben Island.

March 12th.—Weather as yesterday.

March 13th.—Fine weather, wind fickle; *Breukel* leaves for Batavia, also the *Draak*, both with healthy crews. *Achilles* arrives from Texel 10th December last, lost one man; still on board 122 fairly well. All the vessels have been well supplied with fresh meat and vegetables, as much as they liked; *Robbejacht* returns with 30 sheep.

March 13th.—Fine weather; changing breezes. *Maarsen* arrives with 75 men. No dead or sick.

March 14th.—Fine weather; *Robbejacht* sent to the Island for 30 sheep. Five ships sighted at night.

March 15th.—Same weather; return fleet arrives under the Hon. Jaspar van den Bogaerde, Extraor: Councillor of India, consisting of the *Provintie*, &c.

March 16th.—Arrival of the *Zrehond* from Zealand 22nd Nov., with 105 men; no dead; all well. Misty N.W. weather. In the afternoon S.E.; *Nachtglas* sent to the Island for 50 sheep and shells. The *Robbejacht* proceeds to Saldanha Bay.

March 17th.—Stiff S.E., dry weather; arrival of a vessel.

March 18th.—Stiff S.E. No work to be done. Preparation sermon held by Rev. Sas. Sacrament to-morrow.

March 19th (Sunday).—Calm weather. Arrival of the *Tor Schelling* from Zealand, 11th December, lost 2 men; 198 on board; few sick. *Nachtglas* returns from Robben Island, lost one of the whale boats in consequence of the heavy wind, but fortunately recovered a boat of Hon. Boogaerden with one man in it, which had drifted away from his ship, and had met the galiot at the island; only the boat lost, which will delay whale fishing.

March 20th.—Misty N.W. weather.

March 21st.—Fine S.S.E. weather. *Nachtglas* sent to the Island for 50 more sheep; the *Dolphijn*, &c., leave for Batavia.

March 22nd.—Hail S.E. wind; about 100 men prevented from returning on board, who are to be fed with pork and bread.

This often happens and causes a large consumption of these expensive articles.

March 23rd.—Fine, sunshine and calm. Heavy S.E. at night.

March 24th.—The same; the Broad Council convened by Boogaerd which resolves that the fleet shall delay till the day after to-morrow, and should the other vessels in which there are things for the Cape not arrive before the 8th or 10th of April, then to despatch the *Nachtglas* to St. Helena for the articles sent to us from India. Four vessels sighted in the evening; wind too strong to reach the roads.

March 25th.—Wind abating; *Nachtglas* despatched to the vessels to pilot them in; found them to be French and at once returned; vessels were: The Admiral's ship *La Duchesse*, Capt. La Roche St. Andrew, carrying 400 men and 40 guns. The vice-Admiral's ship *La Marechal*, Capt. Colon, carrying 300 men and 36 guns. The *Larman*, Capt. Richmond, carrying 200 men and 30 guns. The *St. George*, Capt. Labriants, carrying 100 men and 20 guns. Had captured 2 small vessels under the charge of a ship still at sea. Four others were to follow, all sent by the Governor of Nantes, *La Miliery*, in the King's name to Madagascar to colonize it and secure it for France. Two ships had already preceded them; what their further designs may be they keep secret. As these adventurers are not to be trusted too much, it was resolved that the ships in the bay, 8 in number, viz: 6 return and 2 outward bound, be placed in a state of defence, in order not to be surprised. Also resolved that the ships shall leave in company, and that the *Nachtglas* shall cruise about in order to warn the other return ships against the French. Twenty soldiers were drafted from the ships to strengthen the garrison, which is very weak, as many had been sent on to Batavia. The French are in sufficient numbers to trouble us here, and are therefore to be civilly treated, otherwise they might take by force what they want.

March 26th.—Calm westerly weather. The Hottentooos warned not to trust the French, who might take their cattle and themselves, &c. In the meanwhile the French admiral greeted the Commander of the Fleet and the Fort with a cask of Canary wine, some raisins, &c., for which he was recompensed with some refreshments, compliments, &c. He was very anxious to have some sail cloth, which was politely refused. He was allowed to have water.

March 27th.—Calm weather; the French Admiral visited Boogaerd on board and was festively received there, likewise on board the *Hoff Van Zeeland*, which he visited in the evening.

March 28th.—S. S. E. breeze. The fleet under Boogaerd leaves for St. Helena. The *Ter Scheiling* and *Zeehond* depart for Batavia, and the *Nachtglas* starts for its cruise. Not trusting the French, we keep the men under arms and have double guards at night. The officers are all provided in their homes with loaded pistols in order to be well prepared. During the evening the French pitched a tent near the fort and carried into it 40 sick, who

bought vegetables from private individuals who had gardens. As treachery might lurk behind this proceeding, the tents were carefully watched, and the inmates politely told not to go out during the night that they might not suffer injury from the natives.

March 29th.—Fine, calm, warm weather. The admiral and staff visit the Commander on shore, and were festively and politely treated. He insisted upon buying oxen and sheep from us, and hinted that if refused, he might be compelled to take some from the natives, &c. As he had a strong force to back him, and we would not very well be able to prevent him, without causing greater trouble to ourselves, it was resolved to keep on as friendly terms as possible, and allow them for the four ships eight oxen and 10 or 12 sheep at two reals of eight, with permission to buy from private gardeners as much vegetables as they could get, who would make a nice penny by it. This satisfied the admiral; the day was passed agreeably, and he left at night well satisfied, intending to leave the day after to-morrow for Tolanaer, at St. Lucia, to strengthen it and provide it with a governor, who was present. After that he intended to proceed to Monamboela by the Bay of Antongil, to secure these two places for France. Finally they would see what they could do against the English about Malabar and the Indian coast. He plainly stated that his chief design was against the English, and if he could also catch a Moor he would not let him escape. More he would not tell.

March 30th.—Calm, dark, misty weather. S.S.E. in the afternoon. A whaleboat sent to Robben Island with provisions for the men, and orders that the men of the sloop shall remain armed with muskets on the island until the French have left, as it was hinted that they intended to send a sloop on shore there for penguins. At night a ship and the *Nachtglas* were sighted.

March 31st.—Calm, fine weather. Ship arrives with a N.W. breeze, well prepared for battle. She was the *Hector*. Left Holland 5th December; lost three men, 242 on board. Men fairly well. Sent at once an ox and a lot of vegetables on board. Ordered to send for fresh meat and greens every day.

April 1st.—Misty, N.W. weather.

April 2nd.—Fine weather. The four French vessels leave with a S.E. breeze, relieving the fear of the garrison, which during their stay had day and night remained under arms.

April 3rd.—Dark, misty weather in the morning; clear and N.W. breeze afterwards.

April 4th.—Rainy weather, and wind as yesterday. *Robbejucht* and *Peguyn* arrive from Saldanha Bay with 3000 skins and Woutersz: and his men.

April 5th.—Fine weather; wind west.

April 6th.—The annual day of prayer observed to-day.

April 7th.—Fine weather; wind S.S.E. The *Hector* leaves.

1656. — April 8th.—Fine weather; westerly breeze. The *Nachtglas* to leave for St. Helena to obtain the cargo for the Cape shipped in the return fleet.

April 9th (Sunday).—Full moon; dark, misty weather; N.W. wind. As this is the first Sunday after the departure of the return fleet the men have been allowed, according to custom, to hold their annual "kermis," and were presented with $\frac{1}{2}$ leaguer Spanish wine, tobacco, and various garden fruits, that they might enjoy themselves thoroughly. The *Nachtglas* leaves for St. Helena and the *Robbejacht* for Robben Island for shells.

April 10th.—Dark, misty weather, N.W. wind; both vessels therefore put back.

April 11th.—The same wind. In the afternoon the *Robbejacht* was able to start for the island. When the *Nachtglas* came outside it observed four vessels, which it piloted into the bay, viz., the *Oranje*, &c., under the command of the Hon. Sarcerius, from Batavia 3rd February.

April 12th.—Strong N.W. wind, preventing us from sending supplies on board. The *Robbejacht* returns with a small quantity of shells.

April 13th.—Strong N.W. wind and rain. Sarcerius lands, and with his council resolves, that although the four ships in the Bay had brought what was required at the Cape, nevertheless to despatch the *Nachtglas* to St. Helena to inform the Hon. Boogaert of the safe arrival of these vessels, that he may wait for them awhile, so that they may proceed home together, as the following letter will show:—"On the 5th of February last we passed the Straits of Sunda, and arrived here on the 12th inst. with disabled ships and many sick. Being told of your departure by Riebeeck, and the *Oliphant* very much disabled, we decided to despatch the *Nachtglas* to St. Helena to inform you that if you could delay a little longer than your orders state, as the *Oliphant* will require about ten days for repairs, we hope to make our appearance in sufficient time to enable us to proceed home in company. As the Indian Secretary has forgotten to give us an inventory of the cargo of these four ships, we can only tell you its value, viz., fl.363,383.18.,4, &c.

(Signed) "DIRCK SERCERIUS,
 "JOHAN VAN RIEBEECK,
 "FRANCHOYS MANUS.

"In the Fort, 13th April, 1656."

April 14th.—Wet weather and wind.

April 15th.—Same weather; arrival of *Tertolen*, from Zealand 6th January: lost 1 man, 169 on board, 4 sick; one ox and vegetables sent on board; to be supplied daily.

April 16th (Easter).—Same weather.

April 17th.—Fine weather; east wind; *Nachtglas* leaves for St. Helena. The cable of the *Oliphant* breaks and the vessel drifts on shore, fortunately escaping the rocks and grounding on sand below the Lion's Rump.

1656.

—

April 18th.—Vessel fortunately got off, no leakage caused by the accident. Sarcerius, Riebeeck and Manus proceed on board, and having arranged everything return on shore. God be praised for the safety of the ship.

April 19th.—Fine, calm weather.

April 20th and 21st.—The same. The *Tertolen* receives orders to depart and take letters to India from Hon. Sarcerius and Riebeeck.

April 22nd.—Dirty weather, N.W. wind.

April 23rd (Sunday.)—Same weather, preventing the departure of the ships.

April 24th.—New Moon. Fine weather, but calm.

April 25th.—Calm weather. The *Tertolen* manages to get outside.

April 26th.—N.W. wind continues heavily.

April 27th.—Calm weather; wind South East; the return ships leave.

April 28th and 29th.—Fine sunshine; wind variable; a lot of carrots put into the ground, and a morgen of ground sown with wheat. The rainy season having commenced the time has arrived to prepare the empty plots and new acres, and fill them with European seeds; work zealously commenced. The beams for the jetty are also being brought in, also palisades for enclosing the gardens, as the fruit is stolen by the common people, especially those of the ships. Thorns are also collected to be planted outside of the palisades.

April 30th (Sunday).—Fine weather.

May 1st.—Dark, rainy weather, slight N.W. breeze; resolved to reward the seal hunters with a month's wages in money, and to search for more land to extend cultivation; also from to-day to pay the married officers and assistants board wages, and look for a suitable site for an inn; likewise to increase the pay of some, according to orders from home.

May 2nd.—Same weather; in the afternoon a dry S. Easter. The Caapmen arrive with their cattle near the fortress, requesting to be allowed to squat behind Lion's Rump; they were told that as they did not care about selling us any cattle, rather to keep away some distance as the pasture grounds were insufficient. They however persisted in remaining, which we did not like, unless they sold us cattle like the Saldanhars, for they said that if any other natives arrived they would not dare to move far from the fortress for fear of being robbed. They were told that we were willing to protect them, but then they ought to trade with us. We preferred having others around us, but they could not be persuaded to trade. Obtained two sheep from another tribe.

May 3rd.—Dry weather; heavy S.E.

May 4th.—Fine S.E. weather; some rye, wheat, and barley sown.

May 5th.—Fine westerly weather.

May 6th.—Hazy weather; west wind. The Commander pro-

1656. — exceeded a distance of $2\frac{1}{2}$ leagues from the fort, behind Table Mountain to the flats between the continent and the promontory, and the neck between Table and False Bays, to find out according to Resolution of the 1st inst. what serviceable lands there might be, and where forts could be conveniently placed. Found five lands which could be easily prepared, and where with little expense a fort might be made which would command an extensive view for their protection and that of the cattle. It might be garrisoned by the soldiers employed to herd the cattle, who have now a long distance to go with the animals. Sometimes the latter might be stationed at the redoubt and sometimes here, but this plan would include the building of 3 or 4 watch-houses about 18 or 20 feet square and 8 feet high and provided with loop holes; in this way the promontory would be thoroughly cut off from, and so well secured against the Hottentoes that they would not be able to come into the forts or have the grass eaten off by their cattle, as we found to our cost when we had their large number of cattle so near us. The forts could be made of material at hand by the men and without expense.

May 7th (Sunday).—Fine weather, N.W. wind; sowed some wheat on the outside beds of the garden.

May 8th.—Dirty, rainy weather, strong N.W. wind; labour interfered with.

May 9th.—The same; but little rain; sowed some turnips, and prepared the ground for fresh seeds to be ready for the ships.

May 10th.—Wet, stormy N.W. weather.

May 11th.—Fine and calm; obtained 2 oxen and 4 sheep from an unknown tribe.

May 12th.—Rainy weather; stiff N.W. winds; again bought 3 sheep.

May 13th.—The same; the Caapmen and Herry, with their cattle, passed the fort intending to squat within cannon range, but they were kindly told to go further behind the hill, as we were in want of the grass about here. Herry maintained that the land of the Cape belonged to him and the Capemen, but was told that we also required pastures for our cattle, but if, like the other natives, they also would sell us cattle, we would readily allow them here, but if not, then we cared very little about them and preferred other people in our neighbourhood, as our chief object was to obtain cattle; we added that we considered them the chief impediments in gaining that object. Herry replied that he always did his best to bring the other tribes to us, &c., so that he deserved to be allowed to squat under the guns of the fort, with all his friends, viz. the Caapmen and the black Captain. He was told that permission would be granted if we saw the result of his efforts, and that his claim to the ownership of the Cape lands could not be entertained by the Company, which had taken possession of them for its own purposes, &c. He is a sly rogue and must be carefully looked after. It won't do to say: They are merely wild savages, what can they do?

For the more they are known, the more impertinent they are found to be, and certainly not so savage and stupid as beasts. They will seize their chance whenever it offers, whilst their daily intercourse with the Dutch makes them sharper every day. They already say that it is a tedious and troublesome process to manage the large gun, whilst the fusees of the muskets cannot burn in wet weather. They, however, don't like the firelocks, pistols, and pops, which are in their opinion discharged without fire and frighten them.

May 14th (Sunday).—Boisterous weather ; same wind ; 15th and 16th ditto.

May 17th.—Fairly fine ; wind the same. At the Rondeboschjen, about 2 miles from this, about $\frac{1}{2}$ morgen of land was sown with wheat, rice, and oats by way of trial, to see whether there is more shelter there from the S. Easter, and it will be worth while next year to work on a larger scale. That the Hottentoos may not destroy it, a small watch was stationed there in a house of sods, 2 men viz., who have daily to go to the forest. Should the wind not blow so heavily there, we shall deem it a great success, as magnificent lands lie about there. The *Robbejacht* takes provisions to Robben Island. Jan Woutersz : is to count the sheep and to see whether the orange trees of St. Helena planted there are growing.

May 18th.—Fine, cloudy weather. More land to be prepared at the Rondeboschjen, and during the whole season watchers are to be stationed there ; all the seed won last year to be sown ; also the old oats received from home. Horses, ploughs, &c., sent thither. Obtained from strange natives of the interior 6 cows and 13 sheep. Resolved also to lease the cattle from to-day until next January and after that every new year ; Annetje the "boerin" agrees to take the lease for 100 guldens, whatever the number of cows may be ; Annetje having also 8 children, and finding it difficult to support them on her husband's board wages, is provisionally allowed to keep an inn for strangers, no other having as yet ventured to ask his discharge for that purpose. The *Robbejacht* brings a sheep and reports the number on the Island to be 330—all well—many though had died. The orange trees also had perished ; here they grow famously.

May 19th.—Fine N.W. weather. Wheat sent to Rondebosjen to be sown there. Obtained 3 cows and 13 sheep from the new natives for copper, tobacco and pipes, and sometimes a drop of arrack added. At night, heavy N.W. and rain.

May 20th.—Wet and dirty, as above.

May 21st.—The same (Sunday). Wind not so strong. Marriage of Jan Woutersz : with Catherina Anthonis, of Bengal. The gardener brought home a Spanish radish, weighing $6\frac{1}{2}$ lbs. ; this root grows here famously, and is a splendid refreshment for the ships.

May 22nd.—Fine sunshine. N.W. The Caapmen pass the fort from behind the hill, with all their cattle, towards the flats south of Table Mountain, where some new tribes had encamped,

1656. and sold us some cattle. Now that these Caapmen have come they have moved off. We would have preferred them to remain, and wished the Caapmen to go as far as possible, as nothing can be done with them, though they are rich in cattle, and only act as brokers between ourselves and the other natives, from whom they manage to obtain a good share of copper and tobacco, to the great injury of the traffic. In this Herry takes the lead, gradually enriching himself and rising to the rank of chief captain, as appears from his cattle feeding behind the Lion Mountain.

May 23rd.—Moderate N.W. weather.

May 24th.—New moon. Fine weather; west breeze. The rest of the wheat, with some oats and barley, sown at the Rondebosjen.

May 25th.—Ascension day; boisterous and stormy N.W. weather.

May 26th.—Better weather. Death of the sailor, Jacob Jacobsz Schap, left behind sick by the *Oliphant* in April last. It seems in this season of the year, whilst the monsoon is turning, to be somewhat unhealthy, as many become ill daily. It does not last longer than three weeks; no one escapes without a touch, but rarely anybody dies. Wind strong at night, with heavy rains.

May 27th.—Rain ceased about one o'clock p.m. In the upper garden two beds were sown with parsnips, and the little garden next to the fort was filled with turnips. Lime kiln set on fire.

May 28th (Sunday).—Fine sunshine; westerly weather.

May 29th.—Ditto. The sick having no mattresses, 100 were ordered to be made of sail-cloth for their comfort. The *Robbejacht* and *Peguyn* to proceed to Dassen Island and Saldanha Bay to burn some train oil; in consequence of leakage and consumption we are badly provided. They are also to search for French letters from Madagascar for news of the *Tulp*, still remaining absent; are also to catch some fish, and bring some reeds, &c. See Resolution.

May 30th.—Strong N.W. wind.

May 31st.—Ditto; not so hard, though.

June 1st.—Cloudy N.W. weather, and some rain.

June 2nd.—As above.

June 3rd.—S.S.E. breeze. *Robbejacht* and *Peguyn* leave. Riebeeck goes to Rondebosjen where he finds the wheat, &c., growing splendidly, about $1\frac{1}{2}$ morgen. A small English vessel, the *Good Will*, arrives from Masulipatnam on the 26th Jan., with saltpetre and Indian cloth on board, as they say. Captain's name is Stephen Mitchell, and the merchant's, Christopher Ascinden; had a long and difficult passage, and experienced heavy storms between Natal and this; had taken 40 days to do that short distance, and suffered frightfully. Twenty-five days ago they had sighted a large and a small ship in a frightful storm, to the east of Agulhas, doing their best to come here. Had lost sight of the large one, whilst the small one put back before the wind. Perhaps it may be the *Tulp*; its long absence makes us uneasy. Water was liberally supplied to the Englishman, who was also allowed to buy vegetables

from the gardeners. We told him that we were badly supplied with cattle, which were all required for the Company's ships. We gave him 2 oxen and 3 or 4 sheep, as they saw that we were well supplied. From Ceylon we had no later tidings than those per Hon. Sarcerius.

June 5th.—Fine, calm weather. One of the horses brought home, attacked and seriously wounded by a wild animal above the Rondebosjen; will perhaps be never again fit for work, or perhaps die.

June 6th.—Fine W. weather. Yesterday the Hottentos stole the chain and other iron of the plough lying at the blacksmith's shop; upon this we seized three of their cattle. Herry at once came to complain, but he was told that it was done by order, that he could better than we discover the thief among his people, that the cattle would not be restored before the iron was brought back, and the thief pointed out, who would then be tied to a post and thrashed by his own people. He did not like this, and requested that the thrashing might this once be forgiven. He would see that the iron is at once restored, and this he did within half an hour. The cattle were then given back, but he was told that if a theft were again committed, their cattle would again be taken and kept until the stolen articles had been returned, whilst the thief was to be surrendered for punishment by his own people. Herry was also informed of the injury caused to our cattle by his own, which he brought in the neighbourhood to eat up the grass and without selling us any. We told him we did not like it. It was finally agreed that he might remain near the fortress provided that for every large ship arriving he sold us 10 head of cattle, and for every yacht or small ship 5 head, but for a larger quantity of copper and tobacco than what was given to the other Hottentos that he might make some profit, and when he had parted with most of his own, then to proceed inland to buy others, leaving his family and cows in our care. To-day he brought 5 cows, as we had made him understand that he was to provide the Englishman also. We hope this agreement may last, that we may be henceforth more certain as regarding the supply of meat for the ships and the fort. He wished us to maintain him as supreme chief of the Hottentos, and that only he and the Dutch Commander should be acknowledged as masters of the land, but he was told that we first wished to see him fulfil the conditions, when he would be satisfied. He seemed to be satisfied; time will show.

June 7th.—Full moon; fine weather; W. wind.

June 8th, 9th, 10th.—Same weather; N. W. at night, with heavy rains.

June 11th (Sunday).—Dirty boisterous weather. One of the cattle of the Hottentos killed by a lion near the fort; the beast had continued roaring round the Company's kraal the whole night, but could not get in; we feared, however, that he might attack the sentries at the gate, which, being built of stone, and not yet

1656. — finished, was open, but he was scared by the fusées and the noise.

June 12th.—Same boisterous weather.

June 13th.—Still, misty weather. The English busy washing the linen which had become wet. At night they found that 7 pieces were stolen. On inquiry it was discovered that some of our people had bribed some Hottentoo's with a little tobacco to steal the stuff. We therefore recovered 5 pieces at once, and ordered that some of the Hottentoo's cattle should be seized to-morrow, in order that the two pieces still wanting might be traced. Stuffs recovered by Herry; English very grateful.

June 14th.—Fine, calm, sunshine; English take their leave; pay for 3 oxen 30, and 4 sheep 8 reals of 8 and are well satisfied, though they had asked for more.

June 15th.—Calm, as yesterday; death of a slave presented to the Commander by the French Admiral in March last. The Englishman leaves with a S.E. breeze for London, taking letters for the Masters. It was further agreed with Herry that he shall also deliver every 4 days an ox for slaughter and one sheep, nominally for the Commander. As long as he kept faith he would be allowed to remain near the fort, and it was stipulated that theft should be prevented on both sides, and the thieves thrashed by their own people at a post. If this arrangement is continued he may in course of time be acknowledged as chief of the Hottentoo's, and perhaps even more satisfactory conditions might be drawn up, if in course of time we learn to understand each other better; the Hottentoo's are already learning to speak Dutch, especially the children, but they do not like to live in our houses; they are grievously tormented if they are not allowed to wallow as swine in all kinds of filth. They give satisfaction in fetching fuel for a little tobacco and food, sometimes also some arrack, &c., a great convenience to us.

June 16th.—Calm, sunshine. The groom having let out the horses rather early this morning, the best of them, a stallion, was entirely devoured by wild beasts, greatly inconveniencing us, as one horse can do more than 10 men in ploughing, and carrying on clay, &c. In the wet season the wild beasts seem to be abundant here; we shall therefore have to make better stables for our horses, sheep, &c. During the forenoon the Commander saw many marks of wild beasts in the garden, and a little later about 50 yards off a lion jumped up and proceeded slowly towards Table Mountain. The sergeant, hunters, and others were sent to kill him, and at once they were followed by about 200 Hottentoo's with all their sheep and cattle driven before them. At the foot of Table Mountain the beast was so thoroughly enclosed in a deep kloof that he could only escape through the troop of sheep, which the Hottentoo's intended to be a defence. The lion was lying under a bush, and they remained between their sheep and cattle. When the lion shewed itself, and roaring, wished to break through

or seize a sheep, they rushed forward with their assegays over the sheep, making a great noise; the lion then retired, looking round very thoughtfully, but as the Hottentoo's could not very well reach him, the sergeant (the hunters and others being about 10 yards away from the beast) fired but missed; the hunters, however, sent 3 bullets through its head, so that it fell down dead at once. Then the Hottentoo's became valiant, and tried to give the animal a hundred stabs after death, but they were prevented from doing so in order not to spoil the skin, that, properly prepared, might be hung up in the large hall used for a church. The carcase was therefore brought home in a cart, and weighed 426 Dutch pounds, length 9 feet in all, and $3\frac{1}{2}$ feet high. Seemed to be as strong and high as an ordinary English or Java pony. In its stomach was found a good deal of the flesh of our poor horse, also some porcupine quills and legs, &c.

June 17th.—Fine weather and wind as above. Resolved to offer the following rewards: For catching and killing a lion, 6; a tiger or wolf, 4; and a leopard 3 reals. The hunters received 2 cases Spanish wine, 3 lb. tobacco and 2 reals. Heavy S.E. at night. The lioness came at night to visit the lion's carcase lying outside the gate and ate of the same. Unsuccessful attempts made to "bag" her also. The whole week employed in sowing and planting, and masonry at the gate.

June 18th.—Dry weather. Strong S.E.

June 19th, 20th, 21st.—Fine, warm sunshine.

June 22nd.—New moon. Same weather. The Caapmen stole during the night 12 hides. Sergeant sent to Herry to inform him. Skins at once produced, but already cut up. Herry ordered to appear with the thieves before the Commander, that they might be punished according to agreement. Herry came and said that the thieves had escaped; he wished that the matter might be overlooked this time, promising that he would take care that we would not be robbed in future. Not to cause unpleasantness and seem to be too severe, the matter was left in abeyance.

June 23rd and 24th.—Dry, warm sunshine. Very favourable for completing the gate. N.W. breeze. To-day Herry is again to bring an ox and a sheep for the fort, but not fulfilling this agreement he was sent for and was told that unless he complied with it, he was to leave the neighbourhood at once with all the Caapmen, as we required the pastures for our own cattle, and did not wish them destroyed. He replied that he would send the cattle to-morrow and carry out the agreement.

June 25th (Sunday.)—Same weather. The Caapmen already on the move, and Herry preparing to go. To the east of Salt River a large tribe with much cattle was seen approaching. We hope to be able to trade with them, as it is evident that Herry and the Caapmen will do us no good, for having sold us 10 or 12 of their leanest kine they refuse to part with any more. Two men sent out to Salt River for grass to fill the mattresses. They

1656. shot there a large steenbok, as heavy as a Javanese or English pony, which was pursued by four wolves, two of whom were hanging to its buttocks, whilst the two others endeavoured to check its progress. Seeing our men the wolves immediately left the buck, which was shot.

June 26th.—Fine, warm weather. Herry sent word by a Hottentoo who could speak a little Dutch that he had left, and we were to send him some more copper, to enable him to get us some more cattle; but having once deceived us, we are of opinion that he wished to help himself, and perhaps soothe our impatience with a few lean animals. Sickness very severe. Day of prayer and fasting appointed for Thursday next; the men exhorted to do their Christian duty on that day and to refrain from all sin.

As some take their meals like pigs without asking a blessing or returning thanks, the Gunner is ordered to pay particular attention to this matter, and when dinner is served to go round and fine all who neglect to perform their sacred duty— $\frac{1}{4}$ real for the first offence, $\frac{1}{2}$ ditto for the second, and four times as much for the third, besides arbitrary punishment according to Resolution.

June 27th.—Fine, cloudy W. weather. Men sent out to see where Herry and his friends were; one party went behind the Lion Mountain and the other eastward towards the forest. In the afternoon the latter reported that a troop of cattle found by them on the other side of the river belonged to Herry and his friends. The camp consisted of 35 huts and many oxen. They stated that Herry and the Caapmen were expected to meet them, and when together they would proceed inland. Herry was afraid to drive his cattle past the fort lest the Commander might seize it, because he had failed to carry out his agreement. The other party returning from behind Table Mountain reported that they had found there a camp of 13 houses and about 200 head of cattle belonging to the Caapmen, who had stated that Herry had proceeded along the seashore to Hout Bay, and wished to go further inland; that he intended to return with much cattle to sell to us. Time will show.

June 28th.—Fine sunshine. The 2 Hottentoo camps mentioned were still stationary; would not sell any cattle, however civilly asked.

June 29th.—The appointed day of prayer observed. Fine sunshine.

June 30th.—Rainy. N.W. wind; at night drier and calmer.

July 1st.—Heavy rain and N.W. wind, preventing mason and garden work, already impeded by the severe sickness raging now. The hospital is full; one out of every ten is ill; all are falling in; even the officers and the surgeon, who until yesterday had to be led by the hands out of his bed to see his patients, especially those suffering from old complaints; he has only an apprentice of 16 years old to help him, who also fell ill yesterday. The junior surgeon has gone to Saldanha Bay, so that the Commander was compelled to revert to his old profession.

July 2nd (Sunday).—Fine sunshine. Weather fickle. Sick as bad as before.

1656.

July 3rd, 4th and 5th.—Same weather. The *Robbejacht* arrives with reeds, skins and oil from Saldanha Bay. Wouterz: had remained behind to boil some more oil at Dassen Island. There were many natives near Saldanha Bay, who had much cattle and were inclined to trade. Had found no letters. His note is as follows:—“We send you, per *Robbejacht*, reeds, skins and oil. The season is unfavourable at present for fishing, and the sein is too bad; found no letters on the Island; natives with cattle have been here. Will delay with the *Peguyn* at Dassen Island about 10 days for more oil; will then visit Robben Island, to take in some sheep for the Fort.” 4th July. (Signed) J. Wouterz:.. The *Robbejacht* ordered at once to return to Saldanha Bay, with some copper, to see whether any cattle can be had there. Letter to Wouterz: as follows:—“As we have heard that the natives about Saldanha Bay are inclined to sell us some cattle, we send the *Robbejacht* with 85 lbs. wire and 25 lbs. plate copper, also 12½ lbs. tobacco and $\frac{1}{2}$ gross of pipes; with the wire sheep are to be bought, and with the plates fine young oxen, or calves, as full-grown animals would be too large to convey in the yacht. The animals could all be placed on Schaapen Island as long as the trade lasts, and the yacht can take them thence gradually to this or Robben Island. In case no trade is possible, should the natives have left, the yacht is to be laden with reeds without interfering with the comfort of the sheep. You may also send the *Peguyn* hither with as many men and tools as may be necessary, and yourself proceed to the Bay with the yacht for trading purposes. Should you require the *Peguyn* you may also take her. The Fiscal has been instructed to investigate your charges against the mate; it would be an ugly business if he embezzled the men's rations and wasted them in dissipation. You are to attend to this carefully, for if the overseers get drunk the precious time is wasted, and the poor fellows, who have to do the work, are robbed of their own, and this cannot be tolerated. You receive 3 more axes for cutting reeds. Only one plate is to be given for young cattle, and of this good tobacco only two ‘spans’ for each sheep, in addition to this 2, 3 or 4 pieces of copper wire; but of the other wire you are to give as much as the length of a sheep. Try and get young and healthy animals; others you will not be able to bring here alive.” (Signed) J. v. Riebeeck, 5th July, 1656.

The *Nachtglas* arrives from St. Helena. The fleet of Boogaert had left 5 days before its arrival; *Nachtglas* becalmed 7 days near the Cape. The horses at St. Helena being very wild could not be caught; the vessel, however, brought a large number of orange and apple trees, about 300: so that we hope in course of time to have a good supply. Had left on 1st of June and experienced long calms, consequently took a month and 5 days to get back. It brought also a letter from Sarcerius as follows:

1656. — “We arrived here on the 17th May. The *Nachtglas* arrived on the 7th June. From a letter left by Boogaert we were informed that he had left on the 1st May and that two English ships had also called here. In the *Oliphant* we found 18 packages of silk damaged, which we brought on shore and washed in fresh water. On the 20th the English ship *Lion* arrived, four months from Bengal, and laden with saltpeter, silk and linen. Among the sailors five were very malicious, who had been punished accordingly. We send you one Pieter Jansz: of Leeuwaarden, condemned to serve two years at the Cape in irons. It has been impossible to catch the horses in spite of the best efforts: My opinion is that it is useless to make any more attempts. The skipper Jan. Sleutel will bring you more orange and other trees than you thought of getting. Your letters to Boogaert we have opened and will carry out your request as regards the foresails and padi.” On board the *Orange*, 27th May, 1656.

— (Signed) DIRCK SARCIERIUS, &c.

July 6th (full moon).—Heavy N.W. storm: heavy rain and cold hail. Resolved to despatch the *Nachtglas* to Batavia, *via* Madagascar and Mauritius, to look after the *Tulp*, as the Resolution will show.

July 7th and 8th.—Same weather. Table Bay looked like an angry sea; the lands and gardens all inundated and much of them washed away: the embankments of the old works of the fort rained down in three places; will take us about two months to put matters right; will do as we did with the back curtain, and cover the whole with sods.

July 9th (Sunday).—Dirty, wet, but calm weather.

July 10th.—Fine, sunshine; did our best to carry the river a distance away from the gardens by means of a canal, to prevent the overflow of water: the rivers even could not contain the quantity.

July 11th and 12th.—Wet and boisterous weather. A strong rush of water in the rivers towards the sea, so that where the galiot lay the water was quite fresh. In the afternoon the storm abated and the Commander went behind Table Mountain, and found that the lands there had not suffered, but were dry, and the crops in splendid condition. At night the *Robbejacht* left, the wind being S.E.

July 13th.—S.E. wind: warm and calm in the afternoon.

July 14th.—Fine, sunshine. W. breeze.

July 15th.—At night a large troop of Hottentots and friends of the Caapmen arrive with much cattle, which they had driven from behind the Lion Mountain along the beach and past the fort, having been camped between the Kloof and Table Mountain. They were chased by the Soanqua, enemies to them and all the Saldanhars, and really robbers; the former requested to squat under the guns of the fort, and were told that they could do so if they complied to the conditions agreed to by Herry, viz: to sell

weekly to us 2 oxen and 2 sheep for copper and tobacco, &c., to feed the fort and the ships. They replied that being obliged to live upon their cattle they could not spare so much, and we then told them to march, as they only stay here to eat the grass, so that our cattle suffer grievously.

July 15th.—Boisterous wet weather. Sent men to find out what had become of the Hottentooos. They reported that the camp was about $\frac{3}{4}$ leagues distant, and that Herry was near them, whom they had spoken to. He was on his march, but declined to come to the fort. In the meantime the Caapmen had sent messengers to propose to the Commander to seize Herry and his cattle, as he had so often deceived the Company and by dishonest means enriched himself, only requesting in return that when attacked by enemies they might be allowed to take shelter with us, living amicably with us and for food and tobacco collect fuel for the cooks and do other work. They could not, however, undertake to supply as much cattle as Herry had bargained for, as they required it for their support; they would, however, undertake to get what we required from the Saldanhars and act as faithful mediators. They were told to call their chief and 2 or 3 headmen, in order to consult with them and make a proper agreement, which would bind both parties; they were also told to detain Herry in a friendly way, in order more easily to get hold of him. In the afternoon two sons of the chief came, but they were told to bring their father, to which they agreed. Treated well, they left at night. The whole night through heavy rains.

July 16th (Sunday).—Wet, rainy weather from the west. Three sons of the chief arrived stating that their father, because of the wet and his corpulence, could not very well come, but agreed to the proposal. They sold us 6 fine sheep, and stated that they abided by yesterday's proposals. If we killed Herry we would do them a great kindness, and they would get as much cattle from the Saldanhars as we wanted, who also would be served; and to clinch matters they were prepared to proceed inland and invite the Saldanhars to come hither, &c. They would leave enough men behind to fetch fuel and do other service. They were told that they might always dwell here in friendship with us, but that we would keep in consideration the catching of Herry, pretending that such a course might displease them as well as the Saldanhars. They, however, declared unanimously that they would be delighted if we caught Herry by the neck, as he had richly deserved it by stealing our cattle and afterwards our copper, pretending that the Saldanhars had stolen it, which was a lie, as the Saldanhars had traded with him for those stolen articles, by which means he was continually growing richer as long as we countenanced him. The Caapmen and Saldanhars also feared that one day he might persuade us to take all their cattle. Already he was conspiring with the Soanqua, in order to obtain a large clan, and many were already gathered around him. Not one of them is of his own people; he had

656. — neither child nor wife, except those whose parents and husbands were dead. This course he pursues daily, in order to become by increase a mighty chief. We were also reminded that when we came here he had not even a skin to cover his body with, much less a hut to live in. At night he had to sleep under the bush. Now, however, he plays the master over the Caapmen and all others. There was much truth in all this, and it gave us cause to reflect. It was resolved to keep this consultation secret from him, and that the Caapmen should try and persuade him to come and live with them near the fort, when he could be more easily seized if necessary.

Also resolved that on both sides care shall be taken that no inconvenience be caused to either party; offenders on both sides to be punished; agreement closed, and the Caapmen at once arranged for the ordinary fuel carriage and other services; payment to be a stomach-full of food, tobacco, and sometimes a little arrack, of which they are amazingly fond. They seemed to be satisfied, and promised to persuade the Saldanhars to come and trade with us for cattle.

July 16th.—Fine, very calm; the Caapmen brought a few sheep, urging us to do away with Herry, &c.

July 17th.—Fine, sunny, calm.

July 18th.—Fine, sunshine. East breeze. *Nachtglas* leaves for Batavia.

July 19th.—Same weather. The road makers sent out yesterday to repair the road to the forest, report that about $\frac{1}{2}$ league on this side of the forest the mountain stream had uprooted and carried down a large number of trees. The Commander went to see whether they could be used for timber. He found a cutting about 50 feet in the bare rock from the mountains and the wood washed down in large quantities, with rocks which had uprooted trees as long as masts. They were, however, only fit for fuel. They might easily be brought to the fort if we only had horses—our greatest want. Fuel greatly wanted, and we are compelled to employ the Hottentoo for the purpose. With wagons and horses we would have enough firewood, and be enabled to prepare lands for corn in order to supply ourselves.

Ertman Glenge, of Straalsont, was this morning confined for stealing a popgun from the armoury. Having been allowed by the gunner to ease himself, he ran away.

July 20th.—Fine weather. Wind as above. One of the men returning from the forest found on the road side 7 or 8 young cabbages and carrots. The garden being inspected, it was found that during the night many young cabbages had been destroyed, and a good lot of carrots taken out. No doubt the runaway had done it with a Hottentoo, judging from the footprints; many young plants had also been ruined by careless treading on the beds. Having assisted in the garden, the fugitive knew well where the best vegetables were, and being assisted by Hottentoo,

1656.

—

it is feared that he will teach that nation too much, who may now come every night to steal. Men were therefore sent to search for him, also some Hottentos, who were promised some tobacco and arrack if they brought him.

July 21st.—New Moon—Same weather as above.

July 22nd.—Same weather. Men sent for beams to the forest for the jetty, which is already commenced, and will require a large quantity of timber. It will have to extend into the sea about 70 or 80 rods. The runaway brought back in the afternoon by two of the Caapmen. The first night he had slept in Herry's camp and brought thither with 3 of Herry's Hottentos the stolen greens. The latter having been consumed on the following day, Herry had turned him off to get more, but knowing that a careful watch would be kept he had hidden himself in the huts of the hunters, which were erected in the places where the birds abound, until to-day, when he had been caught by the 2 Hottentos, who received a feed of rice and bread, some tobacco, and arrack for their trouble. They were also warned to tell their countrymen not to enter the gardens with any of our men, as orders had been given to the sentries to shoot all found in the gardens.

July 23rd (Sunday).—Same weather. One of the forest men brought home a leopard shot near the corn lands at the Rondebosjen; he therefore received 3 reals according to Resolution, and to encourage others.

July 24th.—Same weather. Rain in the afternoon.

July 25th.—Fine, sunshine; Riebeeck goes to Rondebosjen, to search for more lands suitable for a tobacco plantation. This herb has already been reared here successfully. A plot marked off for the purpose, and to be cleared by the two men stationed there to watch the corn lands.

Ertman Glenge tried to-day for stealing whilst on sentry, &c., and sentenced to be scourged and kept in chains during the time of his service, and without pay to be employed for all dirty work, &c.

July 26th.—Fine westerly breeze; sentence as above carried out.

July 27th.—Fine weather; provisions sent by boat to Robben Island; on their return they reported that some sheep had died but the increase had been in proportion. They brought 2 fat young rams and 10 fat tails of ewes, cut off in Hottentot fashion, as interfering with the facilities of propagation.

July 28th and 29th.—Same weather; *Robbejacht* and *Peguyn* return from Saldanha Bay with only 2 sheep; they might have obtained more, but the Hottentos had surprised the men of the *Robbejacht* and robbed them of their copper and tobacco and also a gun: they had also broken the boat in order to obtain the iron. Traffic consequently came to an end. In order not to cause greater enmity they had resolved to return. This conduct of the Hottentos shows how little they are to be trusted, and that we are continually to be on our guard; the more so as they are getting every day more

enlightened. It is better therefore to meet them here to prevent a massacre, as going to them can only be accomplished by a few, whilst the mission of many would be too expensive.

The men of the wagon whilst mowing some grass at the Rondebosjen met a lion not ten yards away from the vehicle, old, lean and famished, and determined to feast on one of the horses; he would have succeeded in spite of the efforts of the unarmed men, but they beat him off with a stick and made a great noise; he, however, followed the wagon through the bushes and hid himself somewhere near the fort; during the night he managed to enter the kraal, the walls of which had been damaged by the rain, and wounded two oxen, when he was shot by the sentries, who received six reals according to Resolution.

July 30th (Sunday).—Fine weather as above; the cattle herds brought home a porcupine, in which some suppose that the valuable stone, the pedra porca, is to be found; the same was therefore carefully opened and examined, but nothing was found.

July 31st.—Same weather as above; the Hottentoops brought us a male and female porcupine; both were searched but no stone was found. It is a wonderful animal, and so clever with its quills that it is almost impossible to catch it; when chased it shoots its quills hindwards, forcing them into the enemy about a span deep or more; this was evident in the last lion killed, which had a lot of quills through the skin and deep in the flesh, and also in the hedgehog caught yesterday, which in the presence of the men shot its quills backwards and wounded the dog that chased it, in its mouth, and when it had been caught, the dog would have been compelled to let him go again if one of the men had not smashed the brute's head with the butt end of his musket. All were afraid of getting too near and being riddled with the quills.

August 1st.—Fine weather. Some sweet potatoes planted in the sandy soil behind the Fort, the garden soil being rather too wet.

August 2nd.—West wind. Wolf shot at Rondebosjen; 4 reals paid for it. S. W. wind and heavy rain during the night.

August 3rd.—Weather continues till the afternoon; arrival of *Henriette Louise* with 273 men; left Zealand the 8th April, only one dead (died to-day), many scurvy patients on board. Skipper's name Cent Amers, junior merchant's Jan Mastin, and minister's Wilhelmus Vinderus.

August 4th.—N. W. breeze.

August 5th.—Full moon. Sickness among the men continues, greatly delaying the works, especially the jetty, as most of the carpenters are very ill, and the rest still very weak, or complaining. A large ship sighted.

August 6th (Sunday).—Fine weather. A boat sent to the ship, which was found to be the *Parel*, from Texel *via* Scotland on the 11th April last. Lost 3 by death; scurvy commencing.

August 7th to 12th.—Fine, sunshine.

August 13th (Sunday).—The same. The Lord's Sacrament 1656.
celebrated.

August 14th.—Cold, N. W. weather. No communication with
the ships. Heavy rain at night.

August 15th.—Heavy N. W. wind. The *Henriette Louise* picks
up the small boat of the *Parel*; its long boat was washed on shore,
and when the weather moderated somewhat, the big boat was sent
with about 30 men to inform us, but it drifted away beyond Salt
River towards the breakers, where it with difficulty held its own
until we sent them our two sloops to help them and bring them to
the Fort. In the evening one of the boat's crew, Jan de Logie,
took up a loaded gun, which went off and lodged its contents in the
back of the head of another man named Jerasmus . . . who
died a few hours afterwards. On inquiry it was found to be an
accident. See Resolution.

August 16th.—Stiff N. W. wind. Council held to inquire into
the accident; found that it was so, and resolved that the prisoner be
absolved from the charge of culpable homicide, but in consequence
of his carelessness he shall serve the Company without pay at the
Cape for one year. Our papers for India sent on board the
Louise.

August 17th.—Very calm weather. The *Louise* trying to get
outside.

August 18th.—Misty weather. *Louise* lying at the entrance of
the bay.

August 19th.—Same N. W. weather, finally changing for North.
Louise leaves. A dead lion found near the beach, which had a
porcupine quill sticking into his chest about two hands deep.
When skinned he was found to be so thoroughly riddled with quills
that it was evident that he had been killed by that little animal.

August 20th (Sunday).—New moon. Fine, calm weather.

August 21st.—The same weather. The Commander, with Skipper
Jonassen and Junior Merchant R. de Carpentier, proceeds to the
corn lands and the forest to put things straight there and show the
strangers the promising crops, that they may tell of it at Batavia,
and show them how much 30 or 40 horses are required here.

The Brabant and white clover sent per *Parel* are coming out
well at the corn lands; fine forage for the horses. Corn and wheat
looking remarkably well.

August 22nd.—Dark and misty in the morning; fine during the
day, at night strong N.W.

August 23rd.—Same N.W.

August 24th and 25th.—Fair weather. The *Parel* leaves for
Batavia with our letters.

August 26th.—N. E. breeze. *Robbjacht* sent to the Island for
sheep.

August 27th (Sunday).—Stiff S.E.

1655. August 28th.—Cloudy, calm, N.W. weather. *Robbejacht* returns with 19 fine sheep; the rest were in good condition on the Island, many ewes having to lamb shortly.

August 29th and 30th.—In looking about for trees fit for transplanting around the gardens to serve as shelter from the wind, the Commander found amongst others a sort of pine about 6 feet high almost similar to what we received from home in the *Parel*; we therefore planted some about the gardens and also tried some cuttings. Fine, warm sunshine.

August 31st.—Dirty, rainy S.E. weather. The Commander prevented from proceeding in his search for more trees of the pine sort, in order to be used as hedges round the gardens, as it will be always difficult to keep the common people and others out of them.

September 1st.—In the morning fine, calm weather. The Commander goes out as stated above, and has some tobacco sown at the corn lands, where the wind is not too severe. Proceeding further behind Table Mountain, where the forests are, he found very many sorts of trees similar to pine, but no real pines, and not one higher than 5, 6, or 7 feet. They seem to die every year from drought, judging from the appearance of those higher up. Some were taken out to be planted in richer soil near the fort, &c., to see whether they would grow there.

September 2nd.—The same trees found in abundance on the slopes of Table Mountain behind the fort; they however look more like the juniper tree, in consequence of their prickly leaves.

September 3rd (Sunday).—Fine weather, wind west.

September 4th and 5th.—The same.

September 6th.—Dirty, rainy weather; N.W. wind; work stopped. Very heavy W.S.W. wind during the night; hail and rain.

September 7th.—Resolved to have some shirts made for the men of guinea linen.

September 8th.—Fine, calm weather.

September 9th.—Same weather. All the men sent to the forest to fetch palisades for repairing the walls of the fort. Harder wood used now, as the old stuff only lasted three years. We trust that the new material, being very hard and green, will last longer, otherwise new wood will be wanted every three or four years, and prevent no end of other necessary work.

September 10th (Sunday).—Fine, windy S.S.E. weather.

September 11th.—Fine, air varying. The flute *De Waeckende Boei* arrived with 40 men. Had parted from the *Parel*, &c., in the North Sea. Had been delayed by calms. No deaths. Scurvy commencing; refreshments sent.

September 12th.—Heavy S.E. in the afternoon.

September 13th.—Ditto. A small ship seen off Robben Island.

September 14th.—Fine, calm sunshine; N. breeze. Small vessel arrives, named the *Zee Ridder*, from Zealand, 11th May; 64 men on board. Skipper's name Jan Leendertsz Roscam, and the

bookkeeper's Pieter Texel, of Middelburg. No deaths; only seven or eight with scurvy. Sent refreshments at once. Had met the *Emlo* near the coast.

1656.

—

September 15th and 16th.—In the afternoon strong N.W. wind. The *Emlo* arrives; skipper, Frans Hendriksz, of Straalen. Had left the Vlie the 1st May, *via* Shetland, with 19 men. No deaths; many scurvy patients however. Much rain during the night.

September 17th (Sunday).—Rainy and windy, N.W.

September 18th.—New moon. Boisterous weather and fickle winds.

September 19th.—About the same.

September 20th.—Fine weather. Our letters sent on board the *Wakende Boey* for India.

September 21st.—Rainy, N.W. weather. Arrival of *Princesse Royael*; skipper, Reynout Engelbrechts, and merchant Jacomo Mauryoque, 31st May from Amsterdam, in company with the galiot *Urck*, of Enckhuysen, and followed on the next day by the *Breda* and *Ulysses*, with another galiot from Hoorn, as they heard at sea. No deaths. Some scurvy patients and 356 men on board. Had called at St Vincent, but brought no asses, pretending, which is all humbug, that they could get none.

September 22nd.—Same wind and weather—S.S.E. at night. The *Wakende Boey* leaves.

September 23rd.—Fine, warm weather; strong S.S.E. in the afternoon. Vessel seen off the land.

September 24th (Sunday).—Same heavy weather. Death of a sailor left behind by the *Parel*, viz., Jan Albertsz Croon, of Aelsmeer; also another landed from the *Princess Royal*. Ship seen at Robben Island went to sea again.

September 25th.—S.S.E., increasing during the day.

September 26th.—Fine, sunshine; same S.E. at night.

September 27th.—Same weather. Died this morning the soldier Pieter Matthysen, of Westphalia, left behind by the *Princess Royal*. Broad Council convened to try two prisoners who had conspired to set the *Princess Royal* on fire and commit murder, according to their own confession, viz., Jan Leendertsz, of the Oude Weeringh, soldier, and Jan Meyns, of Groningen, sailor, the latter having been persuaded by the former, as appears from the evidence.

September 28th.—Fine weather. The prisoners sentenced, viz., Leendertsz to be scourged and branded with a club, with a wisp of straw placed on the forehead, and to be confined in irons for 15 years, confiscating all his pay. Jan Meyns to be keelhauled and thrashed, confiscating six months' wages.

September 29th.—Fine weather. Another half acre added to the corn lands and sown with buckwheat seed raised here—some also sown near the fort. The sentences carried out. English vessel arrives—wind too strong for communication. Our letters for Batavia sent on board the *Zee Rijder* and *Emlo*.

165. September 30th.—Heavy S.E. Vessels unable to leave. The English captain, William Harvey, and the merchant Arthur Coutine land. Name of the vessel the *Hedgehog*, proceeding to Surat, manned with 28 men, who, excepting four or five, were suffering from scurvy. Left England in April. Water allowed them, and also permission to buy vegetables from private parties—did not tell them there were Company's gardens, lest they should become too importunate; also wanted fuel, which we could not supply, &c. Informed us that about 50 ships of all kinds were leaving England for India. Boat of *Princess Royal* capsized in coming towards the land for refreshments; they therefore sent another boat.

October 1st (Sunday).—Fine weather. Our sloop brought word that, excepting three men, all in the capsized boat had been saved; the boat had been lost. The *Robbejacht* found it near Robben Island. The *Zee Ridder* and *Emlo* leave for Batavia.

October 2nd.—Dark, dirty weather. N.W. breeze. *Robbejacht* returns the lost boat but little damaged to the *Princess Royal*.

October 3rd.—Rainy N.W. weather. With tackle a portion of the jetty was placed in position—heavy beams connected with holdfasts, and dovetailed. Another English vessel arrives; had left Dover in June last for Batavia, trusts to get a cargo there at once, in order to return immediately—42 men on board; Captain's name John Brampton, that of the ship the *Olive Branch*, nearly all well. Asked for cattle and refreshments—received the same reply. Our letters for India sent on board the *Princess Royal*.

October 4th.—Fine W. weather. Busy with the jetty, which we would have got into proper position if the tackle blocks had reached sufficiently far. Postponed until low water. The English Captain landed a pipe of beer, as a present to the Commander, also 6 tongues, for which in return he received vegetables out of the garden and other presents. He begged hard for cattle, but was reminded of our own wants.

October 5th.—Dirty weather. Wind as above. The Commander presented each of the Captains with half a sheep.

October 6th.—Quiet, cloudy weather. Commenced to fill up the inside of the jetty with bush and stones. Dirty, rainy N.W. weather in the course of the day.

October 7th.—Fine weather. Began to reap the barley behind the fort, sown on 4th May. This is too early sowing, as the ears have been much destroyed by the heavy hail and rains. In the afternoon the weather was S. The *P. Royal* leaves with 350 men on board. English Captains invited to dine with the Commander to-morrow, and were also each presented with half a bullock, which had been killed, there having been something the matter with it, in return for a cask of beer and a box of gin brought on shore by each one of them.

October 8th (Sunday).—Fine weather. N. breeze. English well treated at dinner, leaving at night happy and pleasant, the

1656.

Captain of the *Olive Branch* also bidding farewell. The jetty having entailed extraordinary and heavy labour on the men, every mess was presented with 3 tankards beer and some tobacco, &c.

October 9th.—Fine weather as above. Riebeeck had another spot prepared for planting horse beans received per *Zee Ridder*. Found the barley at Rondebosjen in good order—here the wind had damaged it very much. Corn will therefore thrive there very well, if we only had horses for the plough, and also slaves for labour. Busy carrying stones to the jetty.

October 10th.—Cloudy N.W. weather. One of the castrated bulls, showing signs of dying, was killed, and given to the sick of the English vessel. The animal, like the other, was not sick, but we were obliged to kill it, and therefore could make it appear that we were acting liberally towards them. Last week the first Dutch asparagus, sown last year, was cut, some as thick as the thumb or finger, so that this vegetable seems to thrive very well here. The wild asparagus found here abundantly is also doing well. Artichokes are also so abundant that we hardly know what to do with them. A large square marked off by Riebeeck behind Table Mountain, for planting beans and tobacco; the whole enclosure of $2\frac{1}{2}$ morgen to be protected with poles from horses and cattle.

October 11th.—N.W. wind. Sweet potatoe shoots planted. This tuber grows very big here, and will, in time, be very abundant, as we only obtained 2 or 3, 3 years ago per *Swarte Vos*, from Brazil. More barley cut behind the fort; salad transplanted as the second crop, also artichokes. Currants and strawberries are thriving well, also cherries, peas, plums, oaks and ash trees. The St. Helena orange trees, and those from India, are also doing well, so that in course of time we will have all these fruits in abundance.

October 12th.—S. wind; good weather. Men sent to prepare the ground marked off on the 10th. The *Olive Branch* leaves for Bantam; the *Hedgehog* still detained by its sick kept in a tent on shore.

October 13th and 14th.—Fine weather; S W. wind. Land prepared for horse-beans, &c. At night, heavy S.S.E.

October 15th (Sunday).—Same S.E.; warm sunshine. Riebeeck goes to the Rondedoornbosjen to find out whether the wind blows there as heavily as here. It was so strong that it was almost impossible to walk in it, but the more the corn-lands were approached the weaker the wind became, and at the corn-lands it had turned into an ordinary fresh summer breeze, which could not damage the corn. On our return, the nearer we approached the fort the stronger the wind became, whilst behind the fort the barley had been blown over the whole land. At Rondebosjen hardly a straw would have blown about. In order to know the difference well, orders were left at the fort to observe the wind during the Commander's absence. It was reported to him that during his absence the wind had blown even stronger. It is therefore evident that the

July 21st.—Very light wind as we are here. A long ship arrived from Robben Island. Went ashore every half an hour:

July 22nd.—Fine weather. Sent the *Breda* right towards the west of Robben Island which it had anchored at the entrance of the bay would now have been able to reach the entrance. The *Breda* will take the following letter to the Island. You receive two months provisions and must send us 200 rams. Let us know about the increase of the flock, and whether the young rams are being castrated. There rams are to be sent in pairs of two or three of which they are old enough. Send you also 30 rabbits obtained from H. Jacob per *Prinsen Eugen*. Let us know when to be forwarded. You are advised to be very diligent with it. In the Fort 10th October, 1656.—
Signed by the *Breda*.

October 17th.—Very light N.W. wind. Ship arrives. The *Breda* reports that the increase of the Island was prospering. It brought 13 sheep, the rest being all about 10 lamb, none of them were sent. The rabbits had arrived safely and been placed among the sun-dials where small holes had been prepared for them. Had for a long time not seen any of the rabbits sent over 2 years ago; suppose that they have died or been eaten by snakes. The yacht had provided the *Breda* with a lot of vegetables and a sheep. In the afternoon the master merchant F. van Brandhorst, landed, bringing two letters from the *W*, and a separate one from the Chamber House with 2 parcels of seeds—turny-grass—to be sown here. He reported that the skipper's name was Ald. Jansz. Conyn, the 1st July from the *W*, having lost his consort to the south of the Calaries. Had 49 men from pestilence before the line was reached. Six weeks were spent in that latitude, and there were still about 30 or 40 sick. Abundant refreshments sent on board. The crew of 250 reduced to 210 or 212. Officers all well, also the minister, Bernardus Brockborn, with his family of a wife and 8 children. Only one had died, a child of the sergeant.

October 18th.—Fine weather as above. Hottentots from the interior report that a good many others were coming with cattle to sell to us. Wouterz: stated that they were the same men who had attacked and robbed them at Saldanha Bay, but all were ordered to pretend that they were not aware of the fact, and to treat them kindly, that they may be made to understand that we only intend to dwell with them on friendly terms; at the same time we took necessary precautions against them, in order to prevent annoyance and massacre. The watch was told to be on their guard, but also very friendly, as in this way the Company's interests would be best served, especially when no chance is allowed them to insult us; prudence is therefore necessary, for they cannot help stealing, and, having done so, are afraid to return. In this way the cattle trade suffers. Men of the *Breda* landed in the evening and placed in a as all could not be accommodated in the hospital. Two died on shore, and two had been buried on Robben Island, so that we died. To be abundantly supplied with refreshments.

1656.

October 19th.—Fickle weather. *The Robbejacht* proceeds for repairs to Saldanha Bay; takes 8 sheep to Robben Island; and is to touch at two other islands to see how the seals are getting on. She is also to try and buy calves and sheep at Saldanha Bay, as her instruction will show. More men sent to Rondebosjen to prepare more land for beans.

October 20th and 21st.—Fine weather; at night strong S.E.; after midnight wind changed to N.W. The prepared lands at Rondebosjen sown with horse beans about $\frac{3}{4}$ morgen; some sweet potatoes also planted; not having used any of it, the produce is already large. The same has been also done with other vegetables, in order to obtain abundance of everything. With grain especially we have advanced, and we would have had much more if we only had horses in sufficient numbers. We are also making hay for the horses, which have hitherto been fed on barley and rice drawn from the ships, in order to be able to do their hard work properly. Those of the *Hedgehog* (which looks more like an eagle or other birl) took their leave for Augustin Bay in Madagascar, especially for fuel and meat to be salted down—thence they proceed to Mozambique for ivory, and thence to Surat, Coromandel, etc., for cloth; thence they proceed to Macasser for cloves, and thence via the Straits of Bali to England. To-night the Caapmen bring us two lean bullocks, the first of the season, for which we paid more than usual to encourage them.

October 22nd (Sunday).—Cloudy, fickle weather. The minister Brockborn preached in the Fort, and baptized the child of the gardener Hendrik Boom with the name Dirk. The *Hedgehog* leaves.

October 23rd.—Fine sunshine. S.W. breeze.

October 24th.—The same. Riebeeck goes to Rondedoornbosjen to see after the planting of various kinds of beans, and the hay makers, who had already collected a large quantity and were still going on; the clover being about knee high and standing thickly, will be of great service for the horses in the dry season, when there is hardly anything to eat. As at home so here—hay must annually be made of it. The corn looked beautiful, and altogether safe from the wind. About the Fort it is very much beaten out by the wind. Wheat or grain farming must consequently be carried on here and further off, the ground in Table valley being left for pasture—some seed of the scurvy plant also sent to the forest to be sown there in shady and damp places.

October 25th and 26th.—Weather as above. The minister again preaches and baptizes a sailor named Abel Sjoars, whose parents were Mennonites and are now dead. He had always adhered to the Reformed Church, &c. Various sorts of beans sent to Rondebosjen to be planted there. Behind the fort the first tobacco plants were planted from seed grown here.

October 27th and 28th.—Fine weather as above.

1656.

October 29th (Sunday).—Warm sunshine—fickle wind. The *Breda* takes our letters for India on board. At night a vessel sighted.

October 30th.—Which arrived this morning with a W. breeze. She was the *Ulysses* of Amsterdam; had met the *Robbejacht* on the 20th at Saldanha Bay, where it had taken in water and obtained birds and eggs. Thirty men on board, 1 dead, 1 sick, and 4 or 5 laid up with scurvy. Skipper's name Jan Thymonsz; had on the 14th sighted an English vessel. No Hottentoo's in Saldanha Bay; the men of the *Robbejacht* cutting reeds for this place. The dry season setting in, the making of bricks is commenced. The present kiln in formation will suffice for a long time, as all the heaviest works within the fort have been finished, and only a few houses and stables are required outside.

November 1st.—Wet N.W. weather; rain serviceable for the tobacco. Permission granted to Rev. Brockborn of the *Breda* to remain here until the arrival of another ship, as he complained of ill-treatment on board the *Breda*. No room for him and family on the *Ulysses*. As he will consequently remain here some time, it was resolved to have regular services on Sundays and Wednesdays; to commence to-day (Wednesday.) The *Breda* leaves with a S.S.W. breeze. The *Ulysses* also ready to go, having completed repairs in Saldanha Bay. It had only to take in water here, some sheep and vegetables, &c., for the voyage. The sick exchanged for healthy men. Obtained 8 bullocks and 10 sheep from natives introduced by the Caapmen; they retained 3 pack oxen to carry their luggage home; they promised to bring more; hope that the cattle trade will revive.

November 2nd.—Full moon; heavy S.S.E. *Ulysses* leaves. The Commander again proceeds to Rondedoornbosjen to see how things are thriving during this gale. Found, especially in the case of the ripe barley, sown for trial, that not one ear had been beaten out, and the other grain was succeeding admirably. The wind there not blowing a tenth as hard as here, being only a summer breeze. Here it blows so heavily that the houses in the fort look as if they can tumble about our ears. Evident that that and the neighbourhood is the place for grain.

November 3rd.—Same heavy gale; wind very gentle at the Rondebosjen. Gale abated during the night. Bought 2 oxen and 1 sheep.

November 4th.—Fine, calm weather; men sent to the forest for beams for the jetty. The rest of the scurvy grass seeds sown there. Resolved on second thoughts only to bake bricks sufficient for the ensuing year, as the chief and most important buildings are finished now, viz.: powder and other cellars, stores, and batteries inside. Outside is not so very urgent at

weather; strong S.E. in the side of the bay, ordinarily ceasing

November 6th.—Fine, sunshine; fickle breeze. 7th, the same. 8th, the same.

1656.

November 9th.—Fine, cloudy weather; west breeze. The *Meulen* of Hoorn arrives, consort of the *Breda*; 36 men on board, 1 dead, also the wife of the sick comforter, the rest suffering from scurvy; had only touched at St. Helena Bay in $32\frac{3}{4}$ lat.; had found no water, but birds and purslain; had also undergone repairs there and taken in some ballast. Arrived on the 24th and left on the last day of the month (October); had been retarded by the S.E.; found the grounds between Saldanha and St. Helena Bays fine for anchoring in, at 20, 30 and 40 fathoms, and St. Helena Bay as good as, if not better than Table Bay for all winds except the N. and N.E.; easily entered and left.

November 10th.—Yesterday's weather with drizzling rain. An English flute, smaller than the *Wakende Boey*, and of Dutch make, arrives. Its name is the *Postilion*, from London 28th June, and of about 120 tons, destination Bantam; skipper John Kingsman; Merchant, Samuel Keerdt; 30 or 40 men on board, all well except 2; touched nowhere; wanted water. Also asked to buy cattle, sheep and vegetables. Told them we had no cattle to spare, water they could take, and fish they might catch with their sein; they might also buy vegetables from private parties. At night strong S.E.

November 11th.—The same wind; preventing the Englishmen from dining on shore; the men sent to the forest for timber for the jetty. Men also busy six miles away cutting fuel for their kiln; so that the ball is kept rolling, whilst tobacco-planting is also going on, etc.

November 12th (Sunday).—Fine, S.E. weather; wind stormy at night. 13th, S.E.

November 14th.—Wind strong again in the evening.

November 15th.—The same. Those of the *Meulen* unable to go on board.

November 16th.—Heavy gale. Riebeeck goes to the back of Lion's Rump to see whether it blows there. Found it to be calm and a W. breeze blowing; he therefore considered whether the ground there might not be favourable for corn; found it rather poor, however. Will examine further and make a trial next season; before the grain is half ripe the seeds are beaten out by the wind in Table Valley, but at Rondebosjen this is not the case, though the S.E. does blow there, but never so hard as within a league of the fort.

November 17th.—After sunrise it began again to blow heavily so that no boats could move. Riebeeck found it calm at the Doornbosje, and the corn uninjured there. The other seeds were thriving well also.

November 18th.—N.E., fine weather.

November 19th (Sunday).—Cloudy sky, west breeze. The *Postilion* leaves. The *Robbejacht* arrives with reeds. Had been

thoroughly repaired. N. natives not with. Had seen many seals, so that the boat may commence again.

November 20th.—Yesterday's weather, N.W. and drizzling. Commenced to cut the wheat behind the fort, though not quite ripe; nearly all the seeds had been beaten out by the S.E., so that not a whole peat will be saved; this is to be a much used corn at Rondebosch as may be required.

November 21st.—Same weather: still saturated: will become large when sowing the experiments already made, and be very good for salting. *Menken* receives our letters to Batavia.

November 22d.—Cloudy weather, N.W. and rain.

November 23d.—The same. Rain good for the gardens, especially for the tobacco, cabbages and watermelons, with which we are now laying ourselves. Early in the morning the wolves had made a great noise around the cattle kraal: a lion also chased a wild boar, which in escape, climbed on the walls of the Fort, but coming against the palisades he fell back into the canal and escaped from the lion. Riebeek goes again to the back of the Lion's Rump, and the ground being wet, he had the soil tested and found it to be fairly good, and worth trying for wheat. To plant other things there would not be advisable, as no fresh water is to be had there for irrigation. Grain being sown in May would ripen about this time of the year, and would there also be protected from the wind.

November 24th.—Cloudy, N.W. weather. The *Menken* leaves. Resolved that the seal fishery shall be recommended next week, and in the meanwhile to stay the work at the kilns.

November 25th.—Fine weather, and wind as above. Men sent to the forest for more beams for the jetty. As the wild animals are getting so bold that when it begins to grow dark they enter wherever an opening is left, and even during daytime visit the gardens, and as therefore it is dangerous to walk alone, and the cattle cannot be left to themselves, a watch was set at night in a secret place near the carcass of a calf, when a wolf was killed. The wild animals are therefore near, and it is evidently dangerous to go out alone.

November 26th Sunday.—Weather as above. The *Menken* still in sight. The *Ru'binus* sent for 20 sheep, and with the following letter to Robben Island:—"You receive 2 months' provisions and are to send us 20 sheep, also the butch ram: you receive 2 young rams to be fattened, and 2 ewes for the stock." Signed J. v. Riebeek. 26th November, 1656. A vessel sighted in the morning, arrived about 8 o'clock, and named the *Wautier*, skipper Evert, consort of the *Pearl*, &c. Left Isle of Wight on 17th May, touched at Sierra de Leone 6th August for water, left the 17th, only passed the line 29th September: had sighted but not spoken a Spanish vessel sailing in the direction of Rio Plate, and a Dutch vessel on the 24th September. Has 40 men on board: only 3 or ~~complaining~~ slightly of scurvy.

November 27th.—Stormy S.S.E. weather. Fine weather near the corn lands and the forest, to which the Commander proceeded to give orders.

1650
—

November 28th.—S.S.E. wind until the afternoon, when a N.W. breeze blew. The *Robbejachtjen* returned from Robben Island with 20 fine sheep, reporting that there were still about 360.

November 29th and 30th.—Fine N.W. weather. Rain at night.

December 1st.—Full moon. Mostly N.W. wind and rain.

December 2nd.—Fine weather. *Robbejachtjen* and *Peguyn* proceeded to Saldanha Bay with 28 men, tools, &c., for seal fishing under Woutersz. The *Wachter* receives our letters for Batavia.

December 3rd (Sunday).—A sloop sent to the vessel lying at the entrance of the Bay that the *Wachter* may report her at Batavia. Vessel found to be the *Vogelsangh* of Amsterdam, skipper Robert Ram; had left 27th June. Has 208 on board—8 dead and many suffering from scurvy. The *Wachter* ordered to report this ship at Batavia.

December 4th.—Westerly breeze. The *Vogelsangh* anchors in the roads.

December 5th.—Fine weather as above. Riebeeck goes to inspect the corn lands and the work in the forest, in order to encourage the workmen, and takes with him in the wagon all the Dutch women of the Cape, in order to provide them with a little pleasure. They enjoyed the growth of the corn, &c., very much at Rondebosjen. Everything grew as well as in the Fatherland.

December 6th.—Wind and weather as above. The cattle herds reported that Hottentoo, with 3,000 or 4,000 head of cattle, had arrived, some of whom stated when at the Fort that they wished to sell some to the Company.

December 7th.—Same weather. The gardener and some men sent to Rondebosjen to sow the last crop of peas. The Hottentoo sold us one lean ox and four do. sheep.

December 8th.—Fine weather. One more ox obtained from the Hottentoo; they told us that Herry was encamped, with a large herd of cattle, at the Salt Pans.

December 9th.—The weather being fine, the Sergeant and some soldiers were sent to Herry with the assurance that if he brought us much cattle he would be treated as a friend. The Sergeant reported that Herry with 5 huts, 200 sheep and about 200 cattle, and in company with four other Hottentoo troops, mustering together 64 huts and much cattle, were in the neighbourhood of the mustard plot. Herry was afraid of being made prisoner, and at last appeared shivering like a lady's lap-dog, when he had been told that no harm would befall him. His conscience pricked him. He wished to be again graciously received, and in that case would come with 20 oxen and sheep to sell to us. He would also get other natives to come and trade with us if we only had copper and tobacco.

1854. December 10th Sunday.—Fine, sunshine. Harry not arriving, the Commander, in the afternoon, after the parade, and in the company of some soldiers and the officers of the *Vogelsangh*, went to his camp, and at the same time visited the plantations. Harry was greatly frightened, thinking that he was to be made captive, for he often asked whether the Commander intended to do him mischief or to kill him; he was told not, but that henceforth he might visit the fort and eat and drink there as before, if he only remained honest, and took care that the Company received many oxen and sheep, &c. He answered that those with him now—Caapmen and friends—had to live on their cattle, but in about 10 days others would arrive and bring as much cattle as we could buy. The Commander knew very well that nothing could be had from the Caapmen, as their cattle were their only riches. The Commander had to be satisfied, and to show his goodwill gave Harry a cup of sherry; the other Hottentoes were treated with arrack and tobacco. Upon this the Hottentoes and their wives commenced to jump and dance, and left us in good spirits. We trust that by bringing in cattle, Harry will show that there is some good in him.

December 11th.—Fine, sunshine; in the afternoon strong S.E. Commenced to reap the corn at Rondebosjen; not one ear had been injured by the wind, though left till it had become over-ripe. Quite sure now that the wheat will thrive there. Some sweet potatoes also planted.

December 12th.—Fine, warm weather. An ox and sheep secured for the *Vogelsangh*.

December 13th.—Cloudy, calm weather. Some buckwheat also reaped at Rondebosjen; very good, and as large as peas.

December 14th.—Warm S.W. weather. The *Vogelsangh* leaves with our letters, leaving behind 2 sick. Wishing to pass to the west of Robben Island he was obliged to put back, but was told by the Commander that with that wind he should always pass on the other side, as mostly all the ships did. Generally off the Lion Mountain there was a dead calm, and ships were in danger of getting on the rocks under water off Robben Island. Between Robben Island and the mainland there is no such danger, everywhere the anchorage is good, and with a S.W. the sea can easily be reached. With a S.-Easter the ship can run before the wind and then full and bye. The N.-W. would be below the island equally favourable, and enable them to double the Cape easily.

December 15th.—Fine weather—S.S.E. The *Vogelsangh* leaves as directed. The last corn reaped behind the fort; only some buckwheat left. Next week all the wheat at Rondebosjen will be ripe. The cleared plots here are being manured and prepared for cabbage, &c.

December 16th.—Fine weather—S.S.E. Harry and friends left and squatted $1\frac{1}{2}$ leagues farther behind Table Mountain, below the forest, in the valley where next year we hope to sow corn.

December 17th (Sunday).—Fine weather and wind. The Commander goes to Herry after parade, and found him hiding, as he had not kept his promise to bring cattle and sheep. Nothing could persuade him to make his appearance, and we gave the other Hottentoes (some 1,000 or 1,200) each a little tobacco and arrack as a sign of friendship; arrived at home at night, hoping that we may be more successful with others, as nothing can be done with this lot.

December 18th.—Fine sunshine—south-west calm. Added another piece, and made in the same way, to the jetty. Eleven more of these cases are to be made and be distant 15 feet from each other, connected together with heavy beams laid across bridge-like. Lots of work still to be done, as the wood is far away and difficult to get.

December 19th.—Same weather; wind as above. Two more cases placed in position, and sunk with branches and stone. The Sergeant visited Herry to-day, but he kept himself so grand that he did not even come out of his house, and would not say what his intentions were.

December 21st to 23rd.—Fine weather; in the afternoons fresh S.W. More beams sent for from the forest; 6 or 8 more cases required for the jetty, and more heavy beams and planks, &c., for the top. The Commander found on his usual walk of inquiry in the sandhills behind Lion's Rump, about $\frac{1}{2}$ an English mile from the fort, very fine white limestone and easily cut, as good as at Batavia; a great convenience for building, as much labour and time is required for making bricks.

December 24th (Sunday).—Fine weather. S.S.E. in the afternoon on the other side of the bay.

1st Christmas, 25th Christmas season; dry warm weather.

2nd Do. 26th

3rd Do. 27th The wind west.

December 28th.—Fine weather, cloudy sky and showers; the first in six weeks' time, and therefore very serviceable for the plantations; left off too soon. Some men sent to Rondekoornbosjen to reap the corn and buckwheat, and others to thresh the same; all the carpenters and carriers sent to the forest to cut some more beams for the jetty to finish it before the winter season that the ships' crews may henceforth obtain water without getting wet. Brickmaking continues; three leagues away fuel is to be collected, and the battery is being raised higher. Expect soon to hear about the seal fishery at Saldaña Bay. From all this it is evident that much is still to be done, besides repairs, whilst in one or two months' time we must again set to to reclaim land for agriculture.

December 29th.—Same weather. Strong S.S.E. in the afternoon.

December 30th.—Fine weather; all men sent to the forest to drag the beams to the road.

December 31st (Sunday).—Full moon; fine warm weather; strong S.E. during the night.

1657.

1657.

January 1st.—New Year's Day; heavy S.E.

January 2nd.—Warm N.W. weather; at night S.S.E.

January 3rd.—Same weather; at noon fine and calm. The foresters report that Herry and the Caapmen were proceeding towards False Bay; another small party had afterwards encamped at the mustard plot. There being many fires all about, it is to be hoped that other tribes are near, who may be inclined to trade. Herry and his friends having seen that we always use the manure left behind by their cattle for our lands, set fire to the whole this time to our great loss. Strong S.E. at night.

January 4th—Fine weather in the morning; strong S.E. at night.

January 5th.—Abating in the morning, but strong again in the evening.

January 6th.—Same weather. Men sent for more beams to the forest.

January 7th (Sunday).—Fine, sunshine; 8th, the same; heavy S.E. at night.

January 9th.—The same; 10th—18th, fair weather. N.W. breeze; at night strong S.E.

January 14th (Sunday).—Strong S.E. 15th to 17th, the same.

January 18th—Calm, N.W. weather. 19th, misty and drizzling rain, N.W. breeze.

January 20th.—The same. Riebeek proceeds to Rondebosjen to inspect the works there; found everything in order and worth continuing; men also sent to the forest for more beams. Near the Salt River a troop of Caapmen had settled, 150 in all, and with a good lot of cattle; would sell none. Came here with 10 oxen laden with steenbrasems, killed with assegays in a lakelet at False Bay, and which they exchanged for tobacco; as much as will keep the garrison for 4 or 5 days. Some were salted.

January 21st and 22nd.—Same weather.

January 23rd.—Slight S.E. *Robbjacht* seen off Robben Island.

January 24th.—Fresh S.E. *Robbjacht* arrives with 5,000 skins and 9 half aums oil; brought the following letter: "Since the 25th December the vessel has been detained by the S.E. wind, with 5,000 skins, &c., as described herewith. You will be able to judge which way of preparing is the best; those with the fins on can only be prepared at 20 per day, and require 14 days to dry, besides being in danger of rotting. We believe the skins which have been sewn together to be the best, and will continue preparing them if provided with twine and needles. Would like to have the following articles, viz: rice, as $\frac{1}{3}$ of what we got was dirt; arrack, of which 100 cans are consumed monthly; and bread. Oil and vinegar we have in sufficient quantity until February. About a $\frac{1}{2}$ of the meat cask was empty. 200 clubs and six spars for the tent; also 3 dozen knives with sharp points; 2 leaguers wooden

pins. Empty half aums for the oil, Dutch shirts and socks for the men. All are well, and we hope to get about 10,000 skins here, but we wish to have five or six more men as we are saddled with 5 good-for-nothings; 2 we now send back, viz., Lourens Anthonisz and Cornelis Huybrechtsen. They are not worth their salt. Have been obliged to take two men off Gerrit Harmansz in their stead; would otherwise have had 1,000 skins more. Have for this cause also been compelled to remove the chains from the prisoners." Written on Marcus Island in Saldanha Bay, 17th January, 1657, and signed J. Woutersz: "P.S.—Send us also 1 or 2 canes; we took some twine from Harmansz; we also require some rose water, as one or two have sore eyes, also some cotton cloth for lint, and some rope."

1657.
—

January 25th.—Fine weather. Skins being landed, and vessel prepared to leave again.

January 26th and 27th.—Same weather. The yacht laden with the articles for Saldanha Bay. The brick kiln ignited; 84 loads of fuel collected for the purpose about $2\frac{1}{2}$ leagues away, taking 3 months.

January 28th (Sunday).—Dark, misty weather. The yacht leaves.

January 29th.—Full moon; same weather. At night it commenced to rain. Weather S.W.

January 30th and 31st.—S.W. weather; cloudy; rain at night.

February 1st.—Same weather. Some Caapmen, having seen that we annually gathered salt at the pans, brought a lot on 13 oxen, about a last, for which we paid about 25 lbs. tobacco. Got as much last month; this saves our men a great deal of labour.

February 2nd.—Cloudy sky. Nourishing W. weather.

February 3rd.—Same weather. More beams sent for. On Saturday afternoon, when the men had ceased work, they undertook to drag the logs towards the road for some brandy and tobacco. As the wood wagons in coming down the mountain must drag bushes behind them in order not to go down too fast, they were ordered henceforth to drag beams to be left at Rondebosjen, in order to have a supply for the redoubt there. From this place they are to take every morning a load of bricks to be left there. At night S.S.E.

February 4th (Sunday).—The same weather. Vessel sighted off Robben Island; the *Robbejucht* sent to inquire.

February 5th.—Fine sunshine; N.W. weather. The *Hilversum* arrives with letters from the 17, dated 12th October, 1656. 54 men on board, skipper Jacob Jansz and bookkeeper Jacob Buyck, all well.

February 6th.—Rainy, fickle weather.

February 7th.—The same. Riebeeck goes to Rondekoornbosjen. He ordered that that bosjen should be levelled inside and turned into a kraal, or otherwise to serve as a defence for the redoubt projected there. He proceeded 1 or 2 leagues further to

1657. — examine the rich soil, and show everything properly to Hon. van Goens on his arrival. He unexpectedly came upon about 90 Hottentoo huts and much cattle, all Caapmen. He also came upon Herry thoroughly surrounded by bushes. He was very much afraid, but was re-assured by kind words, and he told us a lot of lies to get into favour again. He told us that our men stated daily that if he came to the fort he would be killed. During the evening service the garrison, on pain of punishment, were orally and in writing ordered to refrain from such talk.

February 8th, 9th, and 10th.—Fine N.W. weather. Men sent for more beams.

February 11th (Sunday).—Same weather. The *Hilversum* receives our letters for Batavia, and a note for Dassen Island to be given to the seal fishers that the fishing may cease sooner, according to orders from home. The vessel also to take on board the two guns lying there, and advised to catch and collect as many birds and eggs as possible.

February 12th.—S.E. breeze. The *Hilversum* leaves.

February 13th.—New moon; cloudy sky and rainy. W. wind.

February 14th.—Dry fickle weather. 15th, the same; S.E. at night.

February 16th.—S.E. Tried to brew beer; no proper yeast obtained.

February 17th.—S.E. going down at midnight.

February 18th (Sunday).—Fine weather. After service Riebeeck proceeded to the mustard plot, about $1\frac{1}{2}$ leagues from this, to find a suitable place for a bird trap to be made when the men arrive from the Islands.

February 19th.—Hazy weather, N.W. Riebeeck proceeds about 3 or 4 leagues to the flats behind Table Mountain to fix upon a spot for a fort to protect the lands, for whose cultivation many were ready to ask for their discharge on conditions favourable to the Company and themselves. Heavy S.E. in the afternoon, but only a summer's breeze where the lands were.

February 20th.—Same S.E. More people ask for their discharge and for the same object, Riebeeck goes with them to mark out their plots and draw up preliminary conditions. Called at the camp of Herry and the Caapmen; gave them some tobacco and brandy. A Hottentoo had been stung by an adder in his foot, which was much swollen; he had the leg under the knee tightly bound in two places, and on the foot small incisions were made as the cuppers are accustomed to do; the foot itself was placed in hot cowdung; a man and woman were sucking the blood from the cuts, spitting it out on the cowdung, and pulling away as heartily as a child at its mother's breast. There is evidently a great feeling of affection towards each other among these people; all were equally busy helping to further the man's recovery. Herry, the fat chief, and others, seeing us looking about and hearing us say that we intend to build houses here and there (many of them understanding and already speaking Dutch and using that language when

1657.

bartering), asked where they were to go to if we occupied the land, for they were camped where some free men had selected their sites. We told them that they might live under our protection, and there was room enough for all. The ground would be used by us for growing corn and tobacco, of which we would as good friends give them a share; they seemed to be satisfied, but only half liked the idea.

February 21st.—Fine sunshine, fickle weather. Many having been informed of the intention of the Masters to establish freemen all about, and under favourable conditions, a party of five selected a locality on the other side of the Fresh River, named by us the Amstel, below the forest and beyond it where our wood-cutters are, near the crooked tree about 3 leagues from the fort, and as long and as broad as they wished it, on condition that they were to remain on the other side of the river. Another party of four selected a spot about a league nearer, at the Rondebosjen on this side of the river or Amstel, from the small bridge leading to the forest as far as the spot chosen for the redoubt, near where the bird trap is to be built. The boundary of that land will be $\frac{1}{2}$ league long, the river will divide them from the other party, and they may go back as far as they like towards Table and the other mountains. The party of 5 may go forward towards the mountains of the continent proper, as far as they like—these two parties are therefore stationed right on the isthmus on fruitful soil. The further colony has therefore been named Amstel, or the Groenevelt, and the furthest redoubt will be $\frac{1}{2}$ league beyond it. The nearer colony at Rondebosjen (which is to be converted into a cattle kraal, and provided with a gate) is to be called the Dutch Garden; a redoubt will also be built there.

The following freemen were selected:—

For Groenevelt,

To be called Harman's Colony.	Harman Reemajenne of Cologne, marine. Jan Maartensz de Wacht of Vreeland, marine. Jan Van Passel of Geel in Brabant, a soldier and brewer, also a maker of brandy. Warnaar Cornelisz of Nunspeet, boatman. Roelof Jansen van Dalen, soldier.
-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

These men have to grow corn, and

For the Dutch Garden,

To be called Stephen's Colony	Steven Jansen of Wageningen, sailor, well acquainted with tobacco culture. Hendrik Elbertz of Ossenbrugge, cadet. Otto Jansen of Vreede, soldier. Jacob Cornelisz of Rosendaal, soldier.
----------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Besides corn and tobacco these men have to cultivate garden produce, and both parties are also to breed cattle, pigs, geese, ducks, fowls, &c.; anything, in short, that may benefit them. The chief object of the Company, however, is agriculture. Freedom granted to the men on the following terms, subject to approval from home.

1657.

— For Harmans Colony at Groenevelt.—That they receive in freehold as much land to the east and on the other side of the Amstel River near the crooked tree, as they may be able to plough in three years' time alone or with whatever additional help they may be able to obtain, and that no taxes shall be required of them during that time. After that the ground shall be subject to such taxes as the Company may deem necessary for their protection. The ground will however remain their property for ever, to do with it what they like, subject to notice to be given of the same to the Commander or his deputy, and to serve instead of mortgage, &c. Before the expiration of the 3 years no sale may take place, but the wheat culture especially is to be diligently proceeded with, also that of tobacco. The Company to buy the produce at a fair price. On the 1st April there will be sold to them a plough, a harrow and 12 oxen, to be trained before that time, and each to cost 25 gl., also spades, &c., required for their farms, and at cost price in Holland. Their provisions to be paid for at the same rate as that fixed for the married. May fish with hooks everywhere in the river, but at first not for the sake of selling; only enough for themselves, that agriculture may not suffer, which is the chief point. Their garden produce not required by the Company they may sell to the ships. They shall not however go on board before the third day and buy no liquor there, in accordance with the placaten on this subject. Neither shall they keep any taps in the country, but confine themselves to their business. They shall also not buy any cattle or anything in the world from the natives on pain of having all their property confiscated. The cattle required for the farms they are to buy from the Company, viz., for a cow 25 gl., a sheep 3 gl., and a living pig at so much per lb. Their animals they may only sell to the Company, at the prices named. As regards the increase of their cattle, the Company is to receive a tenth, in payment of the pastures used; nothing however will be charged for pigs, fowls, &c., because they are fed by hand. On these conditions letters of discharge were granted to them in the form of those in vogue at Batavia, without prejudice to their agreement with the Company.

The conditions with the Stephen's Colony—the "Dutch Garden"—are as follows:—From the 1st March they shall occupy in freehold the land to the west of the Amstel, and as much as they can bring under cultivation within three years between the small forest bridge and the site of the redoubt near the bird trap; all that time they are to pay no taxes. The small plot cultivated by the company last year is also included; as well as the tobacco still growing there, as Stephen Jansen himself planted and looked after the same. As there is no plough at hand for this party, and they are consequently to use the spade, which is hard and tedious work, a wagon and six oxen is allowed them at the price stated for carrying manure on the land. The oxen are to be trained by themselves, and they are to get on the best way they can until a plough is imported. As these

free men have very little money, and little to draw from the Company, it was further resolved to advance them what they required on security of their crops, to be surrendered in payment of the debt; for the rest their lands, &c., remain mortgaged to the Company. That proper order may be kept among them, they shall be subject to the same laws in force at home and in India, and to others which may still be made for the public benefit. For their protection they shall also be allowed such arms and ammunition as they may require. Because those of the Stephen's Colony will have to use the spade, they shall, when the tobacco is ripe and properly prepared, receive for it 6 st. per lb., subject to approval from home.

1657.

Five ships sighted, viz., the *Prins Willem*, &c., 4th December from Batavia, and under command of the Hon. Mathys Crab, admiral; Pieter Hackius, vice-admiral, and Pieter Kemp, rear-admiral. Value of cargo fl. 1,402,869 8. 2. Had some stores and merchandise for the Cape on board, and letters from India to us. Were told in them that the *Draak* had with 118 men been wrecked on the south land. Afterwards 79 more were added to the number, making a total of 197 souls. God help the poor fellows, as much effort has hitherto been made to save them, but in vain. Three more ships would follow, the *St. Louise*, &c., and we were told that Batavia was at war with Bantam, and that Colombo had been captured by the Company after a seven months' siege. That many had lost their lives, amongst them the Hon. Director-General Gerard Hulst.

February 22nd.—Fine, calm weather. The five vessels anchored on the opposite side of the bay. Sloop sent thither with refreshments and the following note: "We hold a sealed letter to you from the 17, very likely containing further instructions. The S.E. prevents me from coming off myself. Having seen you have called together your Broad Council, I have sent you notice of the presence of the letter, as you may decide to leave for St. Helena without calling here, and so remain ignorant of its contents. (Signed) RIEBEECK. P.S.—Send you some refreshments with the gunner. Boat is small, wind strong, and the distance great, would otherwise have sent more." Wind growing very strong; afraid that the sloop would drift to sea; took refuge behind Robben Island. The ships could not reach the road. One appeared on shore, as its head was not pointed to the wind, and it had lowered its top masts. This was confirmed by a Hottentoo, and men were sent *via* the beach to gather full particulars. Another ship sighted at night near Robben Island.

February 23rd.—Wind not so strong. The men reported that the vessel was on shore, about the distance of a musket-shot from the beach. Expected to be got off during the spring-tide. News brought at night that the *Amersfoort* had been got off safely.

February 24th.—Fine, sunshine; W. breeze. The ships arrive in the roadstead.

February 25th.—Same weather. A boat of the *Dordrecht* sent to Robben Island for 30 sheep, and with the following note:—“ You must send us 30 ewes which have lambed long ago, and the best wethers and rams. The young ewes you are to keep for breeding. Hendrik Symens and Christiaan Wilhelms are sent to relieve Sybrant Reinker and Willeni Harmensz.—(Signed) Riebeeck.” Heavy S.E. at night.

February 26th.—Same S.E.; less during the day. Riebeeck takes the Commanders, Crab and Kemp, to the lands and gardens given to the free men, and shows them the various places fit for agriculture. From Herry and the Caapmen they gathered that the Saldanhars were near and had killed some of the Caapmen; they also intended to drive Herry &c. away, and take possession of the neighbourhood. Herry and the Caapmen had therefore united to repel the attack. Riebeeck told them that he would not allow the Saldanhars, when visiting him, to be molested. They did not like this, and said that the Saldanhars were not Cape people; that they were the owners of the soil, and would not allow others to occupy their pastures. They were answered that the Saldanhars should be allowed to come to us to sell cattle, and in the meanwhile Herry and Caapmen could retire, for safety's sake, behind the Lion and Table Mountains, until we had obtained sufficient cattle. They might then again take up their old position after the Saldanhars had left. They seemed to be satisfied, but gave us to understand that they would not tamely submit to the Saldanhars. The boat brought the sheep.

February 27th.—Fine N.W. weather.

February 28th.—Full moon; strong S.E.

March 1st to 3rd.—Strong S.E.

March 4th.—Fine weather, N.W. Riebeeck, Crab and Kemp visit the Hottentoo camps and the freemen. Strong S.E. at night.

March 5th.—S.E.; fine at noon. Commander Crab calls his Broad Council together, which resolves that the vessels shall leave the day after to-morrow for St. Helena, to wait there for their consorts. Pork scarce on board; resolved to put the men on allowance and supply oil instead. Riebeeck having reported that many ships had delivered short cargoes of rice at the Cape, it was resolved to supply the deficiency, reckoning 5 p.c. for waste. The Council, however, would not consent to advance the stores still on board the *Wapen van Holland*, which had most likely proceeded to St. Helena, where the fleet might recoup themselves easily. All the stowaways from Batavia to be left here, with 2 or 3 others who have been offending on the voyage.

March 6th.—Fine, calm weather. Seal-skins shipped in the vessels (5,000).

March 7th.—Fine, calm weather. Letters for Holland sent on board the fleet. The *Robbejacht* returns from Dassen Island with the seal-fishers, who report that about 7,000 more skins could have been easily obtained.

March 8th.—S.E. beeze. The fleet leaves. Complaint laid by the seal-fishers against their new chief, Gerrit Harmansz, charged with irregular and disorderly conduct, and waste of provisions, in consequence of which the men had abundance at the beginning, but afterwards suffered hunger and distress. He daily allowed everyone to fight and quarrel for his brandy, and do many other improper things, too shameful and sinful to be described, as the following will show:—"To Riebeeck. As in consequence of our former complaints, Gerrit Harmansz was appointed our superintendent, arriving at the island on the 5th, and distributing our first rations on the 6th February, victualled for a month with 4 ankers arrack, 1 anker brandy (of which none of us received anything excepting 1 or 2 glasses), also with 2 casks of rice, and one of meat, and an anker of vinegar; we were grateful, and satisfied with what you sent us, but hitherto we have only received the half of everything; one anker arrack was empty when the yacht arrived. On the 6th we received our first rations of arrack and rice, and Wouter Cornelisz, one of the best seal-catchers, was appointed caterer, who for eight days distributed the rations properly; after that 12 or 13 of the men received (from Harmansz) 8 days' rations in advance for a spree, and the others received nothing. There were some who received rations for 8 days, some for 14 days and some for three weeks; some had a glass of brandy, but the largest number did not receive a drop; Harmans said the brandy was given him for himself alone, and he only gave to others by favour. We only ate meat 7 days, when there was nothing more to be had; Harmans himself consumed the liquor and the meat, the former to slake his thirst instead of water. No order is maintained, and everyone is made to scramble for what he wants; whoever can fight or throw the best, is promised a glass of liquor, and when Evert Berentsz exposes himself he receives a glass; the butler soon saw that whatever he desired he tried to buy for arrack or brandy, hence after being 5 or 6 days in the bay one cask of rice was already empty; the waste was great, and at first we did not think that we would soon have a favourable wind to leave, for when he arrived the fishery had been concluded; many were beginning to feel sick, there being no wind to leave; there was no rice, no arrack, no meat, no oil, no bread, we had only birds to eat, for we were at the Margasen Island. On the 18th, 13 of them had a spree with 8 days' provisions when the last arrack was consumed. During the night of the 19th the wind became favourable, and the yacht unfurled sails but waited for the boat; but as Harmans delayed so long in bringing his things to the boat precious time was wasted, and when we started the wind changed and the yacht went out to sea during the night, about 8 or 9 miles, before a heavy S.W. wind, dragging behind it 2 full boats. The smaller one being loaded with casks consequently sank, but hung on to the bigger one. The men cried out: 'We are sinking' and they were not very far from it; Harmans then came from his bed and said, 'Be quiet; may the

and take you, I intend, & encouraging the men. We lost the boat and returned to the bay, finding a tent on the mainland; there we caught fish enough to eat, but as no order was kept the men were allowed to eat. Harmanus would give us no salt, and said, "If you do not care to gather for yourselves, I at least will find my food." At the same time we packed 700 sea mews by your orders of a few feather beds and a pillow. About 30,000 seals could be secured here if Jan Woesten could have remained here, as he has great experience in this matter. Harmanus's proceedings however are injurious in every way, and he has no knowledge of the business; he neither knows to give nor to take, but the end will show. The 'pigs are already running in the corn lands,' as everybody may fight for what he wants, for whether cook, butler, boy or convict, everyone does as he likes, and this has never been so before." Signed by A. v. d. Pavert.

P.S. No religious services are kept here, and the men live worse than the beasts of the field; I will therefore be surprised if God's blessing can rest on this expedition as before. In his great conceit Harmanus also said "What does the Commander think? Does he suppose that he has done me a great service by stationing me on this island? Let him rather give me a flute or yacht; that would serve me better." The above declaration confirmed on oath by the men, and the fiscus ordered to proceed to-morrow morning early on board the *Robbenjacht* with the gunner of the fortress, a sober man and a good navigator, and take charge of the vessel: make an inventory of everything, and bring Harmanus on shore in irons for trial.

March 9th.—Yesterday's order carried out; found on board also some egg shells and rhinoceros horns, which Harmanus no doubt embezzled. Skins discharged from the boat to enable her to run regularly between this and Robben Island. Heavy S.E. during the night.

March 10th.—Fine weather. Men sent to forest for beams for the jetty.

March 11th.—Fine N.W. weather. 12th.—Fine weather. One of the Stevens colonists came to complain that the Hottentots had robbed their tobacco beds and refused to restore the 100 lbs. weight stolen, showing the points of their assegays. One Corporal and 10 men sent to persuade Herry and the chief of the Caapmen to restore the articles and to forbid their men to steal. We would otherwise be obliged to allow our people to seize their cattle, which could not promote a friendly feeling. The men were ordered, if receiving a refusal, to give no offence, but only to remain on their guard in case of attack. Not to be the first to attack, but rather to prevent all causes for hostility, and await a convenient time to pay them off. The men on their return reported that Herry, &c., were fleeing into the kloofs of the mountains towards the Hout Bay, having dropped some assegays in their hurry, and left behind 5 oxen, which were being brought hither. Near the mustard plot the animals had escaped as far as Harman's colony, where an

1657.

—

attempt was made to stop them, but 4 or 5 Hottentooos managed to outmanœuvre the colonists and drive the cattle away, not wishing to approach our men at all, however kindly invited. The men therefore returned, bringing the assegays only. The Hottentooos near the fort had also run away in the meanwhile, afraid of being made scapegoats. What the result will be is difficult to say; we are to be careful, however, and be on the defensive, especially as regards the free men, for whose protection and that of the cattle, bricks and beams are collected in order to build a redoubt. At night two Hottentooos arrived, and somewhat able to speak Dutch, told us that they were running away because they feared that we would do them harm for stealing the green tobacco leaves. They were told the contrary, and urged to forbid their people to steal, that we might live together in amity. We also showed them the assegays, and told them that the owner could have them back if he came for them—all we wanted was to prevent annoyance on either side. They were told to inform Herry and the Caapmen of our wishes, and having been well treated went away.

March 14th.—Fine weather, N.W. breeze. The Commander and 30 men proceed to mark off the spot for the bird trap about $1\frac{1}{2}$ leagues away. He visited also the two colonies. The men found busy building houses, and fairly industrious. Rain at night. Some garden thieves sentenced, and Harmans sentenced to be disgrated and again become ordinary sailor.

March 15th.—New moon. Rainy weather. N.W. breeze. The case of Woutersz: settled. Resolved that he be disgrated, as in the case of Harmans, and that for the libels uttered by him he is to apologize, at the same time retracting them—his tongue is also to be pierced, and he is to be banished on Robben Island for 3 years.

May 16th.—Fine weather. N.W. Sentence on Woutersz: mitigated, his tongue not to be pierced, and himself not to be banished, but disgrated to the rank of common soldier. At night a boat visited the *Robbejacht*, stating that the vessel sighted in the afternoon was the *Orangien*, now anchored off the Lion's Rump, with the Hon. V. Goens on board. It was afraid to come at once, as news had been received that the Cape had been surprised and sacked. V. Goens wanted a gun fired to give him notice that everything was all right. This was done, and a boat sent to him with refreshments, &c.—the commander of the *Robbejacht* to act as pilot for the *Orangien*.

March 17th.—Fine weather. Riebeeck goes on board early. *Orangien* had left the Vlie the 22nd November with 403 men—3 had died and 2 were drowned; had touched at St. Vincent, and had spoken about the Angola trade with the director of the West India Company on board of a ship also lying there, and proceeding towards the Gold Coast and the Gulf of Guines. The junior merchant A. v. Leeuwen was very ill, and also 30 men, who were to be sent on shore at once. At night strong S.E.

1657.

March 18th.—S.E. weather. *Robbejachtjen* sent to the Island for 30 good sheep—the men in charge there to send us word how the increase is progressing, also how the rabbits are getting on. They received also one month's provisions, and had to castrate the young rams—the ewes which had been landed a long while ago were to be sent over for the ships, and also some wethers. Six young ewes and 5 rams were sent thither for the stock. News brought at dinner that a vessel was entering the bay, which proved to be the *Malacca*, which had left Holland with the *Orangien*; few sick on board and only 3 deaths.

March 19th.—Fine, calm weather; W. breeze; 20th, the same. *Robbejacht* returns with 30 sheep.

March 21st.—Same weather. By order of Van Goens 40 wood-cutters are sent to the forest to help until Monday, in order to get as many beams ready as 200 men could drag outside towards the road and for the jetty. Men also ordered on shore to accompany Van Goens and Riebeeck in their inspection of the whole settlement and promontory, and with a whale boat to visit all inlets along the whole coast, sounding the latter from this to False Bay, making exact charts of the whole. Van Goens also intends to land on the beach within sight of the sloop, and whenever possible take notice of everything, and further proceed inland to have a good look at the country and a drawing made of it.

March 22nd.—Fine, calm weather. Van Goens and Riebeeck go by the back of Lion's Rump along the shore to Hout Bay, where they passed the night in a tent. They waited there for the sloop under command of the chief mate of the *Malacca*, but the latter strayed into a small sandy bay behind the mountain called the Sugar Loaf, on the outside of which the Hout Bay is situated. Van Goens therefore took his bearings and drawings on land.

March 23rd.—N.W. wind. In the afternoon Van Goens and party leave Hout Bay, and pass through the Hout Valley through the cloof called the "Pass," a good distance towards the flat of the isthmus between Table and False Bays. There they were kept by the rain and passed the night; the neighbourhood was carefully inspected, the levels taken, and drawings were made.

March 24th.—Fine weather. Van Goens proceeds early in the morning towards many distant points of False Bay, where he visited most of the valleys, mountains and corners of the whole Cape, took their levels, and made charts of the same. At night he reached the Harman's Colony and slept there.

March 25th.—Same fine weather. Van Goens marched through a large tract of the before-mentioned flat between the mountains of the Cape and the continent, and had a most careful survey and measurement made of the country between the two bays.

March 26th.—At night he arrived at the fort and ordered that proper drawings were to be made of everything; also that the timber cut in the forest should be dragged out of the forest by 200 men of the *Orange* and *Malacca*.

March 27th.—Fine, changing weather. Men sent to the Sand Bay behind the Sugar Loaf to fetch the sloop. The *Malacca* ordered to make sail to-morrow morning early; sloop arrives safely.

March 28th.—Fine weather; general council held. Question considered whether Harry should be removed, or the matter still left in abeyance, &c. The latter course adopted, that no fear may be caused to the Saldanhas expected here during the wet season, and from whom a large number of cattle may possibly be bought. A fixed requisition for supplies for the year decided on, and to be drawn from the ships. Vacancies on the *Malacca* filled up, and the latter ordered to sail with despatches for India. Strong S.S.E. in the afternoon.

March 29th.—Full moon; fine weather. The landsurveyor and some men with beacons sent out by Van Goens to beacon off the flat above-mentioned in a straight line. The *Malacca* leaves with 363 men.

March 30th.—Rainy N.W. weather. The surveyors return without having completed the right measurement; they were ordered to go again to-morrow, and were given full instructions how to proceed, &c.

March 31st.—Rainy N.W. weather. The French ship *La Marechal* arrives, returning from Madagascar; one of the four which were here last year, Admiral de Laros on board and 170 men; lost about 400 men at Madagascar in consequence of the unhealthiness of the climate; the other 3 vessels were too weak-handed to leave. It brought us 4 men of the *Tulp*, which during the night of the 2nd of December, 1655, had been overtaken by a hurricane near the river of Calamboela, opposite St. Maria, and been lost with about 40 lasts of rice bartered there; all the men and some merchandize had been saved; excepting 11 all had died on St. Maria of sickness. Among them F. Verburgh; the skipper, and assistant Cornelis van Heyningen and mate; 6 of these had voluntarily remained with the French, and were looking after the merchandize. Van Goens sent a welcome to the French admiral, and an invitation to dine with him in order also to obtain more news. After dinner we gathered that this *Marechal* had been in the Red Sea and captured a Moorish prize filled with musk, civet, amber, aloes, &c. It was now proceeding home. The following has been stated by the four men regarding the *Tulp*:—“ During the night of the 2nd of December, the *Tulp* was overtaken by a hurricane, torn from her three anchors and hurled towards the sea; the wind being very strong, they had to cut the main mast, and were knocked about until they were thrown on shore at Colamboela, when both vessel and cargo were lost. The next day some merchandize was saved, as the list will show; we remained 7 or 8 days at the wreck when a certain king visited us and also some blacks. They brought our goods to a large square, where a few houses stood, in which they harboured us for about a month. The king of the Island St.

Maria, hearing that some Hollanders had been wrecked on the other side, came over with 4 canoes and brought our skipper and some others to St. Maria. Verburgh and the rest remained 4 days on a neighbouring island, whose king conveyed them also to St. Maria, where king received them with hospitality: from him he bought 4 horses in one of his towns, but we were unfortunately visited by illness and in a short time 13 died; among them Frederick Verburgh, the skipper Cornelis Janse: Holsteyn and the bookeeper Cornelis van Heyningen. The sickly season lasted especially from February to July, during which period, thunder, lightning, wind and rain were so great that it seemed as if heaven and earth would pass away. On the 19th of May, 3 French ships arrived, viz.: *Le Duceau*, &c., from them we learnt that the first vessel *St. George* had proceeded to the French fort Tschamboer. The *Maréchal* was destined to cruise in the Red Sea, where it captured a small Moorish vessel, laden with amber, &c., and thence returned to St. Maria on the 1st December, 1656, finding the two other vessels lying there thoroughly helpless. On the 14th January, 1657, *Le Duceau* proceeded to Tschamboer with us, the ten survivors and our goods, leaving behind the two other ships, which were entirely unfit to go to sea: they were therefore put on shore. The *Maréchal* remained behind to take charge of the cargo of the wrecks: after 14 days all we arrived at Tschamboer, which fort is surrounded by palisades, and has 5 or 10 small pieces of art. also about 100 men. Fourteen days after our arrival the *Maréchal* also arrived, having on board the guns, &c., of the wrecks. About the end of February the *Maréchal* left for the Cape with no fewer on board: the six others were left behind in charge of the goods, whom the French Admiral would not take with him, saying that he had too many men on board, and had been obliged to leave a few of his own people behind. The men left behind at Tschamboer, are Pieter Posters, of Ter Veen, sailor; Jonas Janse, of Amsterdam, marine; Jelle Hendrickse, of the Kuyjnder, sailor; Robert la Gruve, of Hendry, cadet; Hendrik Janse, of Kreeveld, soldier; and Hendrik Ibrantse, of Wierum, marine. The merchandise saved had been stored in the French fort; did not touch at Maccarabas: it is said that some French are stationed there. In Antongil Bay, about 10 lasts of rice were bought by our men: thence they sailed to Kite Bay, where they also obtained a large quantity of rice: they would have got a full cargo there, but as the king of Colambuela invited us so kindly to visit him, Verburgh did not like to lose the opportunity of forming a friendship with him. On the 23rd November, we therefore left for Colambuela, where as stated the galiot obtained its full cargo. The Kings of Antongil and other places were most kindly disposed towards us, but they could not bear the sight of French, who do what they can to steal from the natives what they can. The cargo of the Frenchman consisted of stores, a small quantity of amber, &c., obtained as stated, in the Red. The *Duceau* had also to be abandoned at Tschamboer and

1657.

drawn ashore there. The only French fort at Madagascar is that at Tolanaer, very poorly defended with slight palisades. In the Bay of Antongil, however, they had left 17 men in a lodge with whom one of us, viz: Hendrick Dircksz, of Naarden, voluntarily remained. About the 1st August, the French had observed a galiot cruising before Tolanaer about 8 days; very likely it was the *Nachtglas*, which left the Cape the 18th July last year to search for the *Tulp*; but as it did not call, the French were afraid to go near it.

April 1st (Easter)—Stormy N.W., and rainy weather.

April 2nd.—Fine, N.W. weather. French Admiral unable to accept Van Goens's invitation to dinner in consequence of yesterday's storm.

April 3rd.—Riebeeck instructed by Van Goens to measure the distances between the beacons and the nearest mountains of the main land, which were found to be fully $1\frac{1}{2}$ Dutch miles or 2666 rods. The surveyor found the distance between those beacons and the Cape Mountains to be 1000 rods, total 3666 Rhineland rods. Vessel sighted.

April 4th.—Fine weather; the *Vogel Phœnix* of Delft arrives; had left Goeree on the 25th December last; skipper Cornelis Stamper, crew 312 men, 3 dead.

April 5th.—West breeze; the *Robbejacht* sent to the Island for 30 sheep; the overseers there ordered to let us know how many there are now, as Van Goens likes to be informed. Van Goens and Riebeeck again go out to inspect the beacons on the isthmus, and had all distances surveyed and marked.

April 6th.—The same was done to-day, and at night Van Goens returned to the fort. Strong S.E. in Table Valley but hardly any wind in the country.

April 7th.—Fine weather; Van Goens surveys the Table Valley and others in the neighbourhood.

April 8th.—French Admiral dines on shore; heavy S.E. at night.

April 9th.—The same wind; Van Goens visits the freemen, and leaves instructions regarding the boundaries of their farms.

April 10th—Fine weather; 3 sheep and some vegetables presented to the French Admiral, who allows three of the men their discharge. The fourth he wished to take home to give evidence regarding the English prize captured by him on his outward voyage; this was considered but fair, on condition that on his arrival in France he should be allowed his liberty. S.E. at night. The following promotions made, see Resolution of 10th April, 1657.

April 11th and 12th.—Fine weather and same wind. Letters for India sent on board the *Phœnix*.

April 13th.—Calm weather. The *Phœnix* leaves.

April 14th.—Same weather. *Le Marechal* leaves for Nantes with a letter of Van Goens for Holland.

April 15th.—Misty S.W. weather.

1657. April 16th.—Cloudy W. weather. Van Goens has a trial made to see how the cutting of the canal will succeed; the most difficult place was tried and found to be fairly manageable.

April 17th.—Same wind and weather. Van Goens tries more difficult and stony places and finds them also manageable; the rest found to be easily workable. The work, if taken in hand thoroughly, will be a success.

April 18th.—Drier weather, air changeable. Vessel sighted near Robben Island.

April 19th.—Wind S.E. Van Goens, having fulfilled his charge, and done what was required, took his leave and left on board the *Oranje*, for Batavia. Left behind him written orders for our guidance and his letters for Holland. The *Viney* arrives from Zealand, 24th Dec.; had 76 on board, 6 dead, among them the skipper Jan Bartelsz. Vessel commanded by the chief mate Joest Janz: of Seer-skerten; Daniel Knibbe, book-keeper. Most of the men suffering from scurvy.

April 20th.—Fine, warm weather; 25 men sent to the forest for beams.

April 21st.—Dark sky, W. wind. Two vessels sighted, one an English ship the *Marigold*, from Batavia, 1st Jan.; cargo, pepper and cloth; 40 men on board; captain, Roger Andrew. Reported that the four last return ships could be hourly expected. The other vessel was the *Verenburgh*, bringing us letters from Holland; skipper, Hendrik Juriaansz; book-keeper, Reynier Pauw; 245 men on board. Had left the Vlie 24th Dec. last. Had not been able to touch at Ilha Fungo and therefore brought no asses; only two deaths.

April 22d.—Warm sunshine.

April 23rd.—Same weather. 100 men sent to the forest to drag out some beams for the jetty. Full council held to consider despatch from India, dated 4th Dec., ordering us to send a vessel to the Southland in search of the crew and cargo of the *Druick*, wrecked there in $32^{\circ} 30'$ lat. The men had been left in deplorable circumstances, and not been found by the *Falk* and *Goede Hoop*, sent out from Batavia to search for them, and which also left behind them eleven men, &c., &c. (See Resolution of 23rd April, 1657.)

April 24th.—Same wind. The English vessel leaves, taking for us a letter for the directors and one for Middelburg.

April 25th.—Same wind. The money on board the *Viney* transhipped into the *Verenburgh*, which proceeds direct to Batavia, whilst a voyage to the Southland is not without much danger.

April 26th.—Same wind. The land-surveyor and two others proceed to survey and measure the hitherto uninspected portion of the Cape Point, in order to have a correct chart ready for the return fleet. Ploughing commenced yesterday and to-day. Oxen too young and untrained for the work—have to use horses; having only six at hand, only one plough could be employed.

April 27th.—Cloudy, N.W. weather. The *Vincq* gets as far as Robben Island.

April 28th.—Full moon—fine sunshine. The *Vincq* gets safely to sea.

April 29th.—Dark N.W. weather—stormy and rainy in the afternoon.

April 30th.—Same weather. The land-surveyor returned and reported that he had closely examined and surveyed all possible points between the Cape and False Bay, excepting one high, stony foreland. He had, however, well observed its bearings, as the drawing will show; but it will not be placed on the chart before Riebeek himself shall have visited and examined the same. During the night the boat of the *Veenenburg*, laden with refreshments, was cast on shore by the heavy sea. The next morning it was repaired and sent on board with another supply.

May 1st.—Wind and weather as above, but not so stormy. Our letters for Batavia sent on board the *Veenenburg*.

May 2nd.—Fine S.E. weather. Departure of the *Veenenburg*. Wind veers to S.W. *Oyeraar* arrives at dusk; Skipper Jacob Doorn and bookkeeper François de Coninck; had left Zealand on the 24th Dec. last, becalmed a month at the line; 219 men still on board; 9 dead and 2 drowned by falling overboard; scurvy appearing slightly.

May 3rd.—Fine N.W. weather; 80 men of the *Oyevaar* sent to the forest to drag forth some beams.

May 4th.—Drizzling rain, ceasing in the afternoon. Vessel sighted—S.E. at night.

May 5th.—S.E. until noon. *Gekroonde Leeuw* arrives; had left the Vlie with the *Veenenburg* 24th December; touched 3rd February at Cape Verde because of its sick and loss of spars; found good refreshments, and left on the 12th February; lost 22 men; has still 357 on board and fairly well. Skipper Dirck Cornelisz: and junior merchant Arnout de Heus.

May 6th.—Calm weather. Officers of the *Gekroonde Leeuw* bring our letters on shore.

May 7th.—100 of its men sent to the forest to fetch beams for the jetty. The millwrights select the spot for the horse mill, the timber required to be obtained from the forest. The sailors on proceeding to the forest were surrounded by about 4 or 500 Hottentos, who robbed some of their food. There was nearly a fight, but a mate being present who was here before, and who knew that quarrels were better if avoided, as the roads would become unsafer than they already were, he led the men towards the Duinhoop redoubt, where he asked for an armed escort, which was granted.

May 8th.—Fine weather; death of a colt: cause unknown.

May 9th.—Drizzling calm weather from the N.W. An English ship the *Mayflower* arrives from Coromandel the 29th January, old style—cargo, cloth, sugar and saltpetre; 50 men on board;

1657. — destined for London: Captain William White deceased; vessel commanded by his son, who was but badly obeyed; had a very painful voyage of 3 months; lay about a month off and on between Agulhas and this; very much in want of victuals and ship's tools, &c., for which they begged hard: also for beef. Told them of our own wants and allowed them water and to fish along shore.

May 10th.—Fine, somewhat cloudy weather. The sloop sent for 39 sheep at Robben Island and a letter as follows:—"Send us 30 sheep of the ewes which have lambed long ago and of the finest wethers, also as many tails as you may safely cut off from the larger ewes. You receive one month's provisions and 4 young sheep, among them 2 half bred Europeans. When the latter are fit for use you may send over the old Cape rams, &c."

May 11th.—N.W. wind, sloop cannot leave. English Captain threatens that if we do not assist him, he intends to go inland and obtain cattle from the natives in a friendly way or otherwise. He was told not to do so, as the Company had taken possession and would never allow another to interfere with its jurisdiction. He ought rather to be satisfied with such assistance as we in our small way were able to render him. He seemed to think it strange that he could not do what he liked and go whither he wished, and was told that this liberty was not allowed even to our own men; that the Company incurred great expense in order to have the sole occupation of the country for securing refreshments for its vessels, of which some were sent on board of his ship, besides a sheep, in return for which he promised to take some letters for us to Holland.

May 12th.—Wet N.W. weather: victuals &c., allowed the English ship *Mayflower*. See full particulars in Resolution of this date.

May 13th, New moon (Sunday).—Rainy N.W. weather.

May 14th.—N.W. stormy weather, heavy rains. Riebeeck visits the orchard, &c.

May 15th.—Same weather; not so severe. Riebeeck measures the Company's and freemen's lands, finds 20 morgen prepared, as much as will contain the seed on hand and reared here; $\frac{3}{4}$ to be divided between the 3 companies of freemen and $\frac{1}{4}$ for the Company, and to be sown at once. Death of a convict, Jan Leendertsz. The *Oyervaar* takes our letters for India.

May 16th.—Fine, calm weather.

May 17th.—N.W. fine weather; 30 sheep arrive from Robben Island; 15 lambs had been born, so that 320 were on the island. Males required for the rabbits there.

May 18th.—N.W. wind; wheat sown below the forest.

May 19th.—Dirty, heavy N.W. weather.

May 20th (Pentecost).—N.W. breeze. The English Captain takes our letters for Holland, also those of the Hon. Van Goens, as we fear that the second return fleet has passed.

May 21st.—Dirty N.W. weather.

1657.

—

May 22nd.—S.S.E. breeze. The *Oyeraar* leaves. Riebeeck visits the corn-lands, of which a large portion had been sown. The wife of the sick comforter, Pieter van Staels, gives birth to a daughter.

May 23rd.—S.E. weather. The *Mayflower* leaves. The *Gekroonde Leeuw* receives our letters for Batavia. Arrival at midnight of the *St. Louisa*, under command of Admiral the Hon. Volquerius Weesterwolt; had with its consorts left Batavia the 4th February last. The *Robbejacht* sent after the *Mayflower* to try and get the letters back in order to forward them by this vessel.

May 24th.—W. wind and fine. Westerwoldt lands, and receives supplies, as per Resolution of this date. He gives us letters from Batavia, dated January 31st, 1657. No chance of reaching the English vessel, which had left last night with a fine S.E.

May 25th.—Fine, calm weather.

May 26th.—Dirty, rainy weather; N.W. wind.

May 27th (Sunday).—Dirty, as above. 28th, same. N.W. weather.

May 29th.—Fine, S.S.E. weather. The *Gekroonde Leeuw* leaves. The *Robbejachtjen* takes some convicts to Robben Island, in order to commence work at the stone quarries there, where beautiful white stone has been found, and easily worked. This would be better than brick, to make which entails much labour, and requires much fuel. Three servants, and three male and female convict slaves have therefore been sent to the island—1 as superintendent, 1 as shepherd, and the rest to work the quarry to see what success can be secured.

May 30th and 31st.—Fine, calm weather. Riebeeck and Westerwoldt find the corn-lands, about 2 hours' distance from the fort, to be 20 morgen in extent, and properly sown with wheat; 14 belonged to the freemen and 6 to the Company. Have no more seed to put into the ground, as there is much time for ploughing, and much ground ready for oats, barley, peas, beans, linseed and hemp, &c. The quarry at Robben Island commenced to be worked. 130 sheep still on the island.

June 1st.—Fine sunshine. Some land ploughed behind Lion Hill.

June 2nd.—Rainy, W. weather. The ground above-mentioned sown with some wheat, barley, oats, rye, beans and peas, hemp and linseed, millies and white Zealand beans, also some rice in wet ground. Death of the sailor, Juriaen Willemsz, of Amsterdam. Westerwoldt decides to proceed to St. Helena, and there wait for the other vessels, until the 4th July. He receives our letters, and those of Van Goens, for Holland.

June 3rd.—Dirty, rainy, W. weather.

June 4th.—Fair, cloudy, N.W. weather.

June 6th.—Drizzling, N.W. weather. Three freemen had proceeded, without our knowledge, about 15 hours' walk inland, mostly towards the south, and had there found two native encampments, with about 500 or 600 people, some of the friends, or pre-

1657. tended friends, of the Caapmen, but separated from the latter by a beautiful river, on both sides thickly studded with bitter almond trees, and in such a fine, moist valley, to which those of the Cape bear no comparison. They treated our people very kindly, and at once brought wood for a screen to keep away wild animals. They also erected a hut for them. Two young oxen and 3 sheep were bought from these natives, who were unwilling to part with more, and said that the real Saldanhars were 10 or 12 days' journey further away, and would be here in the dry season to sell cattle. They (the natives) called the spot *their Holland*, or Fatherland, because of its rich pastures and in order to give our people an idea of the excellence of the spot. If we had obtained asses we might make arrangements for a land journey, in order to explore the country.

June 7th.—The same dirty, N.W. weather. Death of the marine, Gerrit Juriaensz, of Dorum, a good ploughman, whose loss will be felt ; also of Meyndert Remmersz, cadet. The *St. Louise* leaves at night with a S. breeze. Some garden seeds, sweet potatoes and horse-radish sent to Robben Island to try them in the sandy soil there, as will appear from subjoined letter to Woutersen :—“We send you the seeds, &c. (mentioned above). The sweet potatoes grow well in sandy soil, and the Company is much interested in the growth of the horse-radish. You are to look well after these things without neglecting the work at the quarry, and better than your predecessors, who have been very careless. As the master mason has no doubt given you sufficient information, and the quarrying is progressing satisfactorily, he is to return to his work here. Keep the work going, and send us what you already have at hand ; do this whenever a vessel arrives, unless otherwise ordered. P.S.—Mr. de Man sends you the clothing for the men, also some medicine, &c.”

June 8th and 9th.—Fine, clear weather.

June 10th.—Fine weather as above. This being the first Sunday after the departure of the return fleet, a holiday was given to the men to keep their Cape “kermis” according to annual usage, &c.

June 11th.—New moon—same weather as above. The *Robbe-jacht* brings some hewn stone and the report that there was more on hand, but about half an hour's walk distant from the beach. Resolved to make another trial with the stone in the downs here to find out whether cutting them would not be cheaper. An English ship sighted.

June 12th.—Fine, calm weather.

June 13th.—English ship *Welcome* arrives—skipper's name William Hardgreave, 55 men on board ; cargo, saltpetre, pepper, Surat cloth—allowed some water and refreshments, the latter to be obtained from the freemen ; Captain dined with the Commander. Had met about 100 miles away a Rotterdam ship, perhaps the *Slot van Honingen*, and a week later an Amsterdam vessel with all its yards broken, no doubt the *Arnhem* from Batavia, which was

so leaky that it was compelled to make for Mauritius. They told us also that 5 ships from Goa and one from Persia had arrived at Surat, also the *Nachtglas*, which had left this last July via Madagascar, to look for the *Tulp*. Twelve vessels were lying before the bar at Goa, and Colombo had been taken by the Company.

June 14th.—Fine weather. The English officers dine with Riebeeck, and told us that the Portugees were faring badly everywhere in India, &c.

June 15th.—Misty N.W. weather; a sheep and some vegetables presented to the English Captain, who promised to take our letters to Holland.

June 16th.—Fair weather. Riebeeck goes to inspect the ploughing, &c.

June 17th (Sunday).—Dirty, rainy and changing weather. Riebeeck's wife confined of a daughter.

June 18th to 23rd.—Dirty wet weather—strong W. wind; ploughing continued. Death of the marine Pieter Cornelisz Fock.

June 24th (Sunday) —Fine S.E. weather.

June 25th.—Full moon—westerly breeze; our letter sent on board the *Welcome*.

June 26th.—Hazy N.W. weather.

June 27th.—Stormy, wet N.W. weather.

June 28th.—Wet weather and the wind much stronger. The rivers overflowing in all directions—the lands of the freemen all under water, a regular inundation which may cause serious loss; the new garden behind the fort, 4 morgen in extent and newly sown, under water completely, and washed away by the river streams. Next year a recurrence will be prevented by making embankments and ditches around it. The Company's lands, however, about 20 morgen in extent, still comparatively dry and uninjured because of the trenches made through them. Had the freemen taken our advice and done the same they would not have suffered the loss. The wood wagons unable to move, the road being in many places from 2 to 4 feet under water; shelter made for the oxen at the granary.

June 29th.—Dirty, stormy weather from the N.W. Riebeeck goes to the lands to see how things are and find means to draw off the water, &c. Resolved to have drains made through the lands of the freemen and embankments above, &c. He further proceeds to the flats, where Van Goens wishes to have the canal dug (about two hours away), and finds the whole country so inundated with rapid streams that the whole cutting, with redoubts and all, would, if made, be swept away at once. The flat had become a combination of lakes; the work should therefore for the present be left in abeyance.

June 30th.—Same wet stormy weather. The waters increase on the lands, and as the English ship has not yet been able to leave we wrote a short note to the Masters warning them not to be in too great a hurry with the work, &c.

July 1st. Sunday.—Heavy weather: the letter sent on board the Engelien.

July 2nd.—Duty, and rainy weather, less wind: S.E. in the afternoon. The Wolken leaves: strong S.E. at night.

July 3rd.—Fine calm weather. Hans de Bont and two others heard a fox following 3 oxen to be drowned. See Resolution of this date.

July 4th.—Fine weather.

July 5th to 7th.—The same. Some men sent to the forest to fetch more beams for the ferry. A light plough also prepared for land in the gardens, the men not being a sufficient number to dig it with spades. Two hours' distant from the fort the plough is also steadily working: some land is also being levelled and cleared there to be ready for the ploughing, whilst a good quantity of barley and beans has already been sown for the Company, and the freemen have also not been idle.

July 8th Sunday.—Heavy S.S.E.

July 9th.—Fine, calm weather. Riebeck goes out to see what grounds there may be about the 2½ morgen already cultivated, for future operations. Having crossed the dry bush river he found about as much as had been already cultivated on this side. He also arranged for making a drain around the lands of the Steven's Colony, the latter being too weak-handed to do so alone, as the Company's wagons with their loads of wood are unable to cross those bugs in safety. He also ordered that a certain kind of young tree should be planted round the gardens in Table Valley for shelter against the heavy S.E. winds. He also found the best spot for a redoubt to protect the lands, to be just between the dwelling of Jan Reyniersz and the Steven's Colony, on a fine hill and commanding the Company's whole orchards and the places of the freemen; also that instead of 4 only 2 watchhouses would be necessary, one opposite Salt River, where the redoubt Duinhoop is under the eye of the fort, and the furthest above the Harman's Colony, and commanding about 4 or 500 morgen of arable land, both together being about 2½ hours' distant from the fort, just below the forest whence the timber is drawn, so that Duinhoop will be ½ hour distant from the fort: and the first watchhouse ½ hour from Duinhoop; the redoubt to be built just as far, and the furthest watchhouse above Harman's Colony about an hour away on foot. By this arrangement as much land can be protected as is required at present and may be cultivated afterwards.

July 10th.—Fine weather as yesterday. Men sent to make the drains on the freemen's lands. The land-surveyor also despatched to take the bearings and distance of the coast between this and Hout Bay, and to take the soundings, that everything may be laid down on a chart, and if possible without mistakes.

July 11th.—New moon: dark, cloudy, N.W. weather and cold rain.

July 12th.—Fair, N.W. weather. Riebeeck had the orchard surrounded with a trench to keep out the cattle, which often break the palings. Surveyor prevented by the rain from completing his work.

July 13th.—Vessel anchored on the opposite side of the bay; arrived at noon the *Mariu*, on the 10th April from the Vlie; 38 men on board, a few dead; skipper named Claes François Bordinck, and with the *Hasselt* (its consort) destined for trade on the coast of Guinea and Angola. It was decided to discharge its Cape cargo and keep the goods for India at hand to be transhipped into the first vessel arriving. See Resolution.

July 14th.—Dirty N.W. weather. In the afternoon somewhat southerly. Provisions sent to Robben Island with the following letter:—"You receive provisions for 2 months; let us know how many sheep there are and what the bonfires of last night meant; keep the men going at the quarry, &c."

July 15th (Sunday.)—Fine, calm sunshine.

July 16th.—Heavy S.E. in the morning.

July 17th.—Fine weather. The Resolution to build the redoubt Duinhoop, &c. See Resolution of this date.

July 18th.—Fine, calm, sunshine.

July 19th.—News from Robben Island that the quarrying promised badly, but that the sheep had increased to 350, and the horse-radish and other seeds, &c., were progressing favourably, as per following note:—"Why we lighted fires was because the stone quarrying promised no success. The overhanging rocks were broken off, and no proper blocks could be fashioned out of the sandy stuff found further below, which crumbled to pieces in the hand; the rain melting those already prepared. Not 4 out of 10 blocks are saved, so that we cannot make more than 100 per week. We require wedges and sledgehammers to get along, the crowbar being useless, and three more men acquainted with the work if it is to be continued, to take the place of two others always ill, and who never are able to lift a stone. Eva does nothing else than running about the Island, chasing the sheep and separating them from the lambs; she requires somebody to look after her; she does not attend to signs, gesticulations or thrashings, which she does not appear to comprehend. No credit derivable with such people. On the N.W. side of the Island we have made a garden, 100 ft. by 60 ft., surrounded by a ditch 3 ft. deep; all the seeds are coming out, except the sweet potatoes; the horse-radishes give fine sprouts, also the turnips. At present we have 350 sheep, all told; those born this year are mostly bastards and ewes. Some old ewes might be safely removed hence. On the N. side we found a grey rabbit dead, so that we have at present one white, one grey, and one black. If we had a male they would soon increase largely. We cannot see that the rock rabbits are increasing. We send you 7 tails. Very little will henceforth be obtainable, as all the lambs are cross-bred, growing into fine

1657. — animals. With the men we have we cannot cut a tail or castrate." (See Resolution taken after consideration of this letter of this date.) The surveyor again proceeds to survey the coast, as mentioned above, and with 5 men takes provision for 6 for 24 hours. Riebeeck intends to go to-morrow to select a site for a granary, to be ready in December, near the corn lands, where the corn can be cleaned, placed in sacks and brought to the Fort. Trench commenced around the orchard at Rondebosjen, about $1\frac{3}{4}$ hours on foot from the Fort.

July 20th.—Fine sunshine, like yesterday. Riebeeck and the Captain of the *Maria* go out to fix upon a spot for the granary, and on their return draw up the estimates of expenditure on the same. The Company would require 50 or 60 morgen for rearing breadstuffs, &c., for the garrison, slaves, &c., and expects that the rest will be found by the freemen within three years at the furthest. Its lands are to be worked by its own servants, without additional expense, therefore the granary is to be built as follows. (See Resolution of this date.) At night a strong S.S E.; the same wind on the 21st, when at night it became calm.

July 22nd.—Calm weather.

July 23rd.—Resolution above mentioned commenced to be carried out.

July 24th.—Cold, rainy weather. The Commander proceeds to the forest to give the necessary instructions, and on the way beacons off the site for the redoubt, Koornhoop, that the masons may commence at once. The Surveyor returns home, having satisfactorily completed his work.

July 25th.—Full moon. Dark, drizzling, calm weather.

July 26th.—Calm, sunshine. The *Robbejacht* repaired.

July 27th.—The same weather. Herry having been away a long time, visits us and asks, now that we are ploughing right and left, where he and the Caapmen are to pasture their cattle. They were told to do so where they were now, that is, in the country towards the mountain range (overberg) of Africa, mostly towards the East and as much towards the North, about 8 or 10 hours away from this on foot. He said that the Saldanhars were coming this way, and would be here in the dry season, when they would kill them all and take their cattle, and requested that he and the Caapmen might be allowed to squat near us. He was told that we hardly had sufficient pasture for our own cattle hereabouts. He inquired whether the Commander, with whom he was on such friendly terms, wished that he and the Caapmen should be killed by the Saldanhars. He was told that if they were willing to sell us cattle they might go and live behind the kloof, between Table and Lion Mountains, but not behind the latter, where the lands of the Commander were, which spot was required for pasture for the Company's cattle. He said that he could spare no cattle, as he had to live from them; he would, however, obtain some for us from the Caapmen, and do his best to buy a good lot for us from

the Saldanhars, if we only had copper enough. Of this he was assured by ocular demonstration, and he was permitted to squat behind the kloof. He also asked permission to pitch his huts on the neck in sight of the Fort, as he feared that the Saldanhars might come upon him *via* the Hout Valley, and attack him without our seeing it. This was allowed, on condition that his cattle shall only graze between Lion's Head and the Hoat Bay, along the Gable Mountains, because the lands of this Table Valley and the flat behind Lion's Hill (granted to Riebeeck by Van Goens) were required for the Company's cattle, &c. With this he and the Caapmen left, apparently satisfied. Herry also begged hard that the Commander should, with the Caapmen, attack the Saldanhars and take their cattle, but he was told that the Hollanders were not a nation to rob another of its property, but desired to live in friendship with all people, and trade with them, &c. He did not seem to like this.

July 28th.—Fine, clear, sunshine.

July 29th.—Strong S.E. at night. Suuday.

July 30th.—Strong S.E. Riebeeck inspects the line of trenches beacons off by Van Goens, and finds some beacons still standing, but others carried away; also a lot of water still lying on the ground, so that it is evident that a canal would always be destroyed by such inundations. As the *Hasselt* has not yet arrived, the *Maria* was ordered to be ready to start for Robben Island to-morrow morning early, in accordance with the Resolution taken on the 19th. Foundation laid of the Cornheap redoubt.

July 31st.—N.E. breeze. Riebeeck makes an attempt to proceed to Robben Island, but the N.W. wind being too strong, he was obliged to put back. A whale boat washed on shore; attempts to be made to-morrow to recover it.

August 1st.—Cloudy N.W. weather and rain.

August 2nd.—Wind somewhat less; the *Robbejacht*, having been repaired, is again launched. Five or six sheep killed by wolves at Harman's Colony, because everybody had refused the night before to stable them. They (the colonists) had also this morning killed a calf and a sheep, and eaten them without, according to agreement, having beforehand obtained the Commander's permission. This makes us fear that the Company will derive little benefit from the cattle trade with the freemen, as they only look after themselves. It also appears that they are on bad terms with each other, outbidding one another in their trade with the natives, and so spoiling it.

August 3rd.—Fine, lovely weather. The whale boat found smashed about $1\frac{1}{2}$ hours from the fort. Arranged that the wreck should be brought hither to build from it a boat for the *Maria*. In 14 days' time we hope to finish the redoubt Cornheap. Herry and Caapmen arrive at Salt River with about 3000 cattle, and were shown their future quarters on the Kloof. When they are once there they will be in a fine trap, and the freemen may discover

1657. whether, without the expense of a canal and all the redoubts, they may not be kept there under proper control.

— August 4th.—Same weather. The freemen kindly advised not to break the conditions. They apologised and promised to do better.

August 5th (Sunday).—Cloudy, calm weather.

August 6th.—S.E. breeze, cloudy weather. Riebeeck goes to Robben Island, where he selects a proper site for beacon fires, according to orders left by Van Goens, to serve for guiding ships into the bay, which may then sail between Lion's Hill and the Island, in order to avoid the Whale Rock, until the fire is to the N.N.W. of them, when even the largest ship may safely go straight S.S.E. into the bay until it has sounded 8, 7, 6, 5, and 4 fathoms above a sandy bottom, in proportion to the size of the vessels. They are, however, to remember that they must take the gates of the fort and the battery in a line with each other, and not go beyond. The gate and the battery will then be S.W. by S.; these guides were supposed to be sufficient after consultation with the skipper of the *Maria*. Riebeeck having also examined the quarry, and its minor importance compared with that of multiplying all kinds of food, resolved to remove two convicts from the Island, to be used here for agriculture, leaving to take care of the sheep the soldiers Jan Woutersz and Christoffel Muller, besides a convict and a female slave from Madagascar. They are to cultivate horse radish as much as possible, and also sweet potatoes, and not to allow lazy habits. The sheep had multiplied to 360, so that the increase this year has saved half of the consumption of the vessels. The rabbits require males to breed. They are burrowing everywhere and growing fat and sleek. Will increase undoubtedly. Riebeeck returns at night, taking with him some sheep like calves, but is unable to find out what ship has been sighted.

August 7th.—She proves to be the *Provincie*, 13th April from Zealand, with 263 men on board; 7 dead and drowned; only 2 or 3 scurvy patients on board. Skipper Andries van Nesse was under arrest in consequence of adultery committed with the wife of the junior merchant and other women, according to the statement of said merchant and the chief mate. The latter had taken the skipper's place. There has therefore been some trouble on board, judging from the affidavits handed over to us. Vessel properly berthed and provisioned. Received with her letters from the Directors, dated 11th April, referring especially to the slave trade on the coast of Guinea and Angola; but as the *Hasselt* has not yet arrived we are without the instructions, so that we do not know how to proceed; must therefore await the arrival of the *Hasselt* or the *Oliphant*, having received nothing with the *Maria*.

Yesterday when Riebeeck was at Robben Island, Harry allowed his cattle to approach that of the Company, and whilst our herds were sheltering themselves from the rain, he stole 4 of our beasts, which were rapidly driven away by two of his men. The herds

perceiving their loss at once went among Herry's cattle, who with all the Caapmen at once broke up their encampment and fled, afraid evidently of being made prisoners. The herds, however, kept Herry fast, requiring him to restore the stolen animals, and threatening him that four of his own would be taken instead. He denied having any share in the theft, though their hurried flight was sufficient evidence of their guilt, but our men having his and the Caapmen cattle within their reach, would not allow him to go, so he promised to send some men to look for the stolen animals, begging that he might be allowed with the Caapmen to encamp at the Salt River. This was allowed him, and our men then proceeded over the mountain to the back of the Leopard Mountain, 4 or 5 hours' walk from this, where they only this morning found the cattle in charge of 2 Hottentooos, who pretended that they had been searching for the animals by Herry's orders, and asked for some tobacco for their trouble, which the herds refused, well knowing that they were the thieves. The Commander ordered that it should be pretended that their story was believed, and that Herry and the other two Hottentooos should be given some tobacco for their trouble and be treated kindly. The freemen were told to do the same thing, but to look well after their cattle, that we may give no rise on our side to quarrels, that in course of time we may pay the Hottentooos off.

August 8th.—Dirty weather, W. wind. The *Provintie* nearly on shore. Affair of the skipper of the *Provintie* considered. See Resolution of the council of this date.

August 9th.—New moon; fine, calm, sunshine. The *Provintie* busy fishing up its lost anchors.

August 10th.—Fine weather; Riebeeck goes on board to investigate the case of the skipper of the *Provintie*, who confesses to the adultery, but denies that he had endeavoured to take the ship to Angola. Evidence on this point against him not sufficient.

August 11th.—Fine weather. Further examination of the skipper on board; no evidence adduced to show that he intended to bring the vessel to a wrong place.

August 12th (Sunday).—N.W. wind and cloudy.

August 13th.—Fine weather; Riebeeck and the skipper of the *Maria* proceed to the Houtvlei over the kloof, to explore all the hiding places and passes through which the Hottentooos might escape with or without cattle. This was also done on

August 14th.—When it was found that they could be closed in at 6 different places, viz., at the kloof, between the Steen and Bosch Bergen, laid down in the chart of Van Goens, and marked with the letter F; and at E., on the knee of the Lion, also marked F; further, in the kloof between the Lion and Table Mountains, and again in three other places in the Hout Valley; six garrison locations in all, which would keep Herry and the Caapmen confined if once there, and who would have sufficient pasture for their cattle, from which the Company could also be supplied according to necessity by payment of copper and tobacco. The Hottentooos would

be allowed to go in and out, but without their cattle, and they might proceed inland, remaining in possession of their own cattle, to buy others when they find that selling their own to the Company has too much reduced their stock. Heavy rain in the afternoon, so that Riebeck and company returned to the thoroughly wet and dirty, having passed last night in the open air at Hout valley, as too many would have been required to carry a tent, &c. The day before yesterday 70 men of the *Provincie* sent to the forest for beams.

August 15th.—Fine, sunshine: vessel sighted.

August 16th.—Fine W. weather: *Haw* arrives: Skipper Jacob Hendrikus Mooker: Junior Merchant Adriens van de Venne: consort of the *W*—: 152 men on board: 1 dead; all well. As this vessel is to proceed to Guinea with 69 or 70 men, the rest, via S^t. are discharged into the *Provincie*, and ordered to Batavia. The *Haw* to be made ready at once.

August 17th.—Rainy W. weather: men transhipped.

August 18th.—Cold bleak weather, N.W. and rain. Case of the skipper of the *Provincie* decided—see Resolution of this date.

August 19th, Sunday.—Quieter weather: wind N.W. and rain.

August 20th.—Fine sunshine: Council decides the business of the *M*— and *Haw*—see Resolution of this date. In the afternoon Riebeck goes on board the *Provincie* to confirm the late chief officer, Pieter van Dijken, in his office as skipper, and make the changes in the staff according to Resolution of the 18th. The men remonstrated to do their duty, which they promised audibly. All received a glass of Spanish wine for encouragement.

August 21st.—Fine, warm weather.

August 22nd.—The same: our letters sent on board the *Provincie* for Batavia.

August 23rd.—Full moon: west wind: fine weather.

August 24th.—Heavy N.W. and rain.

August 25th.—The same. The *Endeavour* arrives from Enckhuyzen: Skipper Jan Cornelisz Swart and Junior Merchant Jan Huygh: had left the Vlie on the 30th April with 242 men: 5 had died: some had scurvy: had touched nowhere. Received letters from the 17 dated 16th and 20th April, which informed us of the seizure of the Dutch ships in the French ports, &c. The *Rotterdam* also arrives from Coerree on the 19th April, with 313 men: 3 had died: some of the crew suffering from scurvy.

August 26th (Sunday).—Rainy weather: sheep ordered from Robben Island, and following letter sent:—Thirty sheep to be delivered to bearer, and information sent back of the quantity at present on the island: the poles and victuals will be sent this week.

August 27th.—Fine S.S.E. weather; the *Provincie* leaves.

August 28th.—Fine and calm.

August 29th.—Fine weather; 30 sheep arrive from Robben Island and the following note:—We send you 30 sheep, rams, ewes, and wethers; 340 are left here. In December a lot will be fit for slaughter; what we now have is too young, and the rest are ewes in milk. We still retain 5 half bred rams. The horse-radish thrives well; the sweet potatoes have not yet appeared; the other seeds are fairly prospering. Send us some salad and turnip seed, as we have doubled the size of our garden. We also wish to have the pan back which we sent to be mended. We likewise require nails and a bore; also some tar. We would like to have rice instead of barley, as it goes a longer way in company with a penguin's leg. We also wish to have a cock and 2 or 3 hens, then the place would look somewhat like a village. (Signed) J. Woutersz. N.W. strong during the day and night.

August 30th.—Boisterous N.W. weather and rain.

August 31st.—The same.

September 1st.—N.W. wind. The *Robbejacht* despatched to Dassen Island with the following instructions to the officers:—"It having been resolved to strengthen the *Maria* with the two English cannons lying on Dassen Island, so that the *Maria* and *Hasselt* shall call there for the purpose, you shall leave in company with those ships, and show the latter where the guns are. You are to bring back the material of the house there, also the cannon balls on board the *Penguin*, and other articles on the island. You are also to bring some living rock rabbits, and news whether they are increasing there."

September 2nd (Sunday).—Rainy weather; W. wind. Our letters sent on board the *Rotterdam* and *Enckhuyzen* for India. The *Robbejacht* leaves.

September 3rd.—Fine, calm, sunshine; refreshments sent on board the ships for the voyage, a custom already a long time in vogue.

September 4th.—Dry N. breeze; during the day heavy rain and hail storms. The boat of the *Rotterdam* washed on shore at Duinhoop, not damaged.

September 5th.—Same heavy N.W. wind; *Rotterdam* wishes to communicate, but found it impossible to send a boat to her. A boat full of men from the *Enckhuyzen* comes on shore, much damaged; immediately drawn on shore to be repaired. A boat proceeds to the *Rotterdam*, and manages to secure the following letter—"Found it impossible to proceed in consequence of the boisterous headwinds; had to throw out two more anchors; by parting with our ordinary anchor we were drifted into 5 and $4\frac{1}{2}$ fathoms water, where the back part of the ship reached and thumped against the bottom. We feared a great disaster, having broken our rudder-pin, and decided to throw 46 pipes of water overboard; we have lost our boat, though fastened with two ropes, and the stern of the vessel is much damaged. We request you to look for our boat. We shall have to repair damages before leaving,

42. Signed by Jackson Chow: Cornelis Timmers; and Jan Jansen. The weather abating somewhat during the night, the sloop of the *Entreprenor* was sent to the *Escurion* for particulars; it reported that in consequence of the continual bumping of the vessel, they had already last night been obliged to cut the main-mast, which with all its belongings had struck on shore. They had driven all their water overboard, and this had raised the vessel considerably. A cable and anchor had been broken, and the vessel now held on to one anchor in deep water. As the weather is improving, and the ship does not appear to leak, they hope to be back in the roadstead again.

September 6th.—Calm weather: Riebeck proceeds to the *Rotterdam*, and orders the shipyards of the *Entreprenor*, *Moris* and *Hoselt* to have 20 prepared on board that vessel, with their ropes and grapping apparatus, and remain there until the ship has been safely brought to the roadstead, also after that to recover the mast and such like. The new cable holding the ship appeared to be partly broken, and both of the fenders of the anchor were gone—a wonder, therefore, that the ship was not driven on shore; another anchor when thrown had also broken, and the cable of a third had parted; so that there was no other to fall back upon. Be that God has wonderfully preserved the ship, and we trust that it may be sufficiently repaired here to continue its voyage. In order to have the mast ready as soon as possible two carpenters of the *Entreprenor* are sent on board. As the work will require about 4 weeks, 1½ men of the *Escurion* are detailed into the *Entreprenor* in order to be secured at Batavia, where men are much wanted. In the afternoon the *Escurion* was in a safe berth and without leakage.

September 7th.—Fine weather. Men sent to recover the wreckage: news brought that the *Escurion* had only 2 anchors, two being broken: ordered to prepare two others to replace them. Riebeck going on board finds another anchor useless, and obtains one from the *Entreprenor*, to ensure the safety of the *Rotterdam*. Wreckage recovered near the wreck of the *Morris*.

September 8th.—New moon: fine cloudy weather. The *Rotterdam* returns, having been prevented by the storm from doing anything at Dassen Island: it had been in much danger, but not injured; only one anchor and cable broke; vessel stood the storm splendidly. All efforts being bringing the mast, &c., back to the *Rotterdam*. The rigging had however become so entangled with the wreck of the *Morris* that it could not be cleared. To try again to-morrow. *Entreprenor* despatched to Dassen Island and the following letter to Rotterd. Island:—You receive for yourself 1 shalpock, 1 pr. shorts, 4 shirts, and 2 lbs. tobacco; for Thomas Christopher Maher, 1 pr. shorts, 1 lb. tobacco, 1 grey hat, 1 shirt, 1 pr. woollen socks and 1 man's wages, i.e., 9 gl.;

for J. Duyff, 1 pr. shorts, 2 shirts and 2 pr. woollen socks; morning, 2 bladders full of salad and turnip seed, also 1

cock and 2 hens, 100 poles and 3 bundles stakes, to be used as laths to connect the poles together instead of nails, which are too expensive. You also receive 2 months' provisions and rice instead of barley.

September 9th (Sunday).—Cloudy sky; fine weather. Could not clear the rigging, and only saved the mast of the *Rotterdam*. The *Robbejacht* leaves for Robben Island.

September 10th.—Strong N.E. breeze and rain; wind afterwards changed to East and S.E., so that the *Enckhuysen*, *Maria* and *Hasselt* leave.

September 11th.—Strong S.S.E., dry weather; walls of the fort repaired and new palisades erected in order to be well prepared in case of attack.

September 12th and 13th.—Fine sunshine.

September 14th.—Dark N.W. weather.

September 15th.—The same; the *Robbejacht* returns and states that the *Hasselt* and *Maria* had not been able to touch at Dassen Island. The guns are therefore to be removed at another opportunity and placed on Robben Island, according to instructions of V. Goens. The *Robbejacht* had touched at the island and landed the material for a cattle fold, bringing the following letter:—"We have received the rest of the material of the house at Dassen Island, 127 pieces in all, with which we may now build a strong 'kraal' for the sheep, whose number is now 350, a large number very young. We thank you for what you sent. The cock was quite blind of the pip, and died the next day; request another. If we could obtain 10 or 20 fowls we hope soon to rear about 1,000 or 1,200 for the ships, as this is a very convenient place for them, and they could be kept on half the food required at the fort. The horse-radishes grow well, glory be to God; but the sweet-potatoes we see nothing of.—(Signed) J. Woutersen."

September 16th (Sunday).—Fine weather.

September 17th and 18th.—Cold S.E., in the afternoon N.W.

September 19th.—Rain and N.W. wind.

September 20th.—Better, but damp weather.

September 21st and 22nd.—Fine, dry weather. Riebeeck inspects the work on board the *Rotterdam*; detained by the S.E.

September 23rd (Sunday).—Same wind.

September 24th.—Wind abating. Riebeeck returns on shore, where he finds Herry, who with the Caapmen had been away a long while. He stated that many Saldanhars had visited him, with whom he had made peace and an agreement that they be allowed to come and go unmolested in order to sell us cattle; he further told us that these Saldanhars had "gesoubat" (begged of) him (which Indian word he understands, having been in Bantam with the English) to be on friendly terms; but our opinion is that he has been begging the Saldanhars to give him their friendship, as he sees that we have no mind to agree to his often-made proposals to do mischief to the Saldanhars in combination with the Caapmen, but

on the contrary are as kind as possible to the former, acting towards them uprightly as good friends. At sunset some Saldanhars arrive with men of Henry's lot, requesting to have a look at our copper and tobacco. Pretending that we did not have sufficient on hand, we showed them the whole lot, and pretended that there was a good deal more on board the *Rotterdam*, also that a good lot was expected with the coming ships, but they boasted that they would soon clear us out, as they did 3 years ago and have a good laugh at us. After having received bread, bacon, beer, brandy and Spanish wine they left.

September 25th.—Fine, hazy weather. Mast of the *Rotterdam* fixed; to-day 20 men requested to be enrolled as freemen. Five of them given their discharge, viz: Hendrik of Surwerden, Corporal, and Elten Dirksz of Emmerick, soldier and waiter at the Commander's table, to carry on their trade as tailors and take charge of the redundant Coornhoop; and to remain 12 years. Harmen Ernst of Utrecht, brazier, to have his discharge for 3 years; and Cornelis Claes of Utrecht, brazier, to have his discharge for 6 years, both in the service of Hendrik Boom, late master gardener of the Company, and now also discharged; being allowed to farm and keep cows according to the letters of freedom granted them.

September 26th.—Wet, drizzling, calm weather; a N. breeze during the day. Some carpenters of the *Rotterdam* offer themselves for their discharge, in order to build the houses of the freemen, as the vessel is already completed, and their services on the same are not required; whilst two carpenters of the *Eckhuyzen* are on board; permission was granted.

September 27th and 28th.—Same weather. The *Rotterdam* made ready for departure.

September 29th.—Hazy weather. Same wind.

September 30th.—Calm weather. *Rotterdam* preparing to leave; sends word that another of its anchors had snapped. It is evident that its anchors have been badly made. It leaves in the afternoon with a S.S.E. wind.

October 1st.—Fine, sunshine.

October 2nd.—Dirty, boisterous weather; N.W. rain, lightning and thunder; the latter, when loudest, about as hard as the mildest form at home. Since the occupation no earthquake has been observed. This is nice, as few places in India are exempt from it. At night hailstones fell as large as the joints of the thumb, the biggest of the size of pigeon eggs, or small tennis balls.

October 3rd.—The same weather; but without lightning and hail. 4th, fine, sunshine.

October 5th and 6th.—Same weather. The Commander went out to have some of the land surveyed for the free men and to see the corn lands, which were progressing favourably; the ^s already in the ear; some peas and beans were poor.

October 7th (Sunday).—New moon. Calm, cloudy sky. The Commander had some rice sown in the marshy ground on the eastern side of the Fresh River, opposite the land of H. Boom, and about $1\frac{1}{2}$ hours' walk from the fort, as it was found that what was sown in the muddy ditches of the garden begins to show well, whilst what had been sown before had perished from the cold. Now that the warm weather is setting in, all the efforts are made to experiment properly.

October 8th.—Dirty, rainy weather, N.W.

October 9th and 10th.—Same weather. Dry at night and a cold S.E. Permission given to Sergeant van Herwerden to keep a boarding-house, &c. See Resolution of to-day.

October 11th.—Dry and cold S.S.E.

October 12th.—Dry, calm weather.

October 13th.—Drizzling, N.W.

October 14th.—Misty weather. Fine during the day.

October 15th and 16th.—Fine, lovely weather; 5 or 6 young draught oxen dead during the last 8 or 10 days; 4 more are ill; do not know the cause; will sadly interfere with the progress of the work. A land journey decided on to look for the Saldanhars. See Resolution of to-day. Vessel sighted in False Bay.

October 17th.—Fine S. weather. The freemen request to accompany the expedition inland. See Resolution of to-day.

October 18th.—Wet, calm weather.

October 19th.—Ditto, S.W. wind. We trust that with the S.W. breeze the soil will get dry for the expedition, which receives the following instructions in the person of the chief, Abraham Gabbema:—Everything being ready now you are to go, keeping good watch that you be not surprised by the natives. You are to try and reach the nearest Saldanhars, without looking for the Caapmen, Herry, or the black chief; you are to avoid the latter as much as possible, that we may find out whether we cannot more satisfactorily and safely trade with the Saldanhars without them. The latter are to be invited to visit us, and promised a safe journey against Herry &c. At the fort they will be kindly received, and if all are unwilling to come, you must try and persuade some at least to accompany you, that they may be well treated here and again depart with presents. The further inland they may live the better, that you may return with them, or you may further do what you may under the circumstances consider the best course. Should you meet with good trade and require more goods, you may leave some volunteers among the natives and return with the cattle bartered, or you may send back a few men with one of the trusted Hottentots and a letter; in this way communication could be opened up and continued. To ensure your safety, should a satisfactory trade be established, you should build a strong kraal of branches in which to encamp during the night. You are also to find out whether any paying quantities of ostrich feathers, tusks, rhinoceros horns, civet, amber, gold, honey,

are to be had. The surveyor, Peter Peter, shall lay down on a chart as exactly as possible all valleys, mountains, hills, waters and rivers that we may benefitfully know what direction we have to take in travelling, and to make acquainted with such forests as may exist and such lands as are fit for cultivation; or in order to build a residence or a fixed trading station, should the Saldanhaans, because of Henry or of other reasons, not wish to come to us. You are to pay attention to all these matters, and bring back a good drawing. You are also to inquire what kind of stone or wood there may be in the neighbourhood, that we need not carry any building material thither, &c. We should also allow no shooting on the road; this frightens the natives very much, especially those of the hawks, who would run away, thus frustrating our object. It is better to come upon them in silence, as Henry may have told them that our object is to rob them; they are therefore to be treated with every kindness imaginable. You are to manage the provisions as economically as possible, and should the trade fluctuate, you may now and then kill a sheep, and so save some of your ordinary stores, without consulting the wishes of the Company's servants or the freemen, as the object of the journey is in the interests of both. The freemen are therefore, as they have promised, to submit to the Company's regulations in this, and acknowledge you as the head of the expedition. Not one shall be allowed to leave the party that no difficulties may arise, and the interests of the Company and the burghers be properly served. We further entrust you to the protection of Almighty God."

The first night the party slept at the place of Jan Reyniers, as Eustas Gouw stated. We came back for a rope to lead the oxen. After midnight the oxen came for some gunny bags, bringing the following note: "Since last night we had a lot of trouble with the cattle, which, jumping very often, threw the copper from their backs, especially the Company's two small oxen, which are thoroughly unmanured. We were therefore obliged to carry the loads ourselves, as we believe that the copper chafes the animals' backs. Consequently we would like to have some gunny bags, which filled with grass are to be placed beneath the loads. We shall not be able to proceed in any other way, as the bags in which the copper plates are stored have all been broken by the jumping of the animals, and must be necessarily repaired. We therefore ask for 9 gunny bags, &c." Gunny bags sent at once.

October 20th.—Fine weather for the travellers. The Commander fails to find them and goes to the corn lands. The barley and rye growing well, like the corn. The carpenters hard at work at the granary, which is to be completed within 4½ months. Should they take a longer time it will be deducted from their wages: but should they finish the work within that period the difference will be paid to them in cash, that the work may be soon done and the jetty taken on hand again.

October 21st (Sunday) —Death of Jan Camel, of the Procurie.

1657:

—

October 22nd.—Full moon, fine weather. Three Caapmen bring the following note from the travellers: "Travelling E.N.E. to within 3 hours from the Tigerberg, we rested there at noon and saw 3 Hottentos at a distance, whom we called. They told us that the Saldanhars were in 4 encampments at the big river, very likely known to you, and 4 days' journey to the N.N.E. of this place. We shall hurry on to get them, trusting that we may obtain a large quantity of cattle. We are all well, &c.—Signed, A. Gabbema, 21st October, 1657." Another small note contained the following: "These Hottentos have come to us and we can't get rid of them; they being evidently Caapmen and going our own way, we fear that their intention is to hinder us in our trade. We therefore send them to you to get rid of them and realize our purpose. We are doing our best to find means to inform the Saldanhars of our approach, whom we have promised that you will give them much tobacco, &c."

October 23rd.—South wind, rainy. A vessel sighted off Robben Island. Repairs at the Fort finished, also at the "Duinhoop." Commenced to cut the canal to lead the river behind the Fort, as resolved in Council on the 17th last.

October 24th.—Boisterous weather, S.S.E.

October 25th.—The same. Wind also strong behind Table Mountain at the corn fields, but not so strong as here, so that no damage was done.

October 26th.—Strong S.S.E. rolling like thunder over Table Mountain. Much of the garden fruit destroyed, especially Roman and Turkish beans, peas, &c., though protected with mats and branches, &c. The hospital made of the wood of the old houses in the fort blown down, 3 beams entirely broken, and if it did not have a strong stone wall behind, it would have gone entirely. The Commander inspects a forest about 3 hours on foot away from the fort, towards the north in the corner of the forest hill, opposite the forest mountains, in a southern direction below Table Mountain, pointed out by the free carpenter, Leendert Cornelisz: of Sevenhuysen, and requested by him, with the privilege that only he shall have the right to take timber from it, promising not to destroy it, but to use the timber in such a way that the forest is improved. He wishes to work the timber for his own benefit, to be taken off his hands by the Company and the freemen, and undertakes to deliver all kinds of planks, beams, &c. The proposal found acceptable and convenient. The piece of forest therefore granted to him, with 20 morgen arable ground near the hill opposite the forest mountains, on condition that he shall remain 15 years and order his wife from the Fatherland.

October 27th.—S.E. wind. The *Robbejacht* leaves for Saldanha Bay with the following instructions: "First to touch at Robben Island to land a basket with sweet potatoes to be planted there; thence to proceed to Dassen Island and take on board the two English guns lying there, and the cannon balls on the beach:

1657. — Should the wind be favourable you are to return to Robben Island and land the guns there, and place them in position on the best spot commanding the Sand Bay, in order to keep off strangers who may at night endeavour to surprise the keepers. The cock you are to leave on Robben Island; thence you are to proceed to the Malagas Island, in Saldanha Bay, and salt down in the 48 half-arms given you, sea-birds for the men here; the other casks you are to fill with seal oil. You take with you 71 lbs. copper wire, 9 $\frac{1}{4}$ lbs. tobacco, and 1 gross pipes, in order to buy sheep should you meet any natives ready to sell any stock. The cattle obtained are to be placed on 'Sheep Island,' whence they can be removed to Robben Island. The old sheep, however, are to be brought hither for immediate consumption as they are apt to die off. Any young heifers that you may get you are also to bring to the fort. On the 'Sheep Island,' some time ago, sweet potatoes were planted; you are to tell us what has become of them. You also take some seed with you to plant there, and also on Dassen Island and everywhere where sandy soil is found, also on suitable spots at Saldanha Bay, that some may be found everywhere, as it is a very thriving plant and may serve for bread; hence we recommend it to your particular care. The ground on Dassen Island is very favourable for it, hence the largest portion of the seed is to be planted there after having supplied Robben Island. You also take with you two poles with a board nailed to each, in which is branded the mark of the Company, one is to be planted on Dassen Island on a suitable spot on the northern side of Saldanha Bay. The same mark shall also be cut out on one of the biggest rocks, as at Dassen Island on the rock "Reypermonde," which cannot be rolled away, as a sign that the Company has taken possession; for this purpose you take the necessary tools, which you are to bring back for further use. You shall, in going to and fro, always take soundings and note down the depth, grounds, reefs, rocks, sands, bays, &c., and the position of the coast, that all mistakes in the charts may be rectified. The Company is much interested in this; you are therefore particularly to note everything, and, if you can do so, bring us drawings of the whole. Should you find any rhinoceros horns, tusks, &c., at Saldanha Bay, you must try and buy as many as you can get, also ostrich feathers, about which our men have hitherto been very indifferent. You are therefore to be more diligent in this, with an eye to the interests of the Company and your own reputation. Wish you a prosperous voyage." Signed Riebeeck, 27th October, 1657. The yacht also took the following letter to Robben Island: "From your last we gathered that the number of sheep on the Island was 350. The increase should always be your special care. You must also do your best to cultivate horse-radish, which is of great service to the Company's crews. You may expect the sweet potatoes to grow before November. Now is the best time for transplanting, and therefore we send you more, as the soil on the Island is particularly adapted for this

1657.

plant. It won't be necessary to breed fowls on the Island, as the freemen produce a sufficient number here, besides it would be too costly an affair there, as they are to be fed, and we have hardly enough grain for the garrison; likewise the profits of the freemen would be curtailed. You, however, receive the cock asked for, for your convenience. Fowls are a delicate food, and consequently not destined for the ordinary sailor or soldier; they are generally bought as luxuries by the officers for themselves, and should be obtained from the freemen; the Company should not be saddled with such expenses. The object of its servants should be to economize in every way possible, that everyone may be provided for properly from what goes the longest way; Robben Island, for instance, is very well adapted for sheep and earth-fruits, both of which are indispensable for men and officers, and are highly refreshing. We also send you some garlick, leeks, and Batavia onions, reared here. You are to try them all, and inform us of the results. We also send 2 months' provisions and 1 large basket with carrots, so that you are provided until the middle of January. We expect to hear from you about the vessel seen by us on the 23rd October to the west of Robben Island, and which we suppose was a stranger. You receive a spy-glass to enable you to observe the passing ships. When Company's ships are in sight you are to light a fire in order to guide them into the bay, according to the signal code established. In the case of foreigners you are not to do so." To-day arrangements were made for mowing grass for hay, to be at hand in the dry season, when there is very little grass in the neighbourhood.

October 28th.—Fine S.E. weather. Some strange Hottentos brought news that our men had already met with some Saldanhars, and obtained a good number of sheep, but only 3 or 4 cattle.

October 29th.—Same weather. Riebeeck visits the corn-lands, forests, &c., to look for more land suitable for cultivation. Returning home at nightfall he met, near the orchard, about $1\frac{1}{2}$ hours' distance from this, the interpreter Herry, quite alone, who, to serve his own purposes, had come to confirm the news, adding that when on the 4th night our men came upon the first encampment (the Charigrina), the latter had fled, fearing that they would be robbed, but going on they had met another lot, called the Cochona, with whom they had traded a little. Some distance away were the Chorachouqua, who last year had robbed the freemen of their tobacco on the field. Among these, our men, letting byegones be byegones, encamped, being treated right royally with milk. The Charagrina, having been informed of this, returned and visited our party, also bringing sheep, and more milk than our people could consume. The tobacco and copper were soon expended, so that the expedition would return within a few days, bringing with them the Saldanhars, who would buy all our copper. We trust that the news may be true.

October 30th.—Fine weather. Some freemen brought news of the Saldanhas from the east our men being with those from the west. They had appeared at the kraal of Jan Reyniersz, who is dead. They wished to proceed to the fort, but were prevented by the darkness: they would be here to-morrow. Roeloff de Man and the sergeant sent thither with some bread, tobacco, pipes, &c., to treat them and persuade them to come to the fort, taking with them also the greeting of the Commander, who would, on their arrival, treat them well at the fort. About two hours after sunset the natives arrived having left their cattle in the kraal of Jan Reyniersz. They were the same from whom, two years ago, we obtained a fair quantity of cattle, consequently Riebeeck treated them well with Spanish wine, food, tobacco, &c. They would, they said, not encamp here, but off and on bring cattle for sale. They were afraid to squat here because so many ships arrive, and they feared to be robbed by them, as they had heard (doubtless from Herry, that some had been looking for them right and left to rob and kill them. Herry had so fixed this idea in their minds that they could not be persuaded to the contrary. Herry boldly asked for what reason Van Goens had gone to the Hout Valley with so many men if he did not intend to rob him and the Caapmen of their cattle. If he had been robbed the others would follow, though we told him that we never had any intention to do anything of the kind, but were only there to look for ships and lands fit for cultivation, on which to settle freemen. He could not be brought to believe us. From this we conclude that he has communicated his fears to the others, whom it will take time to undeceive. It is doubtful, under these circumstances, whether we shall now get Herry and the Caapmen so near us that we may be able to lock them in. They openly say that they dare not remain in the neighbourhood with their cattle, especially when ships are in the bay, fearing other great captains, who might kill them. Herry, the Caapmen, and the black Captain, imbued with this idea, are no doubt the cause that the others are so timid.

October 31st.—Fine weather. The 6 cattle arrive; 3 were sold to us. They promised to be back at the new moon with a lot of cattle. About that time we also trust to have news of the expedition.

The Commander spent most of the day communicating with the Saldanhas, by means of a girl named Eva, about 15 or 16 years old, since the arrival of the Dutch in the service of Mrs. Riebeeck, and now already speaking Dutch very well. We gathered that there was an emperor or king, who ruled over all the Cape natives, called by them Chobona. He lives far inland, and is rich in gold, called "Chory," and which is taken out of sand. They coin and stamp the coins, which they made as big as, than, the palms of the hands. These people were very fond of red copper and red beads. They are of stone and beams, sowing white rice and plant-

ing all kinds of vegetables. They also wore clothes and spoke another language than those nearer the Cape, who were all subject or tributary to this Chobona. They were known to us as the Saldanhars, and by this nation as "Quena," being of one language and dress. An army of the Chobona keeps them under proper control, and punishes all rebels. This army is of the same nation, dress and language as the Saldanhars, and called Kochqua. It consists of two sections. The second one is called the Gorona, which has nothing else to do than to fight the rebels, and this keeps them constantly busy. They are not successful in their object, as some do not wish to pay the homage to the Chobona which he requires as his right. These Kochqua and Gorona are consequently always engaged in war. When killed they are succeeded by their children, brothers, and also sisters. The chief from whom we had bought the 3 oxen told us that one of his wives had lived in the house of the Chobona, and been educated there. She was, therefore, a great friend of this big man, and he told us that his wife had worn in her ears, round her neck and fingers, golden ornaments. Riebeeck immediately asked that he should bring hither his wife or one of her ornaments. He replied that she could not move, being accustomed only to remain at home, and to be served by other young women. Walking would hurt her feet. He was offered a fine wagon to fetch her, but answered that she would die of fear if she saw the Dutchmen. Riebeeck even offered to go himself, but this also would not do. As he intended to leave to-morrow he was asked whether he required any escort towards the Chobona, which might also invite other people to visit us. He declined this offer, stating that if his friends heard that he had Dutchmen with him they would all run away and kill their cattle by over-driving, for though they had heard of us they knew nothing of our good nature, as he did. This is his second visit. Herry and the Caapmen had spoken only evil of our people wherever they went, but he would try and come to us with all his tribe, to make them gradually accustomed to us. After that he might undertake to journey to the Chobona with some of our men.

The chief living towards the East belonged to the Chainunquas, called so after their great chief Chaynunqua, who was very rich in cattle and the subject of the Chobona with the rest, some of whom were dissatisfied and rebellious, viz. :—

The Charingurina, who had run away from our people and again returned, as stated in our notes of the 29th instant. They are fairly subject to the Chobona, and war with the Chaynunqua for some private reason or other, as in Europe princes quarrel with each other who are all under one emperor. At present they were all agreed to live in peace, until all had during the season conducted their trade with us, but no longer. They would therefore molest no natives accompanied by Hollanders, in order not to injure the latter. Anything of the kind they were bound to avenge. There seems to be some truth in this, as their fighting

1657. — has ceased since our men arrived among them. A person should not however believe these things too readily, and expose himself to danger by being too credulous.

The "Kaygunna," great friends of the "Gaynunqua" and obedient subjects of the Chobona, rich in cattle, and mostly dwelling towards the East.

The "Chancumqua," also from the East, rich and numerous; also one of the principal chiefs of the Chobona.

Charigruqua, { Rich and numerous, also living towards the Kainguqua. { East; subjects and friends of the Chobona.

"Namana," living towards the North; also rich and courting the favour of the Chobona.

"Oengayqua," living between the East and North, very powerful and rich, consequently they object to acknowledge the Chobona. The Kochehoqua army have consequently their hands full with these people, it being their duty, as stated above, to make war on such rebels at once. It seems, however, that these Oengayqua do not take much notice of the one or the other.

"Chorachouqua" are the tobacco thieves, the fellows who stole the tobacco out of the freemen's gardens; very hostile to the Chobona. As, however, he is very limited in numbers, he is often severely punished; but in spite of this he is often renewing his game, consequently many of his tribe are living among the Caapmen.

"Goringaycona"—Caapmen, { All of them rebels and also Choeringaina.—Herry and { convicts of the Chobona, but as all the Watermen. { the Kochoqua have their hands full with the Ongayqua and others, these people, being far away and poor, have not been interfered with, excepting when some of the others come their way, when they are driven into holes and corners. This chief's party, however, had now made friends with them, thinking that that course would be satisfactory to us.

The "Soanqua" are robbers, subject to none, and depending upon their arrows and assegays, treacherously robbing their neighbours of their cattle and their wives. This stealing of women in war seems to be general among all the natives, everyone boasting of the number captured by him. The reason seems to be to increase their numbers by breeding; even the wife of the Chaynoqua chief is no native Chobonar, but has been taken by Chobonar from one of the chief rebels among these tribes, and brought up in his house, as she was a great lady. She was afterwards given to him as his wife, a favour highly esteemed as one of great honour. By such means, giving wives out of his own house, the Chobona connects all tribes with his.

November 1st.—Drizzling, W. weather. The chief having told us that gold was to be found in the Chobonar land, we showed him diamonds, pearls and gold chains; excepting diamonds he recognized all the rest, a thing not hitherto done by the other Hottentoons. He told us that his wife was abundantly supplied with

1657.

—

pearls and golden ornaments, but not caring for such things she had left them with the Chobona, wearing only a few on the ears and fingers. He also said that the Chobona wished to give him all these trinkets with his wife, and also a lot of gold, but as he did not know the value before he saw the like things here, he did not wish for them, and had asked what he was to do with them; he would have it that we could not have obtained the pearls and gold except in Chobona's land, where before this some Englishmen had called on the coast and taken away many of the people. If we came there they would think that we were of the same nation. It was therefore necessary that he should first introduce us everywhere, and then he might take some of ours with him. Time will show whether all this is true. To attach him to us he was presented with many gifts, tobacco, copper and some French electro-plate and gilt chains, also some imitation pearls which he considered to be genuine, and other fine ornaments for the hands and neck, and carcanets. He would take none of these things, saying that his wife had a lot of it *in great abundance*, and therefore would not accept of it. We did our best to persuade him to accept the articles for his wife, but the more we insisted the more he excused himself, only wishing to accept for his children the silver chains and the pearls, with a few other trifles similar to those procured last year, and which, according to him, would be acceptable and new to his wife. He left in the forenoon, and was conducted by Riebeeck a good distance, but he did not like the Commander to go any further, so that the latter went to the cornfields and returned at night, when he was told that the chief had reached Herry's camp under the Leopard Mountain, about $3\frac{1}{2}$ hours' walk from this, where he had put up, and sold the three remaining cattle for copper. From this it is evident that Herry is looking after his interests, and knows how to do so. It is difficult to guess how he does so, but it may be presumed that he has impressed the idea on the natives that without him they will not be able to do anything with us. Time will show.

November 2nd.—Rainy, W. weather. Arrival of the *Walvisch*, skipper Barend Ham, junior merchant Jacob Jansz: Pool, of the Chamber Delft. Had left the Vlie on the 27th June last, with 340 men—5 dead. Had, in 17° lat., met the *St. Peter*, from the Gulf of Guinea, with slaves on board, and trending towards Rio de la Plata. It had called at Annabon, and having obtained a good quantity of fresh things there could supply the *Walvisch* with some. It also gave the *Walvisch* five pine-apple plants and some pips of apples to be planted here. A few were suffering from scurvy.

November 3rd.—Same weather.

November 4th. (Sunday.)—Fine weather, S.S.E.

November 5th.—New moon; fine weather. Return of the expedition which had left on the 19th October last. Nothing more had been obtained than 7 cows, 3 calves and 41 sheep, which they brought

1662.

— with them. They stated that they were not able to get further than a certain large wide river, fully $7\frac{1}{2}$ leagues from this and 2 rods broad. Beyond that the real Saldanhars are only found. In consequence of its depth and strong current northward, it could not be crossed before the dry season, when according to the statements of the Hottentoes the principal Saldanhars located on its banks for the sake of the water—there being no other anywhere else in the neighbourhood—where rich pastures exist. Because of the depth of the river we could not communicate with the Saldanhars, and failed to get any more cattle from the Chorachouquas, who had stolen the tobacco, and were located on this side, also from the Charengurmais, from whom we obtained the cattle mentioned, all of them stating, like the Caapmen, that they had to live from their herds. Journal as follows:—

October 19th.—15 Europeans and 3 trustworthy Hottentoes, with 9 pack oxen, left this evening, but with great trouble, as the oxen would not carry their loads. We went as far as Reyniers's place, where we slept.

October 20th.—Left early with fine weather. The oxen became more manageable, and we went across the Salt and Fresh Rivers over the flats in an eastern direction towards the side of the tail of the Leopard's Mountain, where we passed the night in a thorn bush. The Hottentoes wished to leave us, but shortly afterwards returned. Some Hottentoes in the afternoon wished to persuade us that we were not taking the right road to the Saldanhars, but that we should pass alongside of the saltpans. We thought that they wished to lead us to Herry or some of the Caapmen, so we determined to adhere to our course. Calculate that we have proceeded about 5 leagues to the East.

October 21st (Sunday).—Calm, sunshine. Took our course E.N.E. along the tail of the Leopard Mountain. Met 3 Hottentoes, who told us that they knew nothing of Herry or the Caapmen, but that the Saldanhars were 4 days' journey further. To reach them we were to proceed E.N.E. to a large river running under the mountain range of the Continent of Africa. We gave them some tobacco and a letter for the Commander, &c. Having proceeded about 7 hours in this direction, we gathered from the statements of some Hottentoes that the Caapmen had stolen a march on us, though we had never obtained a sight of them; perhaps they have already informed the Saldanhars of our coming. The country everywhere is poor heath, with not sufficient grass to fill our oxen's stomachs.

October 22nd.—Warm weather. Advanced 5 leagues N.E. by E. and E.N.E., and about 4 o'clock in the afternoon we arrived at the river, which we called the Great Berg River. Here we passed the night. At noon we passed the kloof between the Diamond and the Paarl Mountain, and on the other side the Klapmuts Mountain, a part of the same containing good land, the rest being poor and sandy.

1857.

October 23rd.—Dry, cloudy weather. Took our course on the upper side of the Diamond and Paarl Mountain, following the course of the river, in which we caught some fish called barmer, and of pleasant flavour. Rather full of bones, though, like the Dutch pike. On the march we saw the footprints and the dung of horses in various spots. Here there are fine lands for cultivation and good pastures along the river. In the afternoon the wind became W. and it began to rain; we were therefore obliged to look for shelter under the trees, having only advanced 4 leagues.

October 24th.—Cloudy sky and a little rain. Heard a gun fired as soon as we were ready to leave. Believed that the sound came from Table Bay. We found many sea cows in the river. S.S.E. wind in the afternoon—rain ceased. No heavy gusts of wind here as at the fort. Had marched 5 leagues in a westerly direction over poor sandy soil mixed with stones, and in some places very rocky. Heard many sea cows around us during the night.

October 25th.—Rainy, S.E. weather. Proceeded in a N.N.W. direction; came upon a rhinoceros, which passed between the oxen without injuring them. A little while after we reached a beautiful valley, about an hour's walk in length where there was as fine grass for hay as could be found in the Fatherland. Here we remained until the rain ceased. In the afternoon we went W.S.W. through a high kloof, in which at a distance we saw a Hottentoo encampment. At night we encamped about $\frac{1}{2}$ hour's distance from it. From some Hottentoops who visited us we gathered that they were the fellows who had stolen the tobacco at the Rondebosjen; we bought some milk from them. They told us that the Saldanhars were a day's journey from them and that they would go and tell them to-morrow that we were coming with copper and tobacco, and would try and persuade them to come and trade with us. We therefore decided to remain here a few days, our pack-oxen's backs having become very sore from carrying the loads, and wait for the intelligence. During the night the tobacco thieves came with a small sheep, which we bought with some tobacco. The first animal obtained.

October 26th.—Fine weather. Gathered from the Hottentoo messengers that the Saldanhars would be here during the night or to-morrow. Killed the little sheep in the afternoon. The natives brought a lame ox, which we refused to buy.

October 27th.—Fine, warm, sunshine; obtained 2 cows and 1 sheep for copper.

October 28th (Sunday).—Same weather. Sent out 2 Dutchmen and 2 Hottentoops to find out whether the Saldanhars were coming, also to find out what course we were to take and whether we would find pasture and water for our cattle. Whilst waiting we heard that they were coming with a good number of cattle, of which we obtained 22. They promised to bring more. At night our scouts reported that the Saldanhars had promised to be here to-morrow, advising us to remain where we were, &c. On the way they had

1557.

left behind 4 Hottentooos with 8 sheep, who could not proceed because of the darkness ; 20 cattle and a lot of sheep would follow.

October 29th.—Fine weather. Saldanhars arrive and we buy all their sheep brought to us ; they promised to bring more cattle ; and as we are required to make a virtue of patience, we shall have to remain here longer, but as some of the freemen ask why they should linger about here, it was resolved to leave to-morrow, and try to meet the Hottentooos, of whose whereabouts we are ignorant. The cattle and sheep are to be sent to the fort with 2 Hollanders and 2 Hottentooos. At night two of the tobacco thieves came running to us armed with assegays, who told us that two lions were at their kraal, requesting our assistance. Four of the men were sent thither with their guns. The backs of the pack oxen being too sore to leave, it was decided to remain one or two days more. Our men reported that they had wounded one of the lions, and that the Hottentooos would search for him through the bushes through which he had escaped.

October 30th.—Misty weather, fine during the day. Sent three of our men to the Hottentoo camp with some copper and tobacco, with orders that two of them should try if possible to invite them to come to us, whilst the third was to report progress. During the afternoon we bought 4 cows, 2 calves and 3 sheep. At night one of our men returned saying that the wife of the chief had become sick so that the Saldanhars could not come, but would be here to-morrow with all the cattle which they intended to sell.

October 31st.—Cloudy in the morning, warm during the day. Our two men returned bringing 1 cow and 1 calf, also 4 sheep, and stated that no more could be had ; we therefore decided to go ourselves with 2 oxen laden with copper and tobacco to see whether we could not induce them to part with more. Some Saldanhars living on the other side of the Berg River had accompanied our men and left them for the encampment of the tobacco thieves. We went to them the same evening and they told us that they (would come to us ?) as soon as the river was fordable, and that, as two years ago, we would not have sufficient copper (to buy their cattle). We assured them of the contrary, stating that they did not possess as much cattle as we had copper ; when they left we gave them some tobacco. They promised to persuade their chief to visit the fort when the water was low in the river. Upon this we decided to turn back to the fort ; there being no chance of more barter.

November 1st.—Cloudy sky and rain. Proceeded N.W. Having proceeded about 5 leagues through a dry and sandy country, with very little fresh water, excepting here and there small pools dug by the Hottentooos, mostly brackish, we found a Hottentoo encampment in the afternoon of very little importance, with only 21 huts. We encamped on a hillock, and in our intercourse with the chief asked him whether we could obtain any cattle from him. He answered that he would consult the head men this evening. We promised that if he could procure us 10 oxen and 20 sheep he

would be presented with a thick piece of copper wire and some tobacco. He promised to let us know early to-morrow morning, as we intended to leave at that time, and this short notice might induce his people to trade.

1657.

November 2nd.—This morning early we could only obtain 4 sheep, and were disappointed in our hopes that whilst travelling they might change their minds and bring more cattle. Returning in the afternoon to those in charge of the baggage, we found that they had shot a buck. Orders were given for an immediate return to the fort, as no trade seemed possible and the provisions were getting low.

November 3rd.—Fine, W. weather. Travelled along a river whose borders were full of Dutch reeds; consequently we gave it the name of the *Dutch Rietbeecq*. We travelled 5 leagues S.W. across sandy and heath lands, until about 2 hours before sunset, when we looked for a safe encampment.

November 4th.—S.E. breeze. Travelled in the same direction along the same rivulet, which meanders for about 4 leagues into the kloof, the fort being S.W. by S. from us.

November 5th.—Fine, sunshine. Left the kloof; passed the Saltpans, through the Fresh and the Salt Rivers, towards the fort, which we reached in the afternoon with 7 cows, 3 calves, and 41 sheep, besides our merchandize, viz: 426 lbs. wire and plate copper, 16 lbs. tobacco and 6 doz. pipes, so that the animals have cost:—

The cows and calves, 50 lbs. copper at 70 gl. the						
100 lbs., 7 lbs. tobacco at 9 st., $\frac{1}{2}$ gross pipes						
at 16 st.	f46	3				
And the 41 sheep and lambs, 48 lbs. copper, 10						
lbs. tobacco, and $\frac{1}{2}$ gross pipes	f38	10				
Total	f84	13				

(Signed) A. GABBEMA.

November 6th.—Fine S.S.E. weather, a little rain. The following Resolution adopted by the Council. See Resolution of this date.

November 7th.—Dry, S.E. wind. Some Charingurinas visit us, who dwell on this side of the Berg River, bringing 25 sheep, which we bought at a higher price to encourage them. They were well treated and promised to bring more. We made no scruples as regards the quality of the animals, and left them under the impression that they had the best of it by means of the burried barter, whilst our object was to cause no impediment to the traffic. We also received news that within 3 or 4 days the Chaynouquas would arrive with much cattle. This is to be hoped, as cattle is required for agriculture, and the making of butter, &c., besides the increase.

November 8th.—Strong S.E. Freemen allowed to buy ivory, feathers, &c. See Resolution of this date.

1867. November 9th.—S.E. abates, fine weather, N.W. breeze, at night again S.E.

November 10th.—S.E. till midnight.

November 11th.—Fine S.E. breeze. The *Walisch* leaves with our letters for Batavia.

November 12th.—Same weather. A big bush cat caught in the morning as big as an ordinary leopard, in the hedge of the garden, and in a snare placed there for the purpose, as many wild animals daily enter the enclosure and do much damage, especially in the vineyard, biting off the young shoots.

November 13th.—Same weather. The wood-cutters bring news that they have a hard time of it in the forest with the lions and wolves, and ask for some guns. The freeman W. Corneliss Mostert told the Commander when on his lands, that most unexpectedly this morning he had come upon a lion and nearly fallen down from fright, but in a most wonderful manner he had retained his presence of mind, before the lion had noticed him, though the animal was not three yards distant from him, striking the water with its forefeet, and which river Mostert was to cross. The latter had retired and saved himself by climbing into a tree.

November 14th.—Fine weather. The Captain of the Chaynouquas, mentioned before, arrived with 100 men and 71 head of cattle. They were treated with a little brandy and some food, and after that their cattle was bought at a higher rate than the usual price, that we may obtain breeding stock. After the barter they were again treated, so that some became rather jolly, everyone receiving some tobacco. They left in good spirits excepting the chief, who wished to remain till the morrow. He asked for a pack ox to be lent to him, that he might take his copper home; in a few days he would return with more cattle and bring back the animal. This was allowed, and more was offered which he might require, in order to attach him to us, as he appeared to be a fine fellow upon whose word we might depend.

November 15th.—Fine weather. Two oxen bought. Some iron, an axe, copper and tobacco, also some small chains presented to the Chief of the Chaynouquas. His men having been fed and well treated also received some bread for the road. His copper and tobacco were placed on one of our pack oxen. He then left, promising to return with more cattle. Two of his men who had been here with him before, seeing that we gave so many presents to this chief, as he represented himself to be, appeared very much dissatisfied, and asked why he alone should get all the things, as he was not the great chief of the Chaynouquas, but only a man of quality sent by his tribe and with them to sell us cattle, of which the owners were many; that they, too, had brought some animals, having received permission from their great chief to trade with us if they liked; that the other was of higher rank than they were they acknowledged, having the daughter of one of the chiefs as his wife; but they could not understand why he should receive so

many presents. In order to appease them they were also presented with some copper and tobacco. All these things were told us by the interpretress Eva, and in the presence of Herry and another named Peter, but called by the Hottentoos Otegno, and who could speak a little Dutch. Both affirmed the above, viz.: that this chief, though of rank, was not the head of the Chaynouquas, but had a daughter of the king for a wife, consequently he was in higher repute than the others. He also had many cattle. We were obliged to give Herry also a lot of copper, tobacco and some of the gilt chains, as he had plainly shown his dissatisfaction, and threatened that he would prevent all Saldanhars from coming hither. To prevent him from doing mischief he received the presents. But now Peter wished also to have a share, asking why Herry should get so much and he should get nothing; he had interpreted as much as Herry yesterday. We were, therefore, obliged to give him also something extra. Whilst Eva, Herry and Pieter were with the Chanouquas, we again showed the latter some gold and pearls, and asked when it would be convenient to have an interview with the Chobona, but as soon as we mentioned this, Herry became quite wild, and said it was not his duty to be humble to the Chobona, but the duty of the Chobona to be humble to them. Upon our statement that we had acted in accordance with what the Chaynouquas had told us, he answered that they were mad and did not know what they said. He seemed partly to quarrel with them, and hinted, whilst we were looking on, that it would be better not to continue on this topic. Eva therefore changed the conversation, for Herry, who had winked to Peter to say as he said, angrily spat on the ground and covered the saliva with his foot as often as we mentioned the Chobona, saying, "That and as much for the Chobona." From this we feared a rupture between him and the chief, and told him that what we heard about the Chobona had been told us by others. In this way we endeavoured to avoid all quarrels; but when we said that the large majority of Saldanhars considered the Chobona as their king, he replied that they were mad, as the great chief was the old stout man named Gogosy who lived among the biggest troop of the Caapmen, and who was acknowledged as such by all who dwelt on this side of the Great Berg River, and had been visited by our party, who had obtained some cattle from them, and who are named as follows:—

Goringaycoina, Caapmen's largest troupe, with whom Gogosy
—well known to us—lives at all times.

Goringaina.

Goringuaqua, the troupe of Herry and all the watermen.

Gourachouqua or Gorachauna, the tobacco thieves; also the Charingurina who last year had surprised our *Robbejacht* and robbed the men of their copper, with the intention of murdering them.

1657.

All were well known to the Caapmen, and dwell on this side of the Great Berg River, and together are continually at war with the real Saldanhars on the other side. When we told Herry that sometimes they might be made subject to the Chobona, he replied that those who allowed this were also often mad, but that they would by right acknowledge no one save Gogosy, whose kinsman Pieter Otegna was. He acknowledged that the Namana or Namaqua was a powerful and rich tribe, living towards the north and to the west of the Cape, where all these Cape aborigines dwell; but they were not Hottentooe, and had no dominion over them (Herry and his associates). They had long hanging but no curled hair, as the Hottentooe. They were also dressed in sheepskins and obtained all the copper, but he did not know whether they again sold it to other nations. From the Namaquas they also obtained their red beads, which that nation made, and most of the cattle now among the Saldanhars.

The Kochqua or Kochona were the largest and most important of all the Hottentooe, not only of those near the Cape and on this side of the Berg River, but of all the real Saldanhars, who consisted of several groups, and were called the

Gorona, or Goroqua, of the Kochqua tribe; and

Chaynouqua, or Chaynouqua, with whom we were now trading; a large and rich tribe; also the

Kaygunna, or Kaygunqua; great friends of Chaynouqua, of whom some were yesterday with cattle among the Chaynouqua natives;

Hancumqua and Charigruqua.

These seven tribes generally live on kindly terms with each other, and often fell out with those on this side of the Berg River, but for the sake of trading with us they had made peace until they had had enough of trade.

From the above it is evident that Herry, Caapmen, &c., are rebels against the Chobona. This was confirmed by Eva when she was questioned alone, and she further said that Herry had quarrelled with the Chaynouqua Chief, and told him not to state that any gold or pearls were obtainable here, for that we would, to get these articles, travel through the whole country. The Chaynouqua seemed to be impressed with this idea also, but when alone with us he appeared as kindly disposed as ever, merely saying, in a laughing way, that Herry was angry with him, but that he cared very little for that.

November 16th.—Strong S.E.

November 17th.—Fine weather later in the day.

November 18th (Sunday).—Fine weather. Some 8 freemen, who had left to buy cattle, thinking to be more successful than the Company, return home with one lean cow, three calves, and 47 old and young miserable sheep, obtained from the Charingourinas who had surprised the *Robbejacks*, and would have tried the same on these men if the latter had not been warned by the faithful

Hottentoo whom they had with them. They consequently left as soon as they could, as the Chorachouquas (tobacco thieves) had to be passed on the way, who had also with the Charingurinars made arrangements to attack our people who, in October last and to the number of 15, had been out. No Hottentoo dares leave with our people for fear of being killed. The freemen have, therefore, been frightened, and are determined just yet not to go out on their own responsibility. It is plain, and the Hottentoo living with us confirm this opinion, that the Caapmen among whom the black Chief lives with Herry, and all on this side of the river, are not to be trusted. They will never sell us any cattle, except what is mad, sick or lame, or what they may have above their needs. The real Saldanhars, classified as above, and living on the other side of the Berg River, often going far inland, are inclined to trade, but do not like us to visit them, as we perceived from the Chaynouquas and Kaygunnas, from whom we obtained cattle some time ago. All told the same story—that their Chiefs would, hearing of our approach, flee, and drive their cattle to death. If, therefore, we would only remain at home, they would take care that we would have enough cattle, if we only had copper enough, and not run short as two years ago.

November 19th.—Quiet, rainy weather. S.S.E. in the afternoon.

November 20th.—The same, but dry weather. Riebeeck proceeds to the corn lands, where he had marked off the spot for the granary, and makes arrangements for reaping the barley, the other grain being also in fine condition. Of peas and beans there will be a great loss, as they stand very bad. The land appears as yet too raw for these articles. Vessel sighted, supposed to be a stranger, which might have anchored off Robben Island if it possessed a copy of the Company's instructions.

November 21st.—Full moon. Cloudy, fickle weather. Vessel proves to be an Englishman, Capt. Daniel Morgan; ship's name the *Golden Dolphin*, 150 lasts, 55 men; had left the Downs on the 26th July (old style), and was going to Bantam for the English Company, which had hired it at 200 Rds. per last, &c.

November 22nd.—Strong S.S.E.

November 23rd and 24th.—The same.

November 25th (Sunday).—Fine, sunshine.

November 27th.—The same. Men sent to the corn lands to work at the granary. Barley still being gathered. More men sent to cut the corn, &c. To-day the freemen bought 10 sheep from the Charingurinars, three of which, as they said, had by the carelessness of the herd been drowned. They asked that they might sell the meat to the English vessel, but this was refused, as it is supposed that the animals were killed and not drowned. This always happens when English ships are in the Bay; then so many sheep or cattle are supposed to have died or been drowned, that with this excuse they may be sold. The consequence must be a

1667. large diminution of the stock. Rain in the afternoon and very good for the gardens; as because of the drought, everything was nearly burnt dry. We could get no cabbage to grow, so that we fear the supply will be small. The caterpillars, &c., have also done much injury, eating up whatever is sown from time to time, and the heat destroying what they leave.

November 28th, 29th, and 30th.—Fine, fruitful weather; W. wind. Resolved no longer to sell, for reasons stated, any salt meat or pork to the freemen either for cash or on credit. See Resolution on this subject of this date. Reasons also given why they are not allowed to go on another expedition inland.

December 1st.—Wet, N.W. weather. The Chaynouqua brings 53 cows, among them six fine oxen. We bought all. He also brought back the ox which he had borrowed. He promised to bring more. It seemed as if the freemen had said that they intended going on an expedition towards the camp of these people, and he therefore begged that we would forbid our men from doing so, as his people would run away, whilst they are now coming down in large numbers. Of the Couchouquas also three men were here, who said that they also would bring cattle soon, being already near the Berg River. All these people were well treated.

December 2nd (Sunday).—Wet weather; N.W. The Chaynouqua chief still at the fort; treated well in the Commander's house, and intending to leave to-morrow for more cattle. The freemen bought three cows and two calves at the house of Reyniersz, so that they also are getting well supplied. As we are now getting some oxen for the plough, three more men have asked for their discharge, requesting 45 morgen of ground for cultivation. They also receive permission to cross the River to see whether they like the land on the other side adjoining that of the freeman, Caspar Brinkman, that the surveyor may beacon it off.

December 3rd and 4th.—Dark, hazy weather as above. The three men, Jacob Theunisz, of Cooftjesplaat; Pieter Visagie, of Antwerpen; and Simon Jansen, in het Velt, of Dordrecht, receive their freedom for 20 years on the spot above mentioned, each receiving 15 morgen to the east of Liesbeeck River, between Table and the Forest Mountains, according with the deeds given them.

December 5th.—New moon. Wet weather; same wind.

December 6th.—The same. A letter sent to India by the English vessel.

December 7th.—Fine western breeze. The English ship leaves.

December 8th.—Same weather. The freemen informed of our Resolution of the 30th November regarding the sale to them of salt meat and pork. They argued that the trade in cattle was still slowly progressing, and that they had very few sheep to fall back upon. It was resolved, at their request, to accommodate them a little longer with preserved meat until we have more insight into

the progress of the trade. The freemen also state that every night their nets are taken out of the river and cut to pieces, very likely by the Hottentooos, so that now they have no fish to eat. It was resolved to give them together a good sein, for fishing in and outside of the river, the Company to have $\frac{1}{3}$ of what they catch for the garrison. For this they will receive gratis as much Cape salt as they want, as the salt brought by the Hottentooos costs very little. The value of the sein given them to-day is f40
 Two white lines, two skeins of string, 16 lbs. lead for the sticks, one small cask of salt, costing together, about . . . f18
 As may be seen in the ledger under the head extra expenses. The charge of the sein, &c., is entrusted to Steven Jansen, of Wageningen, the first councillor representing the freemen on our council. He has to keep it in his house, and properly dry it after use, &c. He is not to leave it at the river, lest it might share the fate of the nets. He is also to repair all holes, &c. See Resolution.

December 9th.—Fine W. weather. The freemen altogether obtain 19 sheep from the Charingurinas.

December 10th.—Same weather. The Commander proceeds to the forest possessed by Leendert Cornelisz, of Seven Huyzen, three hours' walk from the fort, to see whether a better wagon road could not be made to it, as the present one is so full of stones and ruts that the freemen's wagons are daily broken, and two wagon makers are continually employed mending them—a great expense to the Company. After careful search a good level road was found, but with an hour's circuit on the other side of the Liesbeeck, to the east of the freemen's lands, who live on the other side, over the hard sand or useless ground towards the north or on this side of the forest hill. This track was pointed out to the freemen, who were told to use no other, as their wagons would not again be repaired by the Company's wagon makers.

December 11th and 12th.—Fine during the day; strong S.E. at night. Many of the Company's servants busy harvesting. The freemen do not pay much attention to this, but seem bent upon trading for cattle. The latter is so insignificant that they suffer great loss in their lands and consequently progress but little.

December 13th.—Same weather. Some Saldanhars belonging to the Chaynouqua tribes bring 12 cattle, which we bought; their headman, called by us "the Resolute," had not been here for two years, and seeing, whilst busy trading with R. de Man, the Commander, and finding that he was still the same individual, he appeared much pleased, laughing, singing, &c., taking Riebeeck round the neck and holding his hands. Riebeeck paid him the same compliment and made him understand that he also was very glad to see him, and to prove this treated him and his men abundantly with brandy, bread, and beads. After this he left, promising to bring much cattle, whilst he added that we might also expect his friend the Captain of the Chaynouquas, from whom 2 or

1657. — 8 large troops had already been obtained as mentioned above. The freemen had also bought at Rayniersz's homestead 3 cattle, so that the trade, thank God, is fairly prospering.

December 14th and 15th.—Same dry, warm weather; S.E. wind. The Commander measures off 60 morgen of land for the three freemen, whom another had joined, as will be seen from the deeds of transfer. Herry, as broker for other natives inland, sold to the freemen 8 cattle, among them some oxen. He told the Commander, as soon as he heard that he was there, and fearing that he had done mischief, that soon other natives would arrive with much cattle and that he had only brought this little lot to the freemen. All this, however, is moonshine.

December 16th (Sunday).—Strong S.E. and drought; the freemen obtain a cow and calf at Reyniersz's place, which is right in the way of the natives at the Fresh River, very nicely situated for trade, and an hour's walk from the fort. One ox, 3 cows and 1 sheep bought from the tobacco thieves, and 7 sheep from the Charigurinars, among whom were three of the Cochoquas, who had never been at the fort. They had also come to see what sort of people the Hollanders were. They were therefore treated well, to make them friendly. They promised to bring much cattle.

December 17th.—The sloop sent out to inquire what vessels were off shore, brought news that they were the *Slot van Honingen* and the *Arnhem*, and also the following note to the Commander:—With their consorts they had left Batavia on the 4th February, under the flag of the Honourable Volquerus Westerwolt. Near the Cape during May they had experienced heavy winds and storms, and if they had continued to bear up for the Cape they would have perished. On the 21st May the *Honingen* was obliged to steer for Mauritius, to pass the winter in the North W. haven there. It arrived there on the 2nd July in a greatly disabled condition, and in want of drink-water; also with many sick on board, and weak and overworked men. Since leaving the Straits of Sunda it had only met the *Arnhem* on the 13th of this month a little to the East of Agulhas. That vessel had not fared much better, and had retreated to Madagascar. It was in want of everything excepting rice, which it had obtained at that island. “Things would have gone very badly with us if we did not meet the *Hof van Zeeland* at Mauritius which rendered us assistance in various ways. It could, however, give us no rice or bread, and was also badly provided with sails. In case therefore we are prevented by adverse winds, &c., from reaching the roads and are driven to sea, we request you to draw from other ships the supplies mentioned and to forward them to us to St. Helena by the return fleet, as we will otherwise not be able to proceed home, and our position is daily growing worse, &c.”

Signed by J. GOOSSENS and C. SPEELMAN.

At once the sloop was sent back with a sheep and some vegetables, and also the following letter to Goosens:—“Having heard of your disastrous voyage, and that the other vessel is the *Arnhem*,

badly provided with necessaries, especially anchors and cables, but well provided with rice and other food, and also that you are afraid that it has lost one or two anchors yesterday and may proceed to St. Helena; moreover, noting your fear that you also shall not be able to reach these roads in consequence of the heavy S.E. now blowing, we advise you in that case, and in accordance with the instructions which you have on board, to make for the anchorage at Robben Island, Dassen Island, or Saldanha Bay, as J. Symonsz on board your vessel well knows. The instructions and the charts were made by his advice, and we believe that you will be able to reach the roads, as you are already lying behind two anchors, and it has never yet happened that vessels have been drifted out of the bay by the S.E., which causes no strong current and blows off shore. We therefore trust that the *Arnhem* will also arrive, at all events at Saldanha Bay, that you may be supplied from this with as much as we can give you, especially an anchor and cable. You are therefore to use your best efforts that the vessel may not remain without the required assistance, so that it may be unnecessary to wait here for other arrivals, or at least that a proper plan may be adopted.

Should you however be blown away from this, you are to call at Saldanha Bay to see whether the *Arnhem* has put in there, and you will oblige us by taking on board the accompanying copper and lead, which, with the copper in the *Arnhem*, you are to hand over to the men of the *Robbejacht*, now burning oil and catching birds there, but in case that boat has left, you are to bury the lot on Schapen Island, well known to skipper J. Symonsz, with a mark and a letter, whence we shall send for it. Should the *Arnhem* have proceeded to St. Helena, the copper which it has on board is to be buried there, as one of our yachts now cruising off Angola will visit St. Helena shortly and may in that way take it on board. We require it badly here." 17th Dec., 1657.

In the afternoon the "look out" men reported that the *Arnhem* was approaching with a N.W. wind. This being denied by others Riebeeck himself ascended the mountain, and found the vessel beating up off Robben Island against a strong S.E. The sloop returned with the following letter from the *Honingen* :—We thank you for your kindness and care; the 20 plates of copper you may look out for; the lead is not on board. With the copper in the *Arnhem* we shall do as you wish. You must have misunderstood our letter, as the *Arnhem* is not only in want of anchors, &c., but also of provisions excepting rice, which she obtained at Madagascar. We, however, are fairly provided with food excepting rice and bread, and unless provided with bread neither of the two vessels will be able to proceed home. We also require 20 or 30 water casks, as most of what we have are rotten and unfit for use. If, therefore, you cannot provide us, we shall be obliged to await a ship from home, or the return fleet from Batavia.—Signed by J. Goosens and C. Speelman. 17th December, 1657.

1657. Having by letter been informed, &c. See Resolution of 17th Dec., 1657. S.E. wind grew stronger during the night, and remained so on the 18th during the forenoon, when it abated somewhat, and the following letter was sent to the *Honingen* :—

“ Received your second note last night, which informed us of your necessities. We have decided to provide from our own slender means these two valuable ships, that they may be able to proceed home, without waiting for other vessels, even if we are to suffer privation for a while ourselves, as the Company is much interested in the speedy arrival of these ships. Please therefore make a list of what you require, and as regards the water casks we hope to be able to help you, if you have preserved the iron hoops of your old casks. Last night I saw the *Arnhem* off Robben Island, and trust that it will be able to reach the roads, and provided for, as it has obtained a good supply of rice at Madagascar and you also are well provided with stores. We will do our best to assist you further, though we are to suffer privations until the arrival of home ships; we prefer this course to save a heavy expense to the Company. The hoisting of our flag will tell you that we have again seen the *Arnhem*. You are to do the same if you see her before we do so. You also receive some refreshments and greens for the men and your saloon, as much as the small boat can carry; also 3 fresh loaves for yourselves and the ladies. Milk is far too distant from the fort, about 1½ miles away, among the free men, and will besides be carried with difficulty by the boat in this windy weather.”

(Signed) J. V. RIEBEECK, 18th Dec. 1657.

The boat with difficulty reached the ship because of the heavy wind. The vessel immediately hoisted its flag, to show that it had sighted the *Arnhem*.

December 19th.—The same heavy S.S.E. wind, hot and dry; at noon it abated a little, and the sloop returned bringing the following letter :—“ We were very glad to hear that you thought it possible for you to be able to assist us and the *Arnhem*, and to further our voyage, so that it will not be necessary to wait for home ships, or others from India. You will be able to do a great service to the Company. Should we safely reach the roads we shall offer you a list of things required by us, and further commune with you orally. We are grateful for the greens and the bread sent. We still see the *Arnhem* from the topmast, but she is very far away; she is evidently lying to, waiting for a favourable wind. Hope she may be able to come up.

(Signed) J. GOOSSENS, Dec. 18th, 1657.

N.B.—We are greatly in want of a topsail. Should the one we have give way, we would be in great straits, and we would therefore be glad if you could send us some canvas to set the sailmakers at work at once; also some tar for the windings around the foremast, which shows a crack.”

In the afternoon the sloop was again sent off with refreshments and some tar, &c., after Riebeeck had returned from the corn lands, which he had gone to inspect. The sloop had hardly reached the vessel when the wind began to blow again as hard as ever. It abated at midnight.

December 20th (Full Moon).—Changing weather in the forenoon. The sloop returned with the following note:—“We received what you sent in good order, and thank you cordially; we thought that the wind would have turned to-day, but it has gone back to its old quarters; but if you remain so mindful of us, it will be better to remain here than cruise about. For the rest we must trust in God, &c.”—19th Dec., 1657.

(Signed) J. GOOSSENS.

The *Honingen* anchors in the roadstead at noon. Since the day before yesterday nothing has been seen of the *Arnhem*. In the afternoon the senior merchant Goosens and the skipper of the *Honingen* land, informing us further verbally of their destitute condition, and giving us the following list of what they are in need of, viz.:—1 heavy anchor, 1 heavy cable, 2 anchor stocks, 1 piece standing rigging, 6 puddings for the main rigging and six spars, 1 iron cable for downhauls, 1 do. for tackle and rigging, 2 bundles of rope for the running rigging, 12 lines of 9, 12, and 15, 12 bundles of housing, 12 do. marline, 3 or 4 large hooks and leather covers for the tackle, 6 pudding bolts, 25 water casks.

PROVISIONS.

6½ lasts of rice, 2 aums oil of olives, 1 leaguer vinegar, 1 aum train oil, 2 casks tar, 1½ cask pitch, 3 large scrapers for cleaning the ship, 1 piece old cable for oakum, 6 rolls Dutch canvas for the main topsail. Should there, however, be no Dutch kind, then 325 ells French stuff will do, and for the mizen 220 ells Dutch canvas. For the foresail 430 ells Dutch canvas, 25 strands twine, 8 or 10 bundles of cane.

Done this day on board the *Slot van Honingen* (20th Dec.)

(Signed) CLAAS SPEELMAN.”

Resolved to inform them that to-morrow a united council will be held to decide upon all these matters, and that they are to confine themselves in their requisitions only to what is absolutely indispensable to carry them home.

December 21st.—Cloudy, N.W. weather and a misty rain. The *Arnhem* arrives, having lain for 2 days at Dassen Island, with fine weather. It had also obtained there some greens, eggs, &c., for the sick, having only 10 men in good health on board, and also lost 37 by death. Refreshments sent on board, and some sheep slaughtered for both ships. The *Arnhem* had lost an anchor on the opposite side of the bay and required another.

1657.

December 22nd.—Wet N.W. weather. The officers of the *Arnhem* land and further report their condition. They required almost everything excepting rice, 14 lasts of which had been obtained at Madagascar; all the men were suffering from dropsy, 37 had died, among them 2 skippers, so that the chief mate was now in charge.

December 23rd (Sunday).—Cloudy, changing weather from the west. The two boats return from Saldanha Bay with 31 casks salted birds and 17 do. seal oil. Had not had any trade with the natives, and had brought the two English cannons from Dassen to Robben Island. Had also cut the Company's mark on stones and fixed it on poles at the spots ordered, and brought back the following letter from Robben Island:—"The number of sheep is 400. It being very dry, there is little to eat for them. On the 23rd October a large vessel was sighted and on the 16th a yacht. We do not know whether the horse-radish will succeed; a lot are rotten; perhaps they have been planted too early in the rainy season. The sweet-potatoes have all perished, excepting those received from George, which however, 5 or 6 days after showing above ground also died. We think we do not know how to manage these things. The best things to grow here are turnips, salad, radish, cabbage and curly kale, but no carrots. During the last 4 months we only saw 2 rabbits; the rest are no doubt dead. The rock-rabbits do not seem to increase. Send us 200 spars for the kraal, which on one side has only the height of a firkin stave; also 15 or 20 bundles reeds for a watch house when a beacon fire is to be made in bad weather. We want one man more to help in castrating the young sheep; one is to be continually in the garden to prevent the geese and birds from destroying it. We received two cannons from Dassen Island, but without carriages, so that they are useless."

21st December, 1657. (Signed) J. WOUTERSZ.

December 24th.—Cloudy, calm weather, like yesterday. The collective Council of the *Slot van Honingen* and *Arnhem*, &c., &c. (See Resolution of this day.)

December 25th and 26th (1st and 2nd Christmas).—Fine sunshine. Inspection of the vessels made. The sails might still do at a pinch, but the skippers are given time until the day after to-morrow for further deliberation and report; when a final resolution shall be taken in the best interests of the Company. All the sick of the *Arnhem* conveyed to the hospital on shore.

December 27th and 28th.—Fine, N.W. breeze. As some still have their doubts about the efficiency of the sails for the homeward voyage, the officers are again to make a careful inspection and report accordingly to-morrow. Elbert Dircksz of Emmerich and Christina Does of Doesburgh request permission to be united in wedlock. (See Resolution of this date 28th.)

December 29th.—Fine weather as before. Report handed in to the Council by the inspector appointed. Council resolves as follows. (See Resolution of this date.)

December 30th (Sunday) and 31st.—Fine weather and wind as above. Mostly all the grain of the Company cut down, except a little wheat, which was sown a little later for a trial, &c.

1657.

1658.

January 1st (New Year's Day).—Strong S.E.

1658.

January 2nd.—The same. The freemen complained that the cattle of Herry and the Caapmen had very much destroyed their peas and beans, and that the natives refused to drive them out. Riebeeck thereupon went to their camp at Salt River, upon which they concluded that we intended to attack them, and drove their cattle, about 15 or 16,000, and sheep, about 1,100, into a kraal together, sent away their women and children, and armed with bows and arrows put themselves in battle order. But when our men came nearer, they all ran away, so that we could have brought all their cattle to the fort without striking a blow; but whilst fleeing they observed the Commander among a second company of his men, and at once laid down their arms, the women also returning, all apparently having great faith in Riebeeck, who called Herry and the chief men towards him, who told him that they had run away because the freemen were angry with them, and seeing the soldiers, they concluded that they had come to kill them, but when they saw Riebeeck they were reassured. Riebeeck pointed out to them the scarcity of pasture, and desired them to move to the back of the Gevel mountains or towards the Houtvalley, leaving the pastures on which they now stood to the Hollanders, which was too little for both parties. They promised to proceed to the Houtvalley to-morrow, where they will be nicely caught and confined until the Company decides their fate. Riebeeck returns home before dark accompanied by some of them. It is evident that the whole lot could have been easily caught.

January 3rd.—Heavy S.E. Herry c.s. proceed over the Boaheuvel towards False Bay, where they were joined by the Chorachouquas or tobacco thieves, who together had about 3,000 cattle and 2,000 sheep, not one of which they would sell; Herry told us, however, that very soon some Saldanhars from the interior, the Chaynouquas, &c., would be here with much cattle for sale. Time will show.

January 4th and 5th.—Same heavy S.E. No communication with the ships.

January 6th (Sunday).—The same.

January 7th.—The same wind. The following Resolution adopted:—"Though 17 or 18 of the *Arnhem* are still ill on shore, and some others on board, it was resolved, after the case had been stated by the Commander, that as it was still too early in the season to proceed home by the Northern route, the vessels shall remain here at any rate until the 25th."

Claes Speelman having stated, in consequence of the Resolution of the 24th December, that he is not at liberty to leave the *Honingen*

1658. — for the *Arnhem*, as such a proceeding would be against the orders of the General Company, which require that every skipper must return to the same Chamber which despatched him, and for which reason he was ordered on the *Honingen* by the Gov. Gen., it was resolved to leave him where he is.

The freemen who have decided to support themselves with fishing and burning of train oil on the islands and in Saldanha Bay proceed thither to-day with the *Penguin*, sold to them as she was, and on the following conditions:—They may sell all their dried fish and eggs to the burghers and ships at whatever price they can get; what they cannot sell they are to sell to the Company for the garrison at 5 gl. the 100 lbs. and train oil at 8 gl. the half aum. Like other freemen they shall sell to the Company all rhinoceros horns and tusks which they may obtain, at the prices already fixed. They are further bound to remain here and work in freedom for 20 years, subject to all the conditions and benefits under and with which all the freemen have been discharged.

January 8th, 9th, and 10th.—Same heavy S.E. Riebeeck goes out again with some men in the afternoon to examine all the localities and passes behind the Steen and Bosbergen, and hit upon a plan to occupy them with the least possible expense. He remained out three days until Saturday night the 12th, accompanied by the merchants Clevesteyn and Cop of the *Honingen* and *Arnhem*, and concluded that at least three spots had to be fortified strongly; the kloof pass being the most difficult in consequence of its width. He decided to revisit the two other spots on a future occasion, not wishing to trouble the men any more, who were thoroughly tired out by going up and down the mountains.

January 13th (Sunday).—Very warm weather. Marriage takes place between Elbert Diresz of Emmerich, bachelor, and burgher resident here, and Christina Does of Doesburgh, spinster. See Resolution of this date.

January 14th.—Calm weather, dark and cloudy, rain much desired, the S.E. having much parched the gardens. Herry came to the fort and stated that he had heard from the son of the Captain of the Caapmen, who had been out with the Commander, that the latter had inspected all the valleys behind the Cape mountains and found fine pastures. He requested permission to hold them for his own use and that of the Caapmen; he was answered yes, and that we would use the pastures on these flats without troubling ourselves about others. We made him believe that we had been looking for other pastures as that in the neighbourhood had become so scanty; but if they left the ground here for our use alone we would remain satisfied and leave them all the Hout and Mountain valleys, and with as much cattle as they liked to keep. He replied that he would not be altogether safe there, as his enemies, whom he named, often visited some spots near the Steenbergen and would rob him and his friends; he begged therefore that a guard might be placed there to protect

him and the Caapmen, promising to procure for us as much cattle as possible, leaving their cattle and wives under our care, and offering to take charge of a large troop of sheep on Robben Island ; also to use the copper obtained from us for cattle for buying other animals in the interior ; he also wished that we should also take under our protection the Chorachouquas, who possessed about 2,000 cattle and 1,000 sheep. We replied that he should visit us with the Captain of the Caapmen and Chorachouquas to speak of these matters. He promised, but wished that the meeting should be secret. Resolution adopted in Council regarding the command of the *Arnhem*, &c. See Resolution.

January 15th.—Warm, sunshine. Sudden death of one of the clerks, named Gerrit Ralandt, from a severe attack of "Zinkins" in the throat.

January 16th.—Same weather ; Ralandt buried.

January 17th.—S.E. breeze. The jetty so far advanced that the Commander could, whilst proceeding on board, walk over the planks towards the boat. Planks of 4 inches thick are now being sawn in the forest for covering the frame and enabling casks to be rolled to the boats.

January 18th.—Same weather. Hans Pietersz Faesberger, burgher, drowned in the Fresh River whilst placing a net in it. He was a fine agriculturist, and leaves a debt to the Company of f61.9. advances to friends at home.

January 19th.—Full moon ; hard S.E. and hot drought.

January 20th (Sunday).—The same ; 21st, the same. A small yacht casts anchor under Robben Island. The most important part of harvest time. The Sergeant Superintendent sick ; another appointed in his place to see that every one is doing his best to thresh and gather the corn, peas and beans ; will not save a tenth part of what has been sown, so that it is pretty evident that pulse is no success here ; on the contrary, all kinds of grain and vines are thriving well.

January 22nd.—N.W. breeze. *Maria* returns from *Angola via Mauritius*, with following letter from Officers of *Hasselt* :—"Left Table Bay on the 10th September, intended to take the cannons from Dassen Island, but were obliged to pass, as the *Maria* and the *Robbejacht* had done so, and we could do nothing without their assistance. On the 26th we reached 8° 30 min. lat., the position of St. Loanda de St. Paulo ; on the 30th we sighted a vessel at 2 glasses in the afternoon. Found it too late in the day to give chase, and took in all our sails in order to escape observation. The vessel lay with her bows towards the shore, which was in our direction. When it had become dark we unfurled the main and topsails, hoping to meet her. At four glasses of the first watch we saw her to windward, though it was very dark. We hailed her, and she replied that she was from Flushing. We told her to furl, but she made all sail possible, and finally escaped. She may have been a Cruizer or a Portuguese. Until the 15th of this month nothing noteworthy

occurred, when we were so near the shore in a dead calm that we could plainly see the town, Louanda de St. Paulo and 4 ships lying between the island and the mainland, but as the Portuguese could also see us and the *Maria*, we concluded that these vessels would not come out in a hurry. We therefore decided to drift towards Cabo de Lope Graciosa, for water and fuel, in order to proceed thence more quickly to Alder. I did not consider it advisable to make any attempt to the island, as we knew too little of it. Ten of our men we have shipped into the *Maria*, which we have dismissed in order to carry out your orders, and which will be able to give you further particulars.

The *Maria* reported that she had finally parted from the *Hesselt* on the 30th October, and since then, following the coast, had arrived at Cabo Negro on the 27th November, but found nothing. Had after that crossed over and looked fully 14 days for the Island St. Helena Nov., without finding it. On the 6th December they had arrived at St. Helena, where they remained 16 days. They did not succeed in catching any horses, six of which they saw, but collected about 300 orange and apple trees, leaving on the 24th December. They therefore did the voyage in 78 days during the severest time of the S. E. monsoon, including 8 days of calms, and the three days' delay at Robben Island because of the S.E. In sailing along the coast, and whilst cruising, it had the wind generally S.W. and S.S.W., the sky being cloudy, so that for 15 or 16 days they were unable to take the sun's altitude. The current was generally N.W., being much less near the shore. From St. Helena to $24^{\circ} 26' \text{m.}$ S. lat., and $13^{\circ} 14' \text{m.}$ long., the wind at first was S.-Easterly, then the wind turned to the east, and in $25^{\circ} 48' \text{m.}$ lat. and $14^{\circ} 36' \text{m.}$ long., it became E.N.E., which lasted as far as 31 or 32° lat. and 17° long.; at $33\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ lat. and 19° long., the wind became N.W. and remained so far as 34° lat. and 26° long.; when it became S.W., remaining so until we reached the fort.

The *Maria* also brought from the island (St. Helena) a letter written by the Hon. Westerwolt, stating that having left this on the 7th June last, he had arrived there on the 20th and left on the 2nd July, with only $1\frac{1}{2}$ tons rice, having found only a few pigs. The Hon. Crab. who had caught above 600 pigs, had left with his six ships on the 1st May. A certain English ship, the *Society*, had also arrived at St. Helena on the 9th October in company of the *Eagle* and others, having wintered during 10 weeks at Madagascar, and also found at St. Helena the *Olivebranch*, which had lain near the *Honingen* at Mauritius, and in company of that vessel had left for St. Helena on the 15th October.

The Saldanha freemen return in the *Pugnus* with a good quantity of fish, birds, and many thousands of eggs obtained at Daseen Island, so that they will by this first venture draw a pretty penny out of the ships lying here now, and which readily buy everything. They also brought a letter from Robben Island:—"The number of

1653.

sheep now is 415 all told. The garden is not doing well; everything, horse-radish and sweet potatoes, have been killed by the drought. God only knows whether they will grow again when it rains."

JAN WOUTERSZ: .

January 23rd.—Fine weather, N. breeze. Following Resolution adopted. See Resolution.

January 24th.—Dry weather, S.E., dark and misty.

January 25th.—N.W., rainy, dry again at night. Would have liked the rain to have continued 8 or 10 days. Riebeeck out in search of reeds for the granary, about 3 hours' walk from this. He did not find enough; left orders to cut what was found, and to be brought on in wagons. The reeds all about here used up by the freemen.

January 26th.—Heavy S.E. and drought. Riebeeck finds more reeds some 5 hours away; left orders for gathering them. 27th, same, S.E.

January 28th.—Cool, N.W. breeze, strong S.E. in the afternoon.

January 29th.—Same weather. The Saldanha farmers return to the Island with a letter to Woutersz: on Robben Island:—"Instead of Thomas Christoffel Muller, who has received his freedom with Jurien Jansz and Gerrit Harmanz, Ryk Overhage is sent over to help you. As the garden will not succeed, you are allowed for your encouragement to catch and dry fish and deliver them to the Company at 5 gl. per 100. You can make and collect your own salt on the rocks. For the kraal and watch-house you will soon receive the materials, and you are especially to mind the increase of the sheep. Send us information about the exact number, that we may know what to order for slaughter for the ships daily expected. The grindstone is the property of Jurien Jansz, who has bought it; you are to sharpen your knives for castrating the sheep on another stone."

January 30th.—Fine weather. Following Resolution taken. See Resolution. Heavy cannon firing heard here and in the country. News brought that 2 ships were near the land, which were afterwards lost sight of; did not know what it meant. Men ordered to proceed to-morrow early along the coast of the promontory to see whether one or other ship had been anchoring anywhere. Heavy S.E. during the night, ceasing as usual at midnight.

January 31st.—Fine weather. The men sent out. Shortly afterwards the *Honingen* fired a gun, and hoisted a flag behind, the signal that she had sighted a vessel. The *Arnhem* had also seen it. Riebeeck in vain tries to discover it; he only sees heavy waves on the Whale Rock. The scouts returning report that they had also seen a vessel towards the West. Riebeeck could not see this one either. A N.W. breeze then sprung up, which must bring in whatever vessels may be outside.

Bought 4 cows and 29 sheep from the Kochoquas, who promised to bring more; they were well treated.

February 1st.—Calm, cloudy weather, drizzling rain at night.

1650. The Saldanha burghers returned with eggs and fish from Dassen Island ; they also had heard a gun, but seen nothing.

February 2nd (New Moon).—Heavy S.E. wind. The scouts return, having seen nothing.

February 3rd (Sunday).—Misty, N.W. weather. S.E. in the afternoon, with which the *Robbjacht*, destined for Angola with the *Maria*, makes a trip to Robben Island, with reeds and spars and 25 lambs to be fattened there. Takes also this letter :—“ You receive the spars and reeds asked for for the kraal and guard house on the fire hill. Be careful in always having a good beacon fire, as the signals entirely depend upon it, that the ships may enter the bay in safety. It was supposed here on Wednesday and Thursday that 2 ships were off the land and that shots were heard, but not one has appeared here ; let us know whether you also have heard anything ; always light a fire when you see ships in the offing before dark, that in this way we may also know whether our own look-out men have looked well. It is unnecessary to have more than 3 men on the island. We expect you to make proposals which may diminish but not increase expenses ; this study of economy reveals the faithful servants of the Company ; this economy we urge upon you besides the care of the sheep. N.B.—You also receive 15 young ewes and 10 do. rams, so that you must now have altogether 440.”

The *Maria* prevented from weighing its anchor by the strong S.E.

February 5th.—She leaves this morning with a S.E. breeze. Is, in company of the *Robbjacht*, to hug the coast as far as Angola and explore all ports, bays, rivers, &c., and find out whether no slaves or other merchandize can be obtained. After that she is to proceed towards Loango St. Paulo and look out for a Portuguese prize, returning hither *via* St. Helena, about the time when the *Hasselt* is expected from the Gulf of Guinea, i.e., in May. The Saldanha burghers, having sold their fish and eggs to the ships, returned home to-day. Heavy S.E. in the afternoon.

February 6th, 7th, and 8th.—Vehement hurricane from the same quarter. Riebeeck in the afternoon proceeds to Hout Bay and the Steenbergen to find out exactly what passes there still may be for the Hottentooos to get through.

February 9th.—This morning early he ascended the mountain from the Houtvalley, where he had slept in the open air ; examined the Steenbergen right to their summit, from the kloof pass right away to the furthest point of False Bay, and found that there were so many passes that it would be utterly impossible to confine them except with 10 or 12 redoubts, with extended wings or entrenchments attached to them of 4 or 500 roods, to prevent an exodus. In parts the ground would be very stony and difficult to cut, in others again easier, and 100 soldiers would be required ; but even if the work be completed with much cost and labour, a very careful watch would be necessary, which if neglected at any time would

afford the Hottentoo's an opportunity to escape, when they would never again be tempted to come near us, and never again have faith in us; so that all the trouble and expense would be useless.

February 10th (Sunday).—Fine, sunshine, N.W. breeze.

February 11th.—Calm, cloudy weather. S.E. in the afternoon.

February 12th.—The same, dry, S.E. Resolution taken regarding the stores of the *Arnhem* and *Honingen*. See Resolution.

February 13th.—Fine weather. The officers of the *Arnhem* report that the men of the *Honingen* had refused to deliver to them the 2 casks of pork, at the instigation, it was said of Skipper Klaes Speelman, though there were fully 12 or 13 casks, besides as many of meat, in that vessel. The *Arnhem* only had 3 casks of meat and not $\frac{1}{2}$ do. of pork. This is not unlikely, as yesterday Speelman objected most emphatically in the Council against the transfer, and soon after sent all his men with all his boats on shore from the *Honingen* with the request that as much rice might be given them as would enable them to continue the voyage. They said that their skipper had told them that we had quite enough. They were told that if we could have helped them, we would have done so long ago; that they should be satisfied with our endeavours to provide out of our own slender stores for themselves and the *Arnhem* equally until fresh supplies arrived, which might be looked for every minute. This answer appeased them, though still grumbling, and they returned on board, leaving however sufficient evidence that they would not part with the two casks of pork according to yesterday's Resolution. It is evident that transhipping and sharing of provisions between the two ships that they might leave together will not succeed, and that a prudent course of action is necessary. The skipper is thoroughly in the power of his men, and we allow the *Arnhem* now and then to send for rice, whilst the boats of the *Honingen* are sent back empty, with orders that no rice shall be given until they have complied with yesterday's Resolution regarding the 2 vessels. A cold S.E. in the afternoon, as customary at this time of the year.

February 14th.—Wind continues until noon, when skipper Speelman, of the *Honingen*, lands without having complied with the Council's orders. When reprimanded by the Commander for the absurdities which had taken place yesterday, by sending all his men on shore and creating the disturbances, which might have had serious consequences if a prudent course had not been adopted and the garrison on shore had not been restrained—believing, as they did, that the provisions in the fort were intended for their own use alone, to support them under their hard work, whilst those of the *Honingen* had nothing to do but lie quietly on the roadstead and wait for the supply ship—he had the impudence to reply that such a thing had even befallen a Governor-General, implying that he did not attach any weight to it. Riebeek however had to regard more the interests of the valuable ship than the faults of an ordinary skipper, who could not be punished by deposition, as there was nobody at hand to take his place. He therefore sent the rice on

1658. — board the *Honingen*, with orders to tranship the 2 casks of pork to the *Arnhem*, informing the skipper Speelman that all damage resulting from his disobedience will be placed to his account. He promised to give the pork if again sent for, and was ordered to send on shore the chief ringleaders, viz., the butler's mate, who refused to open the hold to have the casks taken out, and defied anyone to take the keys from him, and another young babbler surnamed Javeneese, who had yesterday used very threatening language in the Fort. These men were to be proceeded against, and the skipper would be held responsible in case of non-compliance with the order.

February 15th.—Fine, N.W. weather.

February 16th.—The same. Skipper Speelman lands with the two ringleaders, but accompanied with two boats laden with men, who refused to allow the prisoners to be taken into the Fort, and followed them inside. The butler's mate, however, was caught by stratagem and safely locked up. Upon this, the men showed strong opposition, and created great disturbance. We only had 7 or 8 men at home, the rest were in the forest cutting timber for the jetty. The mutineers were, however, ordered to go outside, which they did with a bad grace, attacking the Corporal and guard so badly with stones that the latter requested permission to use their firearms. This was forbidden, and the gate closed to prevent further mischief. The one surnamed Javaan, however, escaped this time, but in his place we caught two other ringleaders, whilst the rest having committed a vast deal of mischief against the gate, only returned on board in the afternoon, stating that they would bring more men to liberate the prisoners. In the meanwhile the freemen's boat returned from Dassen Island with fish, eggs and oil, bringing a note from Robben Island as follows:—"The number of sheep at present is 450; only 48 are fit for slaughter. We send you six, as verbally requested by Rijk Oberhagen; we request in future to have a sealed order to prevent mistakes. We saw no ships and heard no firing; twice a day we ascend the beacon hill to look out. If there had been any near we would have heard or seen them. We are grateful for the permission to catch fish, and request a boat of 25 or 30 gls. for which we are prepared to pay, but there is not sufficient salt for table use here. The material sent has been used for the kraal and the watch house. We landed a six-pounder from the *Maria* and shipped into her the two English guns; we also send the grinding stone of Jansen. Send us a bucket, the one here has perished from age. We pay particular attention to the sheep and their increase. Please send us some ink and paper."—(Signed) J. Woutersen. 13th Febr.

February 17th (Sunday).—Warm sunshine; vessel sighted towards the W.

February 18th.—Calm, W. weather. The yacht *Schelvis* arrives from Batavia with 38 men, 40 lasts of rice, and 8 ditto beans and cad-jangh, also some clothing for the garrison. It also contained a separate cargo for the slave trade in Guinea and Angola. The

1658:-

hem and *Honingen* each receive 8 lasts rice and 1 ditto beans to \rightarrow them for 6 months on their voyage home. They are ordered leave at once for St. Helena to meet the first return ships \rightarrow Cuneus.

February 19th.—Same weather. Following Resolution adopted. *Resolution*. Officers of the ships ordered at once to take their \rightarrow 's share out of the *Schelvis*, and to be ready for departure as as possible. Strong wind at night.

February 20th.—Ships preparing for departure, papers for trans- \rightarrow ion being prepared. Strong S.E. during the day, impeding preparations.

February 21st.—Same S.E. The vessels obtained their quantity ores from the *Schelvis*. The officers of the *Arnhem* deliver the wing Resolution to the Commander and Council. See *Resolution*.

February 22nd.—Same weather. Papers for Holland sent on \rightarrow d the *Arnhem* and *Honingen*. Grateful for the deliverance of vessels by the arrival of the *Schelvis*. The mutineers of the *ingen* were pardoned by us.

February 23rd.—Southern breeze; the ships leave.

February 24th (Sunday).—Heavy S.E.

February 25th.—Full moon, same wind. The following Resolu- \rightarrow taken. See *Resolution*.

February 26th.—Heavy S.E. in the evening.

February 27th.—Same weather. Fifteen of our men and 2 worthy Hottentoos, under the Sergeant, leave for the interior 6 pack oxen and 3 week's provisions, also 660 lbs. copper, 75lbs. coo, and 3 gross pipes for buying cattle.

February 31st.—Fine sea breeze.

March 1st.—Fine N.W. sea breeze, heavy S.E. on the other side \rightarrow bay as usual. 2nd. Cloudy fickle weather.

March 3rd (Sunday).—Dark, westerly weather. The *Achilles*, carrying the flag of Hon. Cuneus; was separated from the by a storm on this side of Mauritius; had 92 men on board all ; 2 dead.

March 4th.—New moon, N.W. weather, with a little rain. The \rightarrow ant of the *Wapen van Holland* and 6 men arrive overland \rightarrow Saldanha Bay, escorted by the burgher Jurien Jansen, and rted that said vessel was in said bay with many sick on board, had lost its consort in the Spanish sea. Had 296 men on board ; ed. In the afternoon she arrives in Table Bay, and brings our atches.

March 5th.—Clear sky, strong S.E. breeze: The *Orange* and \rightarrow or arrive from India; 4 other ships sighted.

March 6th.—Clear sky; N.W. breeze. The *Parel*, *Malacca*, *Gecroonde Leeuw* arrive. The Hon. Cuneus lands at once, and ves the proper respect due to him. An English vessel, the 'am, also arrives.

March 7th.—Cold misty weather. N.W., sea breeze. Plans ited in Council for repairing the *Malacca*, and resolved to des-

1658. — patch the *Achilles* to St. Helena to the *Arnhem* and *Honingen*, lying there, with orders to wait for Cuneus, and on no account to proceed alone.

March 8th.—Fine weather. The *Penguin* brings fish, birds and eggs from Saldanha Bay and Dassen Island, also a letter from Robben Island, as follows.—“There are now 454 sheep, 3 are dead; the ewes having little milk because of the drought many lambs have perished. The burghers would like to build a shed for themselves here, if they are prevented by contrary winds from proceeding further. We very much want the bucket, also some tar. There are 6 or 7 ewes whose tails are to be cut off. Some cross bred lambs have already been born.” The *Achilles* is despatched to St. Helena.

March 9th.—Misty N.W. weather. The *Thomas* arrives from Plymouth after a painful voyage. Water granted, but refreshments not, as we required everything for ourselves. She had 20 men on board, was of 50 lasts, and had no dead Heavy S.E. in the evening.

March 10th (Sunday).—Same S.E.; 11th, do.; 12th, do. until midnight.

March 13th.—Fine weather; S.E. opposite side of the bay. Cuneus and Riebeeck proceed inland to inspect everything and see how the growing of corn, &c, is progressing.

March 14th.—Fine N.W. weather. Cuneus goes out again and inspects the camp of the Caapmen and their cattle, &c. A Hottentoo told us that as far as the Berg River, 18 hours on foot distant from this, the Sergeant had not found any natives, and therefore resolved to proceed 7 or 8 days further, to bring home if possible a large number of cattle.

March 15th.—Drizzling, fickle weather; S.S.E. during the day.

March 16th.—Same S.E. A boat sent to Robben Island for some sheep, taking with it some rabbits to be placed with the others there.

March 17th (Sunday).—Fine W. weather. The boat detained by the S.E., which had sprung up yesterday afternoon; leaves to-day. S.E. in the evening.

March 18th.—Fine weather; letters sent on board the *Wapen van Holland*; vessels very busy taking in sea stock.

March 19th.—Fine weather; *Wapen of Holland* leaves, followed in the afternoon by the fleet under Cuneus, and the English vessel. The boat brought 20 sheep from the island, to which we added 41, and which number we divided among the vessels.

March 20th.—Misty, calm weather. The *Penguin* arrives from Dassen Island with birds, eggs and fish, also oil. The following Resolution adopted. See Resolution.

March 21st.—Fine, N.W. weather. The men return from their inland expedition, having found the pass over the mountain range of Africa, against which the Berg River is lying, and through a kloof of which it runs from the far inland. On the other side of the mountains they had found such a large flat that they believed

1658.

—

they might travel more than a hundred leagues without reaching another mountain range. The flat seemed to be stony soil unfit for corn, there being hardly any grass for the oxen, and no natives found at a distance of 50 hours. Hence they had returned, especially also because their food was running short, and some were sick. On the way they had met two companies of natives, also the black Captain, all belonging to the Chariguriquas who had attacked us in 1656 in Saldanha Bay, and from whom they obtained some cattle and the information that the real Saldanhars were so far distant, that it would take more than a month to reach them. Two of the expedition had died on the way, whilst another had been seriously wounded by a lion, which had been killed by Sergeant Harwarden. It was a meagre and hungry beast, no other like it was seen again. Sometimes 5 or 6 were seen in company, fat fellows indeed. They also saw an elephant, some rhinoceroses, wolves, leopards, and very beautiful wild horses, elands, and antelopes. They brought the lion's skin with them, to be stuffed and placed in the large hall of the fort. Not much has been gained by this expedition, whilst we lost by it two men, the third having lost his health. This has damped the ardour of some, but the Sergeant and others are prepared to go again, whilst the Hottentoo Doman (now called Anthony), having just returned from Batavia with the Hon. Cuneus, is anxious to accompany them. The journal kept is as follows:—

February 26th, A°, 1658.—This day we started to search for natives and buy cattle. We took our road over the Leopard Mountain towards the East, and passed the night near a small river behind the mountain.

Course. Steps. February 27th. — Fine weather. Went N.N.E. 13,840. N.N.E.; after proceeding about $2\frac{1}{2}$ hours we took a rest, and our dinner.

N.E. by E. 9,890. In the afternoon we proceeded N.E. by E., about 2 hours, and startled 4 lions, which lay down about 100 yards from us in the underwood; as they were in our way they finally jumped up and ran away, crossing a neighbouring river. Followed this course for another hour, and then camped for the night. The roaring of the lions was dreadful.

14,840. February 28th.—Same fine weather. Followed the same course until the evening. After having proceeded about four hours we found a rhinoceros among our cattle; it had two horns, carrying them just as goats do. It did no harm to the cattle. When fired at, it ran away. It being now night, we went to sleep.

1658.	Course.	Steps.	
—			25,000. March 1st.—Kept the same course, and having proceeded 5 hours, leaving the Diamond and Pearl Mountains to our right, and the Saddle Mountain to our left, we arrived at the Great Berg River, whose banks we followed for about an hour, when we camped.
N.E.		4,660.	March 2nd.—Took different directions ; the
N.N.E.		1,450.	weather calm. We proceeded along the
		4,990.	mountain range of Africa and the Berg River, a distance of about $2\frac{1}{2}$ hours' walk.
		21,900.	March 3rd.—Went N.N.E. along the mountain side, about $4\frac{1}{2}$ hours, to where the Berg River again touches it ; here we
		10,000.	rested our cattle, there being much grass, and then proceeded towards the mountains, which we had to cross. Advanced 2 hours, and camped under the mountain.
			March 4th.—Remained here to-day, one of us being very bad with dysentery, and the cattle being very tired and requiring rest.
N.E. by E.	10,000.		March 5th.—Continued our journey, N.E. by E., until the foot of the mountain, where we remained, as the sick man could proceed no further, whilst the sergeant ordered the surveyor, Pieter Potter, 3 men and two natives, victualled for 3 days, to cross the range as soon as possible to see whether any natives were encamped beyond it. They left in the afternoon, taking an Eastern and E. by N. course. When arrived at the mountain they proceeded S.S.E., and, having journeyed four hours' distance from the spot where they had left the sergeant, they camped for the night. They saw 7 wild horses of a dapple-grey colour, fat and beautiful, but very wild, and not easily caught.
E. & E. by N.	4,020.		March 6th.—Kept the same course, and, having passed the mountains, they entered a large valley unfit for agriculture, fully an hour's walk across. Marching through it they found in it a large river, which came forth from the mountain-range mentioned (which was cut in two, and with sides like a huge wall) and fell into the Berg River. No paths were found along the river. This valley was much higher than that of the Berg River. Proceeding further they arrived at another steep mountain, which appeared to be insurmountable ; they therefore ascended a neighbouring hill, from
S.S.E.	1,040.		
	14,300.		

whose summit they saw a plain, apparently more than 4 days' journey broad. They observed, however, no Hottentos or their camps. This discouraged them, the more so as the two Hottentos had ascended another hill, and declared that as they also had seen nothing it was desirable to return home. There were no Saldanhars here, and there was no probability of finding any by going further; they therefore returned to the sergeant.

March 7th.—They returned to-day, and heard from those who had been left behind that they also had seen no natives. Seeing the sergeant making preparations to return, the Hottentos told him that they had seen smoke, and still hoped to fall in with natives. They evidently said so because they feared that they would receive no tobacco or copper when back again, if no natives were found. Seeming dissatisfied, the sergeant proposed to them that they should themselves search for the Saldanhars; they were entrusted with 3 days' provisions and tobacco, also with tobacco as presents to the chiefs whom they might find, and whom they were to persuade to bring to us a large quantity of cattle. Time will show what this experiment will produce. The illness of our comrade prevents us from going further.

March 8th.—The Hottentos return without having seen or found anybody or thing. Resolved to return home to morrow.

March 9th.—Left at 8 a.m. and encamped at night on the same spot where we slept on the 3rd.

March 10th.—At daybreak we again started and marched 4 hours S.W. by S. 1700 paces. At a distance we saw a lot of cattle grazing; the Hottentos said that it was an encampment of the Souqua; we turned thither, and having proceeded about $\frac{1}{2}$ an hour S.W. by S. we found the natives to be Charingurinas, visited before by the fiscus. They told us that the great chief was lying with much cattle on the other side of the mountains, and we decided to send them to inform their chief of our visit. The messenger assured us that he would bring about that much cattle would be brought to us if we would only wait for his return. We promised, and gave him some tobacco. From the small encampment where we were we obtained 3 cows and 2 calves, whilst we did our best to get into their good graces by presents of tobacco, &c.

March 11th.—Fine weather. Left the Hottentoo camp and went on in the same direction as yesterday as far as the spot where we slept on the 1st March. The ox which carried Gerrit Beuckeren is getting so weak that it won't last much longer.

March 12th.—Passed the day here waiting for the Hottentos; in the afternoon 3 Charingurinas arrive, stating that their chief was coming with much cattle to sell to us. The sergeant visited a camp half a league away; found it to be of the Souquas, who had nothing to sell. After sunset we obtained 14 sheep from the Saldanhars. During the night 12 Hottentos told us that the black captain would send us 2 cows and 15 sheep.

1665.

March 13th.—At daybreak they arrived and we bought them. There being no chance of obtaining more we recommenced our journey, when a Hottentoo told us that more sheep were coming. We waited for them on the spot where we slept the 1st March, and determined to rest there 24 hours, as the cattle was very tired and might be killed by going further. About 3 p.m. Gerrit Beukeren died.

March 14th.—We buried him to-day. The Hottentos bring a cow, and we were told that in two or three days the Saldanhars would be here with some more beasts and sheep.

March 15th.—Passed the day here; saw nobody coming.

March 16th.—When ready for the journey some Hottentos brought 13 sheep and a cow, but as dysentery was commencing among the men, and viuals commenced to run short, we determined to move.

March 17th.—Course West; paces 5460. No cattle obtainable at the small encampment visited by Elias de Pijper. Went on as far as the Paarl and Diamond Mountains, where we slept.

March 18th.—Went as far as the spot where we camped on the 27th, and again saw three lions.

March 19th.—Reached the river, where we had slept on the 26th, where a large lion had sprung upon one of the men whilst the sergeant was serving out the provisions, thrown him down and grievously wounded him. The sergeant at first thought that it was one of the calves, but recognising the lion, placed the muzzle of his gun against its forehead and shot it. Death of a cow.

March 20th.—Another man very ill; left two men behind with him to follow at leisure. But when we had marched about an hour we heard a shot. We then sent an ox and 2 men back for the body in order to bring it home; but before the animal could reach the place the man had died and been buried. At night, with very misty weather, we reached the fort, the survivors all in good health. We brought 11 cows and 45 sheep, bought with copper pipes and tobacco.

End of the Journal of the Sergeant Jan Van Harwarden.

March 22nd.—Fine calm weather. The *Penguin* leaves for the island.

March 23rd.—Rainy, N.W. weather.

March 24th (Sunday).—Fine changing weather.

March 25th.—Misty. The *Scheltis* despatched to Mauritius to destroy the Company's fortress there, and take on board the men and goods there and convey them to Batavia or Ceylon. The fiscus goes to Robben Island in the *Schapenjacht* to inspect affairs there, dismiss Woutersen, and appoint Overhagen as overseer, according to Resolution of the 20th.

March 26th.—S. breeze. Both vessels leave. Arrival of the *Wagen van Amsterdam* with 317 men, 2 drowned, and 9 dead from

1658.

—

sease. Many sick on board. On the 10th February it had heard on the *Amersfoort* that it had taken on the Brazilian coast, in 5° S. lat., a Portuguese slaver coming from Augola, and proceeding to the Bay Tote la Santos; there were 500 on board. It hadken out 250, the rest were left in the slaver, which was old and aserviceable; some were getting sick and also dying, because of the length of the voyage. On the 16th February both vessels had parted company.

March 27th.—Arrival of the *Spreewic*, from Zealand on the 1st October, with 154 men on board; 15 were taken out by the English at Plymouth, and 10 died on the voyage; she therefore has now only 129 men on her, and many of them sick. A ship arrives.

March 28th.—N. W. breeze. The *Amersfoort* casts anchor; had 33 men on her, 29 dead and 30 sick. The weakest brought on shore and exchanged for others. Was provided with refreshments for the crew and the slaves who were brought on shore, already reduced to 170 in number. Many of them still very ill; most of them girls and small boys, from whom for the next 4 or 5 years very little can be got. The boat brings 20 sheep from Robben land, and the fiscus reports that he had placed Woutersen on board the *Schelvis* and brought back with him the female slave Eva, but he had carefully examined into everything and found 399 sheep on the island; the rabbits were increasing well, and Overigen was a diligent overseer. The gardens however looked bad, but the men intended to make another trial when the rainy season again sets in. They therefore ask for all kinds of seeds, also a pole and pitch-hoops for fires when ships are in the neighbourhood, and poles for the sheep kraals. The English ship *Thomas* leaves for oromandel.

March 29th.—Rainy, N W. weather.

March 30th.—Heavy S.E. Arrival of the *Ulysses*, from Batavia on 17th January last, with 44 men on board.

March 31st.—N.W. breeze. *Het Hoff van Zeeland* arrives with 150 men; 2 dead; the rest well. Refreshments sent on board at once, with orders to make immediate preparations to continue their voyage to St. Helena, to meet the other vessels already waiting there.

April 1st.—Heavy S. E. The *Ulysses* leaves for St. Helena with letters to Cuneus and a despatch from Holland dated October, 657, containing sailing orders for the fleet; also with our letter for the directors.

April 2nd.—Arrival of the *Princes Royael* and *Enckhuyzen*, all well on board. Had beautiful weather at sea; this is the best season for the return ships to enter Table Bay. Ships leaving Batavia in December, arrive here in February, when the S.E. wind is so strong that it is difficult to reach the anchorage. Those, however, arriving about the middle of March or later are seldom held back by this wind, which is strongest from December to February, when it grows weaker every day. The boat sent to the Island for sheep.

1656.

— April 3rd.—Strong S.E. in the afternoon, quiet at midnight.

— April 4th.—Fine weather. The following Resolution taken. See Resolution. 20 sheep arrive from Robben Island.

April 5th.—Fine weather. Boat sent for more sheep.

April 6th.—Fine weather. Boat brings 16 sheep, and the other, belonging to the freemen brings fish and eggs from Dassen Island. The shepherd, through carelessness, loses 15 sheep; all search for them in vain; the herd punished for his inattention by being charged 10 gl. for every animal, that he may in future look after his work better.

The following two persons, Hendrick Hendricxz of Surward and Grietje Fransz: Meerhoff, receive permission to be married. See Resolution.

April 7th (Sunday).—Fine weather. More sheep sent for from the island because of the loss of the others; 2 young European ewes and 8 rams, also 1 buck-rabbit received per *Wapen van Amsterdam*, sent to the island. Letters sent on board the *Amersfoort* and *Spreew* for Batavia.

April 8th.—Fine weather, S.E. breeze. The *Spreew* leaves.

April 9th.—Rainy, S.E. weather. The *Amersfoort* leaves and also the *Wapen van Amsterdam*. 18 sheep brought from the island with the following letter:—"The only sheep left are lambs and ewes about to lamb, or still suckling; there are no more full grown rams. The rabbit arrived well, the others are all right; a little white one is missing, very likely eaten by ravens, of which the downs are full. They are not afraid of stones; if we had powder we might shoot them. You must send us the small boat to get the sheep into the large one; at present we have to draw the latter on shore for the purpose. Many ewes desert their lambs, and this diminishes the increase; it would therefore be advisable to send some hay for such sheep, which might be kept at home with their lambs and fed on hay. The kraal is broken; we want 100 poles and a hammer for driving them into the ground, some nails and a bore. These things were never looked after before. I am sorry to see the lambs dying. One of the ewes belonging to yourself has broken its leg. I have no more paper and request some." Signed Ryk Overhagen.

April 10th.—The freemen's boat returns to Dassen Island.

April 11th.—Fine weather like yesterday. Commander Quaalbergen and the other officers of the fleet take their leave and our letters for Holland.

April 12th.—Fine S.E. The vessels leave.

April 13th.—S.E. wind. The *Elburgh* arrives, from Texel on the 14th December, with 150 men on board; only 1 sick; had been becalmed 4 weeks between Tristan d' Acunha and this.

April 14th (Sunday).—N.W. breeze. Arrival of the *Moes*, from Zealand on the 12th October, 1657, with 65 men. Had lain at Falmouth 5 days, where 1 man had deserted, six had died, one was dying, and the rest were mostly all sick. They had been becalmed

for weeks on the line, and for 5 weeks off the Cape. Steps taken to send refreshments on board. Marriage of Hendrik Hendricksen and Grietje Francois Meerhoff. See Resolution.

April 15th.—Hazy sky, N.W. breeze.

April 16th.—Clear weather, S E. wind, fine in the afternoon.

April 17th.—Fine weather. Arrangements made for establishing a school for the Company's slaves from Angola brought hither by the *Amersfoort*. The sick comforter, Pieter van der Staal, to be the teacher, especially as he reads Dutch correctly; and that he may encourage the slaves to attend and hear or learn the Christian prayers, it is ordered that everyone shall receive after school a glass of brandy and two inches of tobacco each. All their names are to be written down, those who have no name are to get one, paired or unpaired, young and old. Everything to be done in the presence of the Commander, who shall attend for a few days to put everything in proper order, and bring these people under proper discipline, signs of which are already apparent. All the slaves have been properly clothed, to protect them from the daily increasing cold. The strongest have been already set to work.

April 18th.—Calm weather, cloudy at night. The following Resolution taken:—The officers of the *Mees*, having communicated to us certain confessions of Gillis Huyglo, &c.—all soldiers on board that vessel—that it was their intention on the night of the 7th March to kill certain persons and obtain possession of the ship, a commission was sent on board further to examine the prisoners, &c. They reported on their return that they could obtain no evidence from anybody in the world to enable them to take further proceedings against the men, and legally torture them. Excepting Huyglo they all denied their confessions, declaring that they had made them through fear of torture as the ship's council had already put the thumbscrews on Huyglo (the pain of which the latter still had fresh in his memory, whilst the scar was still visible on his left thumb) in order to make him confess that he had stolen something. Though Huyglo acknowledges the accusation before the commission, without stating whether the others are accomplices, who adhere to their denial, and declare that they are entirely innocent, there is no justification to proceed to torture or to a verdict. Moreover the vessels would be delayed too long to investigate the matter more thoroughly or any further, and as it is the Company's interest to despatch them as soon as possible, it was resolved to leave the accused on board as prisoners, for trial at Batavia, and with the papers send them over in the *Elburgh*.

April 21st.—Easter. Dark, cloudy weather, N.W. breeze.

April 22nd.—Same weather. Our letters sent on board the *Mees* and *Elburgh* for India.

April 23rd.—N.W. wind. The vessels leave nevertheless.

April 24th.—Same N.W. wind. Rain.

April 25th.—S.S.E. The *Penguin* leaves for Dassen Island. The freemen there are to send seals' meat, salted and dried, for the slaves at $2\frac{1}{2}$ gul. per 100 lbs.

April 26th.—Strong S.S.E. wind.

April 27th.—Arrival of a vessel.

April 28th.—Fine weather. Vessel's name the *Leviathan* of Delft, from Greece on the 17th December, with 364 on board; 14 dead, and 6 deserted at St. Vincent Island on the 3rd February. Had only obtained some lean goats, but no monkeys there. The men all fairly well. Vessel under jury masts, with which the officers intend to proceed to India. Crew well refreshed.

The *Penguin*, boat of the freemen, brought 3 half-axams of oil and 129 lbs. seals' meat to make a trial with for the slaves; also some thousands of eggs, which said freemen sold readily to the ships at 4 for a double penny. They are somewhat larger than goose eggs.

The seals' meat very much liked by the slaves; therefore a fixed price was agreed upon with the freemen who supply it.

April 29th.—Rainy weather, strong N.W. wind.

May 1st.—N.W. wind, not strong.

May 2nd, 3rd, and 4th—Good weather: rain: N.W. breeze. Resolution of Council, 4th May, 1658. One of the Chainouqua Captains having arrived here, from whom last autumn we obtained a large number of cattle, and who promises soon to let us have more; and further the directors, having in their letter of the 9th October last year, forbidden the freemen to buy cattle from the Hottentots, we have considered it necessary to draw up some regulations on the subject, lest the freemen spoil the prices. The *volgende placaat* is therefore published:—"The directors having ordered that the freemen shall not be allowed to buy cattle from the natives, but shall obtain their supplies from the Company at the prices fixed, public notice is given accordingly of this prohibition. Offenders to lose all such cattle. The burghers are also ordered to return to the Company, within twice 24 hours, all the copper bought from the same. All copper found after that time to be confiscated. And that this order may be properly carried out, the burghers shall report all the young cattle born in their herds and the number killed by them. Offenders to be punished as above; likewise all cattle found in their possession in excess of the number returned will be declared confiscated. The burghers shall only sell cattle to one another with the permission of the Governor and the Council of the Fort, such permission to be registered by the Secretary. All other rules remain in force as if inserted in this." Dated 4th May, 1658.

May 5th.—Fine weather. The boat sent to Robben Island with the following letter:—To Rijk Overhagen—"We send you 1 book of paper, some pens, and some nails; also the tools for the ordnance. The powder is to be carefully stored lest an accident happen. It is to be turned every week and dried. The bedding for the gun is not to be allowed to sink away into the sand. Material for the cattle pen is also sent—Coir rope, instead of nails, for fixing the poles. We also send you 6 casks of hay for the sheep that ~~are~~; you must let us know whether they like the hay; also how

many sheep and lambs there are. Take good care, for much depends upon the animals for the Company. Your good care will tell in your favour. The annexed instructions will tell you how to make a fire at night for the guidance of the arriving ships. The 180 pitch rings you are to take good care of and use economically. The boat will be finished this week and sent over at once. The carpenter who goes over to make the gun carriage is to come back as soon as possible." 3rd May, 1658. Signed by J. v. Riebeeck and R. de Man.

Instructions for Rijk Overhagen, superintendent on Robben Island:—"As it has been found necessary to light a fire on the highest point of the Island, the Vuurberg, for the guidance of ships approaching Table Bay during the night, but as the fiscus, Abr. Gabbema, has reported that there is not wood enough on the Island for the purpose, we have resolved to send you a capstan on which to burn pitch rings, which are also sent, and are to be economically used, as pitch costs the Company a lot of money. You are to take good care if at nightfall any vessels of the Company are in sight to keep the pitch burning until you know that the ships have cast anchor in the roadstead. You shall also keep your fires burning if the ships are blown back by contrary winds, but if the ships are foreign or not Dutch (onduitsch) you shall at once extinguish your fire.

The young lambs are to be castrated at the proper time, and the tails of the young ewes, as soon as they are fit for breeding, are to be cut off, salted, and sent hither in order to save butter.

The ewes who no longer lamb, and the oldest and largest sheep, are the first to be sent to the ships, but only on receipt of a letter from us.

Should a vessel of the Company anchor under the Island you can supply it with as much greens as grow at the time in a wild state, and allow one penguin daily for two men, also as many eggs as you can get, should they like it.

Under no circumstances shall you supply more than one sheep to every vessel, and only if there are sick men among the officers. Every effort is to be made to compel the ships to come hither, and prevent them from delaying at the Island.

No sheep are to be milked, as the lambs are objects of great solicitude to the Company.

No men are to be allowed to land or go further inland than the house; no English, French or other foreigners allowed to be landed. To carry out this order the Hon. R. v. Goens placed a cannon in the Sandbay, where the boats must land. Also take good care that your firearms are always in good order and ready to hand; you are only to fire in case of necessity, so as not to make the birds afraid, on which alone our men on the Island could almost subsist. Good care is to be taken of the powder, &c., that no accident may happen.

Take good care of the coney and rabbits, and let us know about them.

1658. — You must do your best to destroy the many snakes on the island, that it may once for all be cleared of these poisonous reptiles.

For your encouragement you are allowed the exclusive right to fish on the Island, the Company undertaking to buy what you catch at £5 per 100 lbs. The salt you can make yourself on the rocks. Let us know what you require more, and be careful in your management, keeping good discipline, and daily performing your religious services, and saying your Christian prayers." 3rd May, 1658.

(Signed) J. v. RIEBEECK.

May 6th.—N.E. breeze. The Chainouqua captain sends word that he is staying with the stout captain named Gogosoa, and waiting for the return of his men sent by him to fetch a large number of cattle. His place is about 30 days' journey from this. He had wished to be sure, before bringing any cattle, that the same Dutch captain was still here, and had now sent men to report this fact to the paramount chief. He would not allow any of our people to accompany his men, and advised us to wait until the natives' fear of the whites had worn off more. Arrival of the *Hasselt* from the Gulf of Guinea, on the 22nd February from Popo, with 271 slaves; 43 dead; brought therefore 228. Had left Cabo de Lopo Gonsalvo on the 15th March and Annabon on the 21st do., taking 1½ months for the passage. At Cabo de Lopo Gonsalvo it had captured 2 small Portuguese vessels. They had shipped both vessels' cargo int. the largest, manned it with 6 men, and despatched it to the Cape on the 15th November last. As it had not yet arrived, some misadventure must have befallen it, or the mate may have taken it to a wrong haven. The latter was described by the West India Company's ship the *Arenal* as a thorough drunkard, and his men likewise, on account of which no doubt everything has been lost. The cargo was worth about £20,000, and consisted of 185 casks of palm oil, thousands of boxes of soap, 65 casks of brandy, 2 do. sugar, 10 pipes Canary wine. No exact invoice had however been made of the soap, and the *Hasselt* had proceeded to the Gulf of Guinea to conduct the slave trade. It also reported that a Danish ship had arrived in the Gulf mentioned, and attacked and captured the Swedish fort and trading station, and also captured and pillaged the return ship, in turn fortifying itself on that spot, viz., Cabo Cors. As our letters for the directors had been entrusted to the Swedish vessel by the *Hasselt*, they have no doubt fallen into the hands of the Danes, and it will be a great trouble to recover them, if ever recovered.

May 7th.—N.W. wind. The Guinea slaves landed from the *Hasselt*; a fine, strong, and healthy lot.

May 8th.—Same weather. Resolution of the Council 8th May, 1658. Officers of the *Hasselt* also seated at the Board. Said vessel brought 228 slaves from Popo. Considered the orders of

Directors, especially of the 9th October last year, regarding the vent of the *Hasselt*, viz., that if it has brought a cargo of and still has a large quantity of merchandise on board

enough for another cargo, so that this Council is to decide whether she is to go again or not. Found that the vessel had still a large cargo on board valued at f5,975; that in the stores there are different kinds of merchandise sent from Batavia for the slave trade, valued at f20,792 15. The total of these amounts, f26,767 15, would be sufficient for the payment of 1,000 or 1,200 slaves, who might be brought in four voyages. But the officers of the *Hasselt* stated that the goods were not properly assorted; a most necessary condition if we wish to have good healthy slaves, and not the lame, halt, blind and old, whom the owners are only too glad to dispose of. A good quantity of "bougys" and beads are required, which are not at hand now; the chances are therefore, that the venture will be unsuccessful; hence it was decided to stay the trade for a while, as we have not only been well provided, and abundantly so, with slaves for the Company, the freemen and other private parties, but also enabled to send 40 Angola slaves to Batavia in the *Wapen van Amsterdam*, &c., and will still be able to send 200 more to India. The *Hasselt* is therefore, to proceed to Batavia as soon as possible, taking 140 or 150 slaves with it, also 30 Angola prize slaves brought by the *Dordrecht*, and now already sufficiently refreshed. The cargo of the *Hasselt* to be landed, and the officers of the *Maria*, daily expected, to report what goods are readily willed on the West Coast, when the Council will also decide whether the *Maria* shall be stained for the slave trade, &c.—Signed by J. Van Riebeeck, Jac. Hen. Moocker, Adriaen Van de Venne, Roeloff de Man, Jan V. Herwerden, Abr. Gabbema, Sec: The cattle boat returned from Robben Island, bringing the following note, "Acknowledging the receipt of the stationery, nails, ammunition, &c., and also 160 (and not 180) pitch rings; further, salad, beet, and other seeds. Carrots, beet and parsnips will not grow here; therefore, send more turnip, salad and cabbage. The ground here is too sandy, and perhaps for that reason good for sweet potatoes, if not too brackish; 30 lambs born since Mr. Gabbema's departure; lambs have died of such ewes whose former lambs have perished, and which consequently have no milk for the present ones. Through this carelessness which has caused the deadening of the milk channels, there are, I fear, more ewes still running in the flock. No lambs have as yet been born from the Dutch ram—he stands too high on his legs; you should send two or three other rams, the sheep would multiply faster then. I have not seen any young rabbits, but the white buck is dead, also a doe; the black and grey ones are still alive; the last buck sent is worth nothing, he allows himself to be bitten by the others, who chase him about; the black buck is good, but he seems to have forgotten the does. The two "clappermans" sent broke on the very first day. The carpenter must remain here for a while to make a shed for the sheep adjoining the kraal in which the hay is to be placed for the sheep with lambs."—(Signed) Ryk Overhagen.

1658.

— May 9th.—Fine, N.W. weather. The freemen and others bought Guinea slaves on credit at 100 gl. each; also before this some Angola slaves at 50, 52½, and 75 gl.—according to age or size—for agriculture, wood sawing, fishing, &c.

May 10th.—Cold, wintry weather, N.W. At night W.S.W. and heavy rain; also the 11th; fine at night.

May 12th.—Changeable weather; sunshine. Burgher H. Boom sent word that through the carelessness of his herd he had yesterday lost 1 bull and 6 cows. It was supposed that they had been stolen by the Caapmen, who all fled, with houses and everything. Their Captain Gogosoa however, who is an old, stout, fat man, and not fast with his legs, was seized and held by the burgher Jan Reyniersz. The Commander at once sent thither some men under the fiscus, with the Batavia Hottentot Anthony, to tell him not to be anxious, but to do his best to see that the stolen cattle were restored; when he would receive some bread, tobacco, and brandy. He replied that the Soaquas had stolen the animals, who were quick in seizing an advantage when little care was taken of the herd. These Soaquas had already driven the cattle behind the Leopard Mountains. He would, however, do his best to recover them through his people, and voluntarily remain on the place of Jan Reynierez. Ordered that he should be off and on treated there. This disturbance also unsettled the mind of the Chainouqua captain, who lodged in the Commander's house, awaiting the arrival of the cattle which he intended to sell to us. The matter was however carefully explained to him, and his fears were entirely removed. He said that he would show that he was a man of his word, and would not leave before he had brought as much cattle as we were able to buy with our copper. The *Dordrecht* despatched to Batavia with our letters.

May 13th.—Fine, N.E. weather. The *Dordrecht* leaves. Six of Boom's cattle brought back; shortly afterwards we heard that the Hottentos had stolen 4 of the beasts belonging to the Visagie Company, and had thrashed the herd severely; also that some of the cattle of the Steven's Colony had been stolen. Boom was ordered not to release the Captain of the Caapmen before all the animals had been restored. He was, however, to be well treated in the meanwhile, and not to be threatened in the least. To prevent this, the fiscal and the interpreter Antonie were sent thither to urge him to cause restitution to be made as soon as possible, and prevent such thefts by his people, in order to prevent the unpleasant consequences which must necessarily result.

The fiscus returning, reported that H. Boom had received back all his cattle, and the Captain, who came with him, stated that not one of the other cattle had been found among his herds. He believed that they were stolen by the Chorachouquas or tobacco thieves, encamped about 3 hours away. At present he was in con-

tention with them, and did not dare to send any of his own people thither to ask for the cattle. He would otherwise gladly do so.

May 14th.—Fair S.E. weather. The *Penguin* leaves for Dassen Island, having promised to bring back a large supply of dry and salted seals' flesh. Riebeeck visits the freemen and the Company's lands, and also desires to know whether the Visagie Colony had received their cattle. He found that they were still lost, the rest were busy ploughing, sowing, &c.; also the men on the Company's lands; whilst 20 slaves were actively employed pulling up reeds and trees for more land. On the lands the Commander is told by Visagies' people that they had caught 3 of the Gourochouquas, who had confessed that they had stolen the cattle. Two of them, however, escaped. The third had been securely guarded. Death of Claas Evertz van der Goude, sailmaker, left here ill by the *Maria*.

May 15th.—Escape of the third Hottentoo; after a cow and a sheep had already been offered for his ransom. They will now, we fear, keep clear of the net and we shall never recover the cattle.

In the meanwhile we have our hands full to prevent Chaihantima, mentioned before, from getting afraid, and to persuade him to remain until the cattle have arrived. He was away two days in the camp of the Caapmen, but returned this evening, and was treated in the Commander's house even more liberally than before. He was also given a good bed, and made jolly and glad with a little brandy.

May 16th.—Fine S.S.E. weather. Bought 4 cows from the Chainouquas. Chaihantima now requested a present of some plate copper, as he wished to return home as soon as possible to get cattle and bring hither a large number. He was told that if he did that, he might depend upon a good present of copper, but that beforehand we liked to see the reality of his big figures, ere we parted with our valuable copper. He was however well treated with eating, drinking, and tobacco. With this seaman's overcoat he allowed himself to be cradled to sleep.

May 17th.—Rainy, N.W. weather. Chaihantima returns home, his knapsacks and stomach well filled with bread and brandy and his hands with tobacco. He pretended that the people of the Chainouqua, or his Chief, were afraid to come hither without him. They wished first to hear full particulars from him and receive good testimony about the Dutch before making a movement hither. In 4 or 5 weeks, according to him, this would happen, and they would come with a large number of cattle, which are heartily wished for, especially the oxen, which are much wanted for agriculture. Already cows must be used for the purpose, but they are weak, and if used, breed badly.

May 18th.—The same dirty, rainy weather. The Chaihantima returns during the forenoon, showing various wounds received from the slaves of the farmers. The fiscus, the interpreter, and himself sent out that he might point out who had done it, and that the reason why it had been done might be discovered. The fiscus

1658. — returning, reported that it had been done on the boshe-uvel because he had come with some men among the plough-cattle there, and the slaves had consequently feared that it was his intention to steal them. One of the Guinea slaves had made signs to him to go away, but as he would not leave the cattle which was in the slave's charge, the latter had called one of his comrades, who had let loose the dog, which had run him in, and prevented him from escaping. The slaves would have killed him if the Dutch had not come to his aid and that of his fellow-Hottentots. We had quite enough to do to succeed in pacifying him, and ordered all the freemen to refrain from keeping any of them under restraint, as even the captain of the Chorachouquas had been at the fort and sold us 9 oxen with the promise that he would in future take care to keep his cattle away from that of the freemen. We recommended him to do so that we might live henceforth as good neighbours. Filled and treated with bread, tobacco and brandy, he left, promising to bring cattle daily. The Chaihantima passed the night in the Commander's house, in order to leave to-morrow with new presents and necessaries for the journey.

May 19th.—Same weather. The Chaihantima leaves in good spirits; said that he will return in a few weeks with much cattle.

May 20th.—N.W. weather. Council resolves as follows:—20th May, 1658. The Masters having often ordered us to get in train the "harder" and other fisheries for feeding the garrison and the return ships especially, and the freemen having, some time ago already, somewhat contrary to instructions left by the Hon. van Goens, been permitted to fish freely and sell what they have to spare to the Company at reasonable prices—Mr. van Goens having allowed them only to catch as much as they required for themselves—and further, observing daily that the freemen pay great attention to the fisheries as well as to agriculture, but in such a way that they sell what they catch at the highest possible price to the ships, without offering one single fish to the Company, so that even cultivation is neglected by some and this residency is deprived of its own fish and provisions; the Council considers that the main object of the Directors being to promote agriculture, breed cattle, and catch harders, &c., therefore allows the freemen to fish freely with nets, dragnets, &c., in the sea and rivers, but forbids them to sell any kind of fish whatever to the ships or anybody else, excepting to the Company. Their surplus fish is to be brought to the fort and sold to the Company if alive at 50 st. per 100 lbs., and if dry at 5 gl. the 100 lbs. The fish of offenders to be forfeited, and a fine of 10 gl. to be paid for every offence: as it is understood that this prohibition is for the well-being of this place, and the best interests of those whose return ships require fresh fish.

the *Haar* :—

Amsterdam, arrived as gunner at 24 gl., made

Gys. Jansz : of Amsterdam, arrived here as gunner's mate, to be gunner.

1658.

H. Marcusz : of Bremen, boatswain, to be ship's corporal. (Signed) J. v. Riebeeck and R. de Man, J. v. Herwerden, Abr. Gabbema, sec:.

May 21st.—Fine weather; 102 Guinea and Angola slaves shipped in the *Hasselt* for Batavia.

May 22nd.—S.E. breeze. *Hasselt* leaves.

May 23rd.—The cattle boat sent to Robben Island with the following letter to R. Overhagen :—" We send you 4 casks pressed hay, and 3 months' provisions. We will send you the seeds asked for, if we know that you have sown what you received, as we are convinced that carrots, especially in the rainy season, grow well on the Island. Sweet potatoes will also grow well, as the ground is very good for them, but if too brackish you should plant them on high places. During the rainy season they will receive moisture enough, and in the dry months they like to stand dry and can be gradually used up. When the gunner has arrived, you are after dark to fire the gun, that we may know whether the report can be heard here. You shall also ignite the fire beacon to know whether it can be seen far enough at sea. The carpenter must now come back. Let us know the number of sheep on the Island. The Company at present possesses no rams, but some will soon be sent if obtainable."

23rd May, 1658. (Signed) J. Van Riebeeck and R. de Man.

May 24th.—Fine weather. Saw the beacon light on Robben Island, but it will cost many pitch-rings. The gun could just be heard.

Death of Joh. Beuker of Leeuwarden, soldier on the *Dordrecht*; 22 or 23 still sick in Hospital.

May 25th.—Dark, N.W. weather. The sergeant reports that more than 9 morgen of ground had been sown with seed won here from that imported from Holland in 1654. From this it is evident that in the beginning but little is reaped from imported seed, but that seed won here is very successful. This season the peas and beans must show whether it is true in their case also. Besides, fresh raw land is never so good as that already cultivated.

May 26th.—The boat returns with 8 sheep and R. Overhagen, who reports that there were 390 still on the Island. They had however been so badly looked after by his predecessor, J. Woutersz; that the majority are old ewes unfit for breeding, having never been sent away to be slaughtered by the ships as ordered by the Commander. There might have been at present 100 more. He had come over to receive plain instructions from Riebeeck and also some Dutch rams, in order gradually to get into the European breed, which has often been found to bear more than one lamb and has more milk. He also wanted tar to smear the sheep and clean them of scab.

May 27th.—Fine weather. During the night some Hottentooos endeavoured to scale the wall of the cattle pen behind the fort.

1658. — One was seen by the guard already on the top, and was wounded by him with his sword in the thigh ; he escaped, however. From everything it is plain that if they see a chance of injuring us, they will not let it go.

May 28th.—Southerly wind. The boat returns to Robben Island with Overhagen and 3 Dutch rams, &c. A Guinea slave also sent over, as one more hand was needed to clean the sheep from lice, which greatly annoyed them and caused scab ; for this purpose tar was also given him.

Resolution of the Council, 28th May, 1658 :—Ryk Overhagen, who arrived here as soldier in 1653, having served faithfully and well in the fortress, on land journeys, on guard, &c., and finally as superintendent on Robben Island, where he has shown great diligence and attention to duty, is confirmed in the latter appointment with a salary of £14 per month.—Signed by Riebeeck, de Mar, Harwarden, and Gabbema.

W. wind in the evening ; vessel in sight. The *Penguin* arrives from Dassen Island, bringing 800 lbs. of seals' meat for the slaves and some eggs to sell to the ships.

May 29th.—Arrival of the *Maria*, from St. Helena on the 1st inst. On the same day the Hon. Cuneus had also left for Holland with the return fleet. The *S'ot van Honingen* had passed the Island without calling.

The Hon. Quaelbergen, with the *Princess Royal* and her two consorts, had not yet arrived at St. Helena ; they had left the Cape on the 12th April.

The skipper of the *Maria* reported that the *Robbejacht* had parted company on the 13th February under the tropic, and not been seen again. Very likely she perished on a certain reef 12 leagues broad and extending 8 leagues into the sea. The *Maria* nearly struck on it. This loss is a great inconvenience, as we required the vessel for conveying seals' meat and birds from the Island for feeding the slaves.

After that loss the skipper had reached Cape Negro. The people however, who all had short dresses on, fled inland ; two big towns were found quite deserted. The houses were similar to the Hottentoo huts here. After that the vessel cruized for some time off Loango St. Paulo ; finding nothing there, she came on to St. Helena, to be here in good time. She had seen 3 ships at Loango, but no chance to attack them. It seems that very little will be gained there for the Company.

Arrival of the cattle boat from Robben Island. Her anchor rope having broken she was washed away, and had to return to this with small boat of the island, which had brought the sheep on board, so back because of the heavy wind.

(Assumption Day).—Resolution of the Council of 30th The *Maria* having returned from Angola, via St. having found anything which would make it worth her back : and it being inadvisable, according to

our Resolution of the 8th, to send a vessel in that direction for slaves; further, the Directors having in their letter of 9th October last, ordered that the *Maria* should, on her return, be despatched to Batavia, not deeming it at the present time advisable to employ her for the Madagascar trade, thinking that we would get on well enough with the *Robbjacht*, now lost; though the Hon. Cuneus left instructions that if the West Coast slave trade failed, one of the two ships was to be sent to Madagascar for slaves and rice, and to bring back the survivors of the *Tulp*, and the men of the *Arnhem*, who would otherwise with difficulty find their way back, so that no rice will at present be required from Batavia, on condition, however, that we were to do nothing contrary to orders from Holland:—

Moreover, it being considered that we are now sufficiently provided with slaves brought by the *Hasselt*, that we only require 50 or 60 lasts of rice for feeding all, viz.: garrison, 80; sick, 15; Dutch women and children, 20; healthy and sick Company's slaves, 98; freemen, 57; slaves of private parties, 89; convicts, 7; total 360; and that that quantity could at present be more easily obtained from Batavia in a vessel arriving here in January, and sent back *via* the Southland (Australia), or otherwise, as the India Board may determine—It is resolved, after careful deliberation, to suspend the Madagascar and Angola slave trade entirely; and as by the loss of the *Robbjacht* we are deprived of a vessel to communicate with Saldanha Bay and the islands, whilst the *Penguin* of the freemen does not convey a tenth part of what is wanted here to feed the slaves, who are fond of seals' flesh and eggs, to let the *Maria* make a trip to the Saldanha Bay to salt there as much seals'-meat and birds and fish as possible. In the meanwhile, the carpenters shall build a deck on the boat taken from the *Wapen van Holland*, to be used for sailing to the islands. When the *Maria* returns we shall be able to say whether we can spare her, and send her to Batavia, or even to Holland, with the goods sent us from Batavia for Guinea and Angola, and which the return ships should have taken as ordered.

None of those who ran away with the return ships having been brought back by the *Maria*, whilst even 4 men of that yacht also deserted, it was resolved to close the accounts of all, and confiscate to the Company whatever they might have to the good. Their names are: Jurgens Carstens, Jacob Jansz, Sicke Jacobsz, Myndert Witcoop, Jan Janse Ronde, H. Luers, Joris Taute, Jan Jacobsz van Reynsburgh, Jan van Possel, Thomas Robbertsz, of Kint Robertson, of Kent?), Claes Frederiksz, H. Fransz, Isaac Langat, Claes Schriever, Pieter Iobrantsz, Guilliam Weerrys, Ians Visser, Jan Willemsz, Barend Theunisz, Jan Thomasz, and Jan Pietersz. The first 8 are Company's servants, the 6 following women or men servants, the next 3 exiles from Batavia, and the last 4 deserters from the *Maria*—21 in all. *This takes place every year, and can with difficulty be prevented.* But to prevent it as

1658. — much as possible, the fiscus and sergeant are ordered, before the ships' departures, to send the provost, the corporal of the fort, and some soldiers to keep continual watch on the jetty and at the Salt River, where the boats often sail in and out.—Signed by Riebeeck, Claes Fransz: Bordingh, de Man, Harwarden, and Gabbema (secretary).

May 31st.—Rainy, N.W. weather. Arrival of the *Geelmuyden* from Amsterdam. Had touched at Teneriffe for repairs; 79 men on board; 1 dead; all well. Skipper's name Jacob Symonaz Munnick, that of the bookkeeper Abraham Martensz.

June 1st.—N.W. weather.

June 2nd.—Fine weather.

June 3rd.—The same. Seven Angola slaves deserted: 1 from the forest, 2 from the fort, and 4 from the lands. The oldest, who escaped from the forest, urged on the others. He had pretended the day before yesterday that he was ill, and came to the fort; on his way he had passed the corn lands. In the afternoon the 3 had left again, and the next morning they were joined by those on the lands. Some men sent out, and the Hottentooos promised big rewards if they caught the fugitives. They were given tobacco and bread to help them on the journey. The *Maria* despatched to Saldanha Bay.

June 4th & 5th.—Fine, warm, S.S.E. weather. The *Maria* and *Peguyen* leave; no news yet about the fugitives, and new searchers continually sent out in order to catch even a few, to make an example of them. The other slaves say that they are old and clever customers, men from the highlands of the interior (Bovenlanders) and cannibals.

June 6th.—Same fine weather. The land surveyor and four soldiers returned. They had been sent out to put down exactly on a chart all the rocks on the outside coast of the Cape for the benefit of the calling vessels. They had also to look about them for the runaways. Had seen none however.

June 7th.—Riebeeck visits in this fine weather the lands of the freemen and the Company, and having given such orders as were necessary, returns home in the evening; no news about the slaves.

June 8th.—Same fine weather. Different Hottentooos reported that the fugitives were not to be found; but we fear that they have found and killed them, just like the Malagasy slave Antonie, for they are very jealous of them, and cannot bear them, being always at loggerheads with them.

June 9th (Pentecost).—Boisterous wet weather, stiff N.W. wind, which washed the *Geelmuyden's* boat away and threw it on the beach before the redoubt Duinhoop. Drawn higher up by order of the Commander.

June 10th.—A little better weather; a boat came on shore from the *Geelmuyden* to look for the wrecked one; took in some refreshments, but was unable to reach the ship.

June 11th.—Same wind; not so strong; boat able to reach the ship.

1858.

—

June 12th & 13th.—Fair weather, mostly rain.

June 14th.—Ditto, S.S.E. wind. The *Geelmuyden* receives its despatch and papers for India. She left this evening.

June 15th.—Full moon, S.E. breeze and fine sunshine. The sergeant reported that 9 morgen and 240 roods of land had been sown for the Company as follows, viz. :—

Six morgen and 460 roods, Cape wheat ; 576 roods Cape rye, and 220 roods Dutch barley, all nicely growing ; 784 roods of Dutch wheat do not show well. This has happened more times, and therefore we have decided to sow no more, but to grind the rest and also the rye, which also will not grow. However, we shall be able with our little Cape seed to get on so far that next year we shall have sufficient for all the agriculturists.

A large ship anchors this evening at Robben Island because of the S.E. ; supposed to be the *Prince Wilhelm* of Zealand.

Some of the Caapmen were at the fort to-day, stating that their women had seen some of the fugitive Angola slaves between this and Saldanha Bay on the beach, but the men could not find them.

June 16th (Sunday).—Fine, S.W. weather. The vessel arrives in the bay, but on account of the calm, could not reach the proper anchorage. The senior merchant, Robert Bastinoq, lands, and reports that she had left on the 20th January last with 472 men, among them skipper Jacob Enten ; 16 had died, and between 60 and 70 were sick. Had touched at Torbay and afterwards at the island of St. Vincent (where one man had deserted), and where *they had obtained good refreshment of goats*, 40 or 50 every day. They had also obtained from those of St. Anthony four asses, who however, instead of delivering, had held them back. Whilst at Robben Island the vessel had been supplied with penguins, birds, and one wether, and brought the following letter from the Island :—“ I received your letter by the freemen’s boat *Penguin*, containing notice that my salary had been increased. I thank you, and hope to conduct myself in such a way that you may be pleased with me. We have fished for the grapsel but without success ; at the next low spring tide we will try again. Those who reported to you that we lighted fires here twice have seen badly ; it is a star showing itself in the North West. We did send you now and then a young ewe, but only such as are unserviceable here. All the ewes which get lambs but have no udder or milk in it to nourish their lambs, we send ; the lambs of such ewes are abandoned and exposed to the severe weather, wind, hail, thunder and lightning and continuous rains. One ewe taking shelter in our house was placed near the fire ; after a short time it lambed, but in the morning it was found dead with both lambs. In the evening we immediately brought all the sheep which were on the northern part of the island near the little tree, in our house and the shed ; the rest were placed in the ‘kraal,’ as they would be safer there on a heap than when scattered over the fields. In the morning I found eight old ewes and four lambs killed by the rain ; the day after four ewes and two lambs were dead ; total 23 dead, old and young.

165: .
— The white doe produced three young rabbits; they are as quick as the wind. The mother is again with young, also the big gray one, which I at first believed to be a buck. The newly arrived young ones roam about the island, the one is near the kelder, so that I fear that if they are advanced a little further, the rabbits will destroy whatever may grow in the garden, and if they commence to like sweet potatoes, nothing will keep them out of it. On the 16th June the *Prins Willem* arrived; we supplied it with a large number of penguins and a wether. We wish to have some turnip and curly kale seed."

(Signed) RYK OVERHAGEN.

June 17th.—Fine sunshine. The *Prince William* arrives and is provided with vegetables, a cow, sheep and a wild goat, for the men and the saloon.

June 18th.—Dirty, stormy weather from the N. W. The freeman Caspar Brinkman came with tears in his eyes to complain that his four Guinea slaves had run away last night, also a female belonging to the Harman's Colony, with 50 or 60 lbs of rice, some clothing, &c. Not one had been treated badly or beaten. As we cannot very well follow them up because of their swiftness of foot, and hitherto have not recaptured the 7 Angola fugitives, though the Hottentooos had been encouraged with fair promises, but are too lazy to do anything, leaving us also to suspect that they harbour them, or have exchanged them in the interior for cattle or other things, some Hottentooos were sent to Herry (who for a long while has not been at the fort), and who came in the afternoon and was encouraged to go and look for the runaway slaves, to capture as many as he can, on condition that he would be allowed, with the Caapmen, all their houses and cattle, to dwell as good friends in the neighbourhood at all times, to be the better protected against other natives living in the interior. Upon this he was well treated with brandy, tobacco and food; not only his stomach, but also his pockets (or bags) were filled with bread and rice. He promised on leaving to do his best.

Some soldiers were also sent out, but they returned this evening unsuccessfully.

June 19th.—Heavy S.S.E. wind and rain. The fiscus and the sergeant, as has often been done before, were sent round to the free men to warn them to treat their slaves properly, and not make them surly by continual beating, thumping and scolding, that no more might run away.

June 20th.—Fine weather. Men sent on shore from the *Prins Willem* to cut and prepare fuel. They were brought to where the Company's lands are being prepared, and many short trees unfit for timber are standing. These are to be taken out to make way for the plough. The men will therefore do double good. They will also help to drag to the road some beams out of the forest, which may afterwards be brought to the fort by wagon and used for lengthening the jetty.

The Commander takes Bastinoq out to see the agriculture, and also give the necessary orders that all may be furthered in their efforts.

June 21st.—Fine N. W. breeze. The freeman Jan Reyniersz complained that during the night all his slaves had run away, taking with them 3 or 4 blankets, clothes, rice, tobacco, &c.

Upon this the new interpreter Doman, now called Anthony, who had returned from Batavia with the Hon. Cuneus, being asked why the Hottentos would not search for the runaways, coolly replied that he did not know. Riebeeck (not trusting him) called the interpreter Eva alone into his office, who was asked whether the blacks were not harboured by the Hottentos. Being told that the Commander thought so, she replied, "I shall tell you straight out; Doman is no good. What we spoke yesterday in master's room he communicated to the Hottentos. I told him that he was doing wrong, but he replied, 'I am a Hottentoo and not a Dutchman, but you, Eva, are a lickspittle of the Commander,' " &c. She added: "I believe with master, that the stout captain of the Caapmen harbours the slaves and intends to present them as gifts to the Cochoquas in order to remain on good terms with the latter, who would in their turn convey the slaves to the Hancumquas, living far hence and cultivating the soil in which they grow 'daccha,' a dry herb which the Hottentos eat and which makes them drunk, and is highly esteemed among them." She further begged that it might be kept a secret that she had said so; if we did that, she would always speak openly. We ought, she advised, to seize the three sons of the stout Captain (Schacher, Peter Otegno, and Jan), when the blacks would soon enough be restored. This she repeated to-day in the presence of the merchant Bastinoq. Upon this Riebeeck visited the camp of Herry and the Caapmen, with Bastinoq and the fiscal, but on reaching the Sweet (? Salt) River found that they had retreated to the Leopard Mountain with all their possessions. Herry however had come nearer to us with his camp and we found Schacher and his brothers with him, but nothing was done to them, as it was deemed advisable to capture them when at the fort. They and Herry (the chief among them) were therefore kindly asked to go and look for the blacks, and told that they would be provided with bags of tobacco and bread if they only came to the fort to fetch them. We further promised to pay for every black man, as they called them, double the quantity of copper paid for an ox, besides a liberal supply of brandy, tobacco and rice if they brought the fugitives back. After that a little tobacco was distributed among the chief men, and a few pieces thrown among the people to scramble for them. This latter is the sign of confidence when the Commander visits them with a stranger; they are otherwise timid when they see anybody who seems to be of higher rank than a skipper or superior officer. At night news was brought that Harman Remajenne, about two hours' away from his house when going in the direction of the Leopard Mountain to cut reeds, had

1658. — heard on the way that the 4 slaves of Reyniersz had gone straight to the Caapmen, and that following the spoor, he had caught one; the rest were too swift-footed and escaped in a N. N. E. direction.

June 22nd.—At 3 a.m the fiscal and sergeant were sent out to examine the recaptured slave and find out from him the reasons of their desertion. They were also to inspect the cattle of the freemen, as it is said that they kill their sheep and cattle and sell the carcases to the ships. This stops the increase, and is very injurious to the Company, as they are all still drawing salt meat and pork from the stores, besides other provisions, making a large debt without the prospect of paying it off at present, if they don't pay attention to their stock and agriculture. It has also been observed that many pay more attention to their barterings with the ships and the profits derived in that way, than to the necessary agriculture and the breeding of stock. They were also to see how much land the freemen had prepared for barley, whose season is approaching, and which ought not to be neglected. They were also instructed on their return to see whether they could not succeed in getting the 3 sons of the Hottentoo Captain into the fort, in order after that to consider whether they should be captured or otherwise.

Resolution: Saturday, 22nd June, 1658. About noon the sons of the Caapmen's Captain, with some others and Herry, arrived at the fort in the front hall. The chief freemen were there also, who with us maintained that the present opportunity should not be lost sight of, believing with us that the fugitive slaves were harboured by the Caapmen, towards whom Harman Remajenne had seen them taking their course. Further, the cattle stolen from Hendrik Boom were at once returned when the stout Captain Gogosoa had been taken prisoner. Therefore the Council decided to keep prisoners Schacher and Peter Otegno, with another of the chief Caapmen named Osaoa. This was at once done, and they were told that the women had often been seen bringing roasted tortoises and other food to the slaves, and beckoning to them, pointing to the Leopard Mountain. Further, that they themselves had been unwilling to go out in search of the fugitives, &c.—all which created the impression that they themselves were harbouring the slaves in order to convey them to the Cochoquas and so further to the Hancumquas or daccha-makers, and urged us to keep them as hostages until the slaves were restored. They were therefore for the time to stay in the kitchen of the surgeon, where they would be well treated.

The freemen hand in the names of the four persons nominated by them, viz.: Hendrik Boom and Jan Reyniersz, from Amsterdam, and Harman Remajenne, from Cologne, and Jacob Cornelisz, from Rosendaal, all freemen. Out of that number two were to be selected to serve as burgerraden in the Council, in order to inquire into and decide on all offences occurring among the burghers. It was, however, decided by the Council always to have somebody of experience, and not

every time novices, and that therefore Steven Jansz, appointed last year by the Hon. v. Goens as the first burgher Councillor, should serve another year as ex-burgher Councillor, and to appoint as his colleague Hendrik Boom of Amsterdam.—(Signed) J. v. Riebeeck, W. Bastincq, R. de Man, J. v. Herwerden and Abr. Gabbema, secretary.

1658.

The Hottentoo, present in a large body in the fort, looked surprised when they saw the capture, and also Herry, but hearing that the captives would be well treated, said that they would go at once and make a careful search for the slaves, not wishing it to appear that they knew where they were. But Doman or Anthony, who had been at Batavia, was very angry, and could not moderate his temper. In presence of all the Hottentoo he said that Eva had advised us to do so, and wished at once to destroy her offhand. She immediately denied the charge, and we confirmed her denial, though it was true. They were told that she had no share in the matter at all; that our only motive had been the sight of the intimacy existing between the Hottentoo women and the fugitives, and further, that Schacher and Olochoer (?) had some days ago reported that the fugitives had been seen near their camp, and could tell what they were doing, &c.

Anthony, however, would not cease from accusing Eva, and therefore proved that he was not to be trusted and we were to be on our guard against him. It is much to be wished that he had never been at Batavia, or that he might be coaxed to go back again by sweet persuasion, and the more so as at Batavia he had been taught how to use firearms effectively, so that we have enough to do to keep them away from him.

June 23rd (Sunday).—Wet, N.W. breeze.

Resolution, 23rd June 1658. The interpreter Doman, alias Anthony, is urging us incessantly to capture one of Herry's people, who some time ago stole 14 of the sheep missed by us, that they also might in that way be compelled to join the Caapmen in their search for the black men, thus unmistakeably proving that he is one of the Caapmen community, and that Eva belongs to the lot of Herry, although her mother lives in the camp of the Caapmen, for each one stands up boldly for his or her side, and brings heavy charges against the other, by which means very likely the right man may be discovered who murdered the herd five years ago and stole the Company's cattle. Further, the merchant Bastincq being present in our midst, and informed of matters as they were, as far as the shortness of time enabled us to do so, the Council resolved, after consultation with him, to add Jan Cou, one of Herry's people, to the number of hostages, lest the Caapmen should think that we preferred one tribe to another; moreover as Doman assures us that Herry's people laugh at and ridicule the Caapmen, who are the only ones detained, a thing that grieves them very much and may cause a rupture between them—their mutual jealousy being

1658. — great—and such a rupture may enable us to fish out from the one what the other may be plotting against us, and in that way both might be kept in such a state of alliance as time will show to be for the best advantage of the Company—and as both would also be kept under proper control, as they dare not go far inland, fearing that they will be robbed by the Saldanhars: for if the latter come down, they (the two parties) would naturally retire within our lines and seek our protection—for the richer they become in cattle the more evidently they would require our aid:—It was decided to make a hostage of Jan Cou, that both parties might use their best endeavour to recover the slaves, &c.

This was nicely done at once. Shortly afterwards Herry and Eva, with the interpreter Doman or Anthony, called on the Governor and advised him, according to the suggestion of Schacher, also to seize a hostage from the tribe of the Gourachouquas (Tobacco thieves), when the three sections, treated equally, would make more determined efforts to recapture the slaves. All this was attentively listened to by the Council, and carefully considered. It was further remarked that they were greatly interested in the hostages and very obedient, meeting us in everything, and so to speak falling under our lash (of their own accord), whilst they declared the same thing of the Gourachouquas, if we held them fast—yea, that every tribe would be prepared to offer all their cattle for the release of the hostages, personally showing that they were prepared to set the example, and to submit to such conditions as we desired, by which means we might succeed in getting them under our control; always keeping some of them as hostages, who might be continually exchanged. In this way we might gain our object to get as much cattle as we required, and be relieved of the necessity of cutting the peninsula from the continent: for these tribes would then (with their hostages in our power) be a sort of outer defence for us against other tribes coming from the interior, and inclined to injure us. Or, on the other hand, they might become the means of drawing others to the fort, just as it might suit the purposes of the Company. This would be a far cheaper arrangement and produce a greater sense of security than all the fortifications intended. It was therefore resolved to grant the request of Herry and Schacher in this, viz.: to make a hostage of the Gorachouqua Captain—Herry and Schacher undertaking by sweet persuasion to entice him into the fort. By these means it is hoped that something good, and the object desired will be attained; promises seem favourable. Signed by Riebeeck, W. Bastincq, R. de Man, J. v. Harwarden and Abr. Gabbema.

The freemen all warned to be on their guard, in order not to be surprised; also not to go about unarmed, those unprovided with arms to apply for some at the Company's armoury. All found without firearms on the roads, whether servant or master, an offence forfeit two reals of 8. In order that every man keep his gun at his own cost, properly and in good order

there shall from time to time take place a proper inspection, so that all carelessness may be avoided.

1658-1

June 24th.—This morning 3 slaves returned, viz. : a man and woman belonging to Caspar Brinkman, who were found in the night standing before the door; and a female slave of Jan Reyniersz found in the morning early before the mill; evidently just in the same way as the cattle of H. Boom, stolen before this, had been so clandestinely restored during the night, to create the impression that they had returned of their own accord, the thieves not daring personally to return them for fear of detection, and unwilling to acknowledge that the fugitives had ever been amongst them. This, however, is of little importance as long as we get things back in this way.

This morning Herry and 25 robust Hottentooos requested some bread to be used whilst searching for the fugitives; this is all blarney, for the reasons stated. However, we pretend to believe them in order more easily to get the Gorachouquas into the trap and so have the game in our own hands. We therefore gave the bread and tobacco.

June 25th.—Fine W. weather. The *Prins Willem* busy taking in fuel, cut by about 200 of the crew in the forest, and obtained by the cutting down of some trees standing on fine lands, which we hope to be able to sow on during this season, they having been cleared of a great many short and thick trees.

June 26th and 27th.—Pleasant weather. Two Guinea slaves brought back by the Hottentooos, a man and woman belonging to C. Brinkman, who now has all four back again; two only are still wanting—one of J. Reyniersz, and one (a woman) of H. Remajenne—besides the Angola slaves owned by the Company, and for whom the Hottentooos have promised to search carefully. For this purpose Herry had an ox killed to provision his men, whilst we filled their bags with bread, as they state that the fugitives are far away. We pretend to believe it, and for the two slaves brought back we gave them six copper plates and six pieces of wire and tobacco, brandy and wine, &c. This encouraged the others also to go out and look. In the meanwhile the hostages are well treated.

The *Prins Willem* receives its despatch and our letters for India. Busy taking in refreshments.

June 28th.—Fine weather. The *Prins Willem* still busy taking in refreshments.

Resolution, Friday, 28th June, 1658:—The freemen request that the fugitive slaves still confined in prison may be punished at once and then discharged, in order to be used on the lands, as they are urgently required there. The Council being of opinion that the rest of the fugitives will soon be recaptured, resolves that, though it would be more desirable to wait till the last one has been brought in, the freemen and their slaves shall to-morrow attend at the Fort, where the Council will meet in order to consult with the burgher councillors, and decide on the kind of punishment

1658. — to be inflicted on the fugitives, in order to deter others and check their inclination to run away. When all this has been properly arranged, the slaves shall be sent back to their masters.—Signed by Riebeeck, de Man, J. v. Harwarden and Abr. Gabbema (Secretary).

June 29th.—Cloudy sky and N.N.W. breeze. The *Prins Willem* unable to leave. A ship sighted near Robben Island. The Council, assisted by the burgher Councillors, pass sentence on the runaway slaves. All were to be tied to a pole and scourged; one of them was to be branded, two were to be placed in chains, linked to each other, until their masters request that they may be set free, as the sentences will more fully show.

June 30th (Sunday) and New Moon.—Same air. Arrival of the *Maria* from Saldanha Bay with seals' meat and 12 sheep, obtained at Saldanha Bay and also a fine calf. Eight sheep had been killed by the crew, so that four lambs and an old ewe were brought hither; also some salted fish. The skipper reported that the natives from whom the cattle had been obtained had arranged to attack the whites for the sake of their copper, and to kill all who landed; the conspiracy was, however, discovered and failed. They were the Charingurinars or Chariguriquas, who some time ago attempted to surprise the boat of the *Robbejacht* in the bay mentioned, and by murdering the men to get possession of their copper and tobacco. It is very desirable to get hold of their chiefs also, to make them pay for such wantonness. The following persons are legally engaged to each other for marriage:—

Resolution, 30th June, 1658:—Wouter Cornelisz Mostaert of Utrecht, bachelor and freeman here, and the virtuous danseil Hester Weyers of Lier (P van Lier), 24 years old, pupil of W. Bastineq, merchant on the *Prins Wilhelm*. This vessel being ready to leave, and the Council finding no legal impediment to prohibit the marriage, decides that after the sermon this morning, the first banns shall be published, and the second and third on the two succeeding Sundays; after that they shall be married by the Secretary of the Council, as we have no minister here.

July 1st.—The same N.W. wind. The seals' meat landed out of the *Maria*. Almost all the Hottentots who had been out to search for the fugitive slaves return to-day, stating that they have not been able to find any; upon this the prisoners (hostages) commenced to cry and howl lustily, and also their wives, because they had been told that they would not be released before all the slaves had been brought back, a thing which they at present see no chance of accomplishing, as they perhaps find it impossible to get the fugitives back from those to whom they had presented or sold them, and who had already taken them too far inland. Doman however maintains that they have never seen them, but that they ran away of their own accord. This we do not profess to believe, but mentioned the intimacy between their women and the fugitives, so that they had to be satisfied with remaining in captivity until the slaves had been recaptured, or we knew what had become of them. This

caused the interpreter's (Doman's) head to hang, and also grieved Eva, who said that the Hottentos would kill her if Schacher were not released. She was told to keep within the Fort, and if any body wished to harm her, the Commander would have him captured. Riebeeck also went to the hostages and told them that no harm would come to them if only everything were done to recapture the runaways. They were also presented with some tobacco, bread and brandy, which cheered them a little.

July 2nd.—The wind still unfavourable for the *Prins Wil' em*. Bastineq again lands. In his presence Doman requested the Commander, in the name of the fat Captain of the Caapmen, Gogosoa, that as it was impossible to recapture the rest of the slaves, Schacher should be released, and that Herry should take his place. That Herry's cattle should be taken from him, which, after all, he had obtained from the Chainouquas with our copper, bringing only 10 to the fort. He also had the boy killed five years ago by Jan Cou, already a prisoner, and Boubo, who is still with him, and after that carried off all our cattle. Jan Cou had also stolen the last 15 sheep, which are now running in Herry's troop. What the latter possessed was therefore the Company's property. Personally he was but a poor wretch, and merely chief of the watermen or beach-rangers here. He was asked whether the Gorachouquas, Charginars and the real Saldanhars, viz.:—Chainouquas, Cochoquas, &c., would like it. He said yes, undoubtedly. He was told that the chiefs should visit the Commander to consult with each other on the matter. He replied that only the Gorachouquas, *Gogosoa, or the Captain of the Caapmen, and a certain Siginman named Ankoisoa, rich in sheep, lived round about here, to whom alone the Cape land belonged*, and what they might decide upon, the rest would be satisfied with, if Herry only could be put out of the way. He was told that if the Caapmen's Captain and the chief of the Gorachouquas were with Siginman to come to the Commander for consultation. He then left to report the conversation to his people.

July 3rd.—N.W., rainy weather. *Prins Willem* still detained. Bastineq again lands at Riebeeck's request to consult with him about the present condition of affairs.

The following *Resolution* of the Council was adopted:—3rd July, 1658. "As it is evident that no more of the fugitive slaves will be recovered, as reported by the Hottentos who have been out searching for them, and the hostages are beginning to grow desperate, and pretending that they will die under the infliction, the more so as the Gorachouquas, or tobacco thieves, who cause us a deal of trouble, have fled inland, and there is no chance left for the others to deliver the Captain into our hands; and further that as the seizure of Schacher has already become known to the whole country and caused as much sensation as possible—it was resolved that the matter has advanced so far that it ought to be settled, as requested by the prisoners; that as the latter offer a large number of cattle and sheep for their liberty, and to make a

1868.

—

new and firm alliance and peace with us, on condition that Herry and all his cattle should be seized, and also his people, he being the first cause of all the mischief, of the theft of the cattle and the murder of the Dutch boy David, stealing continually whenever he found an opportunity—only lately when the Hon. Cuneus was here stealing 15 sheep, which are still in his possession, whilst all the cattle which he owns were obtained with the Company's copper, tobacco and pipes, confided to him 3 years ago, bringing only 10 oxen to the Commander and enriching himself with the rest, so that what he has is virtually the property of the Government—to get Herry into the Fort by means of sweet palaver, there to seize and bring him face to face with the others, when they will be able to speak against each other and so reveal everything. Further that as soon as he is captured, his cattle shall be seized (now grazing at Salt River) by the sergeant and some soldiers."—(Signed) Riebeek, Bastincq, Claas F. Bordingh (skipper of the *Maria*), de Man, J. v. Harwarden and Abraham Gabbema, Secretary.

Within an hour the sergeant succeeded in getting Herry inside the fort, where he was well treated, and of his own accord joined the other prisoners. The sergeant then went back to get the cattle. This, however, was not accomplished so quietly; some of Herry's men resisted, and the sergeant, who was mounted, was nearly pierced with an assegai. He avoided the missile, and with his gun wounded the Hottentoo in the legs, giving him a charge of shot; another he wounded in the eye with a pistol bullet, who fell down at once. The rest all ran away, and with the help of the soldiers our men successfully brought all the cattle and sheep to the fort. As long as one Hottentoo was in the neighbourhood it was impossible to drive the animals, though there were 22 or 23 men. It was found necessary to drive the Company's cattle before and behind the troop of the Hottentoons, in order to let all graze together and at night get them easily into the kraal. It is evident that many men will be required to herd them securely.

All this having been done, Schacher, assisted by the interpreter Doman, was brought into the Commanders office and before the Council, assisted by the Hon. Bastincq, he was asked whether he adhered to everything which he had charged Herry with, and would dare to repeat it. He was also informed that Herry had brought the same charges against him, and that the Council wished to know who was sincere and who was not. Schacher himself said as much as he could, and more through Doman (a dissimulating rascal) "Let Herry but come here." Thereupon the latter was brought in, assisted by Eva. At once they commenced to blab out vigorously. Doman wished to free the Caapmen from all blame, but Eva said that she would state the whole truth. Herry acknowledged that his people had stolen the cattle and murdered the boy, but the Caapmen had also had their share of the animals. Yea! after Herry had had the cattle a few days, they were seized by the Caapmen of whom Schacher was the chief. Upon this Doman

wished to submit in extenuation that the Caapmen and Herry's people were at the time hostile towards each other, and that accordingly the seizure of the cattle by the Caapmen was a deliberate act of an enemy. But Eva said, if the Caapmen wished to be so honest, why did they not return the sheep to the Commander? They are as great thieves and rogues as Herry's people. As soon as anything had been stolen, it was but a mutual crime, and both sides divided the booty. To lay all the blame on Herry alone was certainly not right. These were Eva's own words, spoken by her in Dutch. She added "the murderer of David is Claas," a Hottentoo of Herry's company, who has gone out of the way.

A little while after, when Herry and the others had been locked up again, the Commander went outside, and Doman coming to him asked why we had not at once killed Herry. He was told that if they wished to do it they had a good opportunity, he being locked up with them in one room.

Resolution, at night, 3rd July, 1658 :—

"As it is to be feared under present circumstances that the natives may conspire together in consequence of what is still going on, and attack the freemen and Company's servants and cattle, and that the present garrison is too weak to beat off such an assault, as, counting the agriculturists, gardeners, plough and wagon makers, smiths, carpenters, masons, those in the forest, outside, inside and on Robben Island, the whole number of Europeans is only 97, among them 19 or 20 sick left behind by ships—it is resolved to draft 20 soldiers for the garrison out of the *Prins Willem*, and keep them here until the case has been decided and a fresh peace and alliance have been made with the natives. We trust that this will be accomplished before the arrival of the May ships from home, so that the additional number of men will only be a temporary and brief burden. Resolved also that 1000 lbs. powder shall be landed, with 200 handgrenades and the two small copper guns of the *Maria* to be erected on the redoubt Koornhoop, in the middle of the lands of the free men."—Signed by Riebeeck, Bastincq, De Man and Gabbema, Secretary.

July 4th.—Resolution 4th July, 1658. "The wind still from the N.W., and contrary. Hon. Bastincq therefore still on shore. Schacher and Doman submit that the latter would not dare to proceed to the Caapmen's camp to ask them to come to the fort with their cattle, but that one of the hostages should be sent, as there was no other Hottentoo in the neighbourhood. They proposed to send Pieter Otegno, Schacher's brother, and younger son of the fat Captain. Resolved to do so—Schacher, and Osaoa, representing the Caapmen, and Herry and Jan Cou, the chiefs of Herry's troop, remaining behind as hostages. Pieter was told to assure the Caapmen's Captain, Gogosoa, and Ankaisoa, the great shepherd or Siginman, that we had no mischievous intentions, and that we were sorry that one of his people had yesterday been shot dead by the sergeant, which, however, would not have occurred if they had not hurled

1658. — assegais at him. That we were also fully inclined to settle all disputes existing between them and us, and with them form an unbreakable alliance. Upon this he left with some tobacco for their women." — Signed by Riebeeck, Bastincq, De Man, Harwarden and Gabbema, Secretary.

In the afternoon Herry's people, with their wives and huts, approached, asking us for a location under the guns of the fort, and on the common below Lion's Rump near the bushy downs. Among them appeared the 3 wives and sons of the Hottentoo who had been killed, requesting that they might have back their cattle and sheep still running among Herry's cattle, also some copper and tobacco, as it were to atone for the loss of their husband and father, &c. They were told that the sergeant had been attacked the first and only fired in self defence, whilst the Dutch boy David had been cruelly and wantonly murdered by the Hotten'ooes without our having hitherto received any satisfaction for the crime. Every effort would however be made to satisfy them and all the Hottentooes and ourselves also as soon as the camp of the Caapmen or Gogosoa and the huts of Ankaisoa had been moved hither. Then steps might be taken for a closer alliance, and all disputes completely settled. After that we might live together as good friends. In the evening Doman reported that Gogosoa and 3 other Caapmen chiefs would be here to-morrow to confer with us.

July 5th.—Fine, stiff S.S.E. wind. The *Prins Willem* leaves for Batavia.

Resolution 5th July, 1658:—Pieter Otegno having returned this afternoon with Gogosoa, Schacher's father, and the following chief men, written down according to their rank, and desirous of making peace, were made to sit down in the hall. Doman interpreted. They were Gogosoa, paramount chief of the Caapmen. From prison were brought the hostages Osinghkimma or Schacher, first son and successor of Gogosoa; Otegno or Peter, and Khuma, or Jan, sons of Gogosoa; Bingatty, Osaco, also a hostage confined with Schacher; Hodarimo, Whacka, Goaso, Lockhoeve's brother, Goatoe, Kanatij, Gotiko, Kherreby, Goegal, Heybuha, Douckhima, Lockhoeve Goaso's brother and Hottentoo Cau.

Together they begged urgently that a proper and permanent treaty might be established between themselves and the Hollanders, and that all previous disputes might be settled. They protested that they would rather be killed in the fort than leave without having concluded a proper peace; every one of them offering his head and neck to be cut off for that purpose.

Resolved to enter upon peace negotiations; but to keep them on good terms and cause no suspicion that we mistrust them at all, we decided not to stipulate that hostages should be continually held by us, as they had come to us voluntarily to beg and pray for peace.

Negotiations commenced. We on our part brought forward all the troubles caused us from time to time, but after that the following conditions were mutually agreed on :—

1. Whatever the Caapmen have done to our injury, and whatever we did against them, including the shooting of the Hottentoo yesterday, in the fury of the encounter, shall be considered forgotten and forgiven as if nothing of the whole had ever taken place, and the dead Hottentoo had never been in the world. Regarding the murder of the Dutch boy David five years ago, we had to settle that matter with Herry and his people. They were innocent of the crime, and would have nothing to do with Herry.

2. Whenever any trouble was caused us by the Caapmen, or the latter suffered any inconvenience from our side, every offender was to be punished by his own side in the presence of the injured party, as the crime may be.

3. The Caapmen shall permanently dwell on the eastern side of the Salt and Fresh River Liesbeeck, as the pastures on this side are too small for us all. But if other natives from the interior should attack them, they will be free to retire behind the Lion, and under our guns.

4. The Caapmen undertake that none of their cattle or sheep shall trespass on the cornlands of the Company or of the free men. Whenever such cattle are found trespassing, our men shall have the right of shooting them, leaving them where they have fallen, until inspected by a commission chosen from both sides.

5. Whenever any slaves or servants of the Company or free men shall have deserted, notice shall be given to the natives, who shall immediately do their best to recapture the fugitives, and bring them to the Fort. For every recaptured slave they shall receive as much copper as is paid for a head of cattle ; whilst on the other hand the natives undertake to do their best to recapture the 10 slaves still at large.

6. They shall henceforth no longer stop the way of the Saldanhars or other natives from the interior, but invite them to visit us for the purposes of trade and intercourse. But should they fear any trouble from such visitors they would be at liberty to shelter themselves under our guns, as stated in the 3rd Section.

7. Henceforth the Caapmen shall supply every large vessel calling here with 10 oxen and 10 sheep for copper and tobacco ; every yacht and flute with 5 ; and the fort with 2 oxen every Sunday for the garrison, and with 2 sheep for the Commander and the officers.

8. One of the Caapmen, assisted by Doman, shall always have the right of boarding every vessel, and receive 2 bags of bread or rice, 2 or 3 pieces of pork, and a small cask of brandy.

All the above articles having been approved of by the touching of hands, with the understanding that they were to be strictly carried out as inviolable for both parties, the hostages were liberated, and on the other hand the natives, as a proof that they

1658. intended to abide by the conditions, presented us with 10 fine oxen and 9 fine sheep, not asking any payment for them, though copper, &c., were offered. They would not leave before the Commander had promised to accept the present as a token of inviolable alliance, otherwise they would remain under the impression that no permanent peace had been made. They again said that they would, under those circumstances, prefer to remain in the fort and be killed willingly, to leaving without the certainty of a lasting peace. The peace thereupon concluded by the touching of hands. After this Herry appeared before us with 9 or 10 of his people in order to treat for peace; but in the presence of all the one murderer of David was pointed out, and the case was postponed, whilst the murderer mentioned (named Namtesy, called by us Claes) was kept prisoner with Herry and Jan Couw.—Signed by Riebeeck, Claas Frausz: Bordingh, R. de Man, J. v. Harwarden, and Abr. Gabbema, Secretary.

July 6th.—Fine weather. Early in the morning the Caapmen brought their present and drove the animals among those of the Company. In the hall they represented that among the cattle taken by us from Herry there were 48 belonging to the following parties:—

To Osingkimma or Schacher, 2; to the 3 sons of the Hottentoo shot, named Krounthumsa, 3²; i.e., to Doohol 15, to Doeda 8, and to Euchoebe 9; total, 32. To Wacha 10, to Doechema 4; grand total, 48—the half of the booty.

We replied that we considered what we found in Herry's camp to be his own, and inadequate to recoup us for what we had lost in cattle and copper. It was finally agreed that they should be content with the following:—Osinghkhimma or Schacher, 2 milch cows and their calves, Doohol 2, Doeda 2, Euchoebe 2. For the children of the Hottentoo killed 6 milch cows, Wacha 2, Doechema 2 ditto; total 12, which, deducted from 48, leaves 36.

After this they were asked what should be done to Herry. They replied that they had delivered him into our hands, but if we set him free Schacher would fight against him with assegays. They preferred, however, that we should decide the matter, as he had injured us by the murder of David and shown great joy in consequence.

We asked whether, if we killed him, they or other natives would not become dissatisfied with us? They replied that we might do as we liked, and withhold all the sheep and cattle from him and his people, as they were all the Company's property.

After this they were liberally treated with bread, brandy, copper, tobacco and pipes. They then left for their encampment on the ^{last} side of the Salt River, within sight of the Fort, a good hour's distant.

remained confined with the boy's murderer Boubo, alias a Cou. The latter the Caapmen offered personally to be, as when the Hon. Cuneus was here, he had

stolen 15 sheep and brought them to Herry. The Commander however desired to postpone this matter, as Doman had declared that he had also taken part in the murder of David, together with Boubo, called by us Simon, and another named Claas, now out of the way, and called the son of Herry, a strong big fellow. The Commander wished to investigate the matter, in order to acquit the innocent.

163

The following persons were publicly engaged to be married as stated in this *Evening's Resolution*, 6th July, 1658:—Jan Zacharias of Amsterdam, bachelor and freeman, 27 years old, to be married to Maria, spinster, born at Bengal, 20 years old, ex-female slave of the sick comforter Pieter van der Stael, bought into freedom by the bridegroom, as shown by legal transfer. As Maria not only understands Dutch perfectly, but speaks that language plainly, and has a fair knowledge of Christ according to the reformed religion, the fair request of the young people was granted. The first notice to be published next Sunday; after the 3rd bans the marriage is to be performed in the Council Chamber.—Signed by J. van Riebeeck, R. de Man, J. van Harwarden and Abr. Gabbema, Secretary.

July 7th.—Fine sunshine. Cattle counted ; total ..	227
Deduct the original number	117

The remainder represents the number taken from Herry	110
Valued at f5 per head, the ordinary price ..	f550
260 sheep at 25 st.	f325

Total	f875
Calculated value of what he has stolen from the Company, viz : 43 cows at f5 ..	f215
Value of copper entrusted to him for buying cattle, but stolen by him, 404 lbs. copper at f50 per 100 lbs.	f202
44 (?) lbs. tobacco at f6 per 100 lbs. ..	26.8
1½ gross pipes at	1.10
24 yellow copper chains at 27 st.	32.8
Beads and "bougys" valued at	22.14

Total	f500
----------------	------

This, deducted from f875, leaves f375. Herry has therefore been told that there is no intention of returning anything to him, as the value of what he had stolen was more than what had been recovered, the probability being that if the cattle had not been stolen they would have increased largely.

Moreover, the murder of the boy is still open—an open question, and not yet forgotten.

After the sermon to-day the treaty of peace was signed with the Caapmen, and everychere affixed.

1868.

—

During the morning service about 60 or 70 Hottentots were loitering about to steal the cattle, but seeing about 25 or 26 soldiers guarding them, they retired, pretending that they had only come to have a look. Eva declared that they were Caapmen, watching their opportunity to steal the cattle; they had declared that Gogosoa had made peace to get Schacher and Oasoa free, but that they would, whenever the Commander and sergeant went out anywhere, endeavour to kill both, because Riebeeck had imprisoned Schacher, and Herwerden had killed their comrade yesterday. After that they believed themselves able to overpower the others. She further said that the substantial peace had been made with the mouth, but that it was not meant.

This was flatly contradicted by Doman, who said that that was the intention of Herry's people, and that the men who had been seen had merely been on the rocks behind the Lion to collect mussels during low water. The two are contradicting each other so vigorously that we discover a good many things. Eva stated that the Caapmen intended to form a bond with others inland, and with them surprise us. She was told that we would like them to come with much cattle, for then our booty would be so much larger, and that we were a match for all the Hottentots if they would only try. It would however be better for them to adhere to the conditions of the treaty, that we might live as brethren. Doman replied, "Yes, sir, the Caapmen are willing to do that, and you will see it, if only ships arrive, in their supply of cattle and their invitation to other natives to come down to trade with the Commander." Eva replied, "Take care, Mr. Riebeeck, Doman tells a story and jokes (meaning that he is merely bamboozling you) but I shall tell you the truth. I listened to what Schacher said, and heard him speak; but if you release Herry and allow him to live near the fort, with 4 or 5 cows, his people will always help you against the Caapmen."

She talks thus through love for her uncle Herry, so that her words carry no weight. Nor can Doman's statements be worth much more, who said that of the Caapmen, who would proceed on board when a ship arrived, for bread, &c., Osinghkimma, alias Schager, or perhaps Chajhantima, a principal chief of the Chajnouquas, would be the parties. From the latter, two years ago, most of the cattle had been bought. We conclude that if Schacher dares to proceed on board, we need not fear what Eva has communicated. Orders have however been given to keep good watch and proper order everywhere.

July 8th.—Fine sunshine. Meeting of the Council. *Resolution:* On the 30th May it was resolved that the question about the despatch of the *Maria* should stand over. Further, it was considered that the instructions left by the Hon. R. van Goens had not yet been carried out, viz.: to examine the sea coast from False Bay to Agulhas, and lay down exactly in a chart all the shallows, rocks, reefs, sands, depths, breadths and directions of the bays between

the two places, and that different navigators should examine each her's work, that errors might be reduced to a minimum; but that for this purpose only the *Maria* was at hand, the *Robbejacht* having remained behind on the Angola coast. And finally that as the Hon. Commissioner had written to Holland for a small vessel to be used here, the *Maria* might be destined for that purpose, which vessel could nicely carry out the work of examining the coast, and after that proceed to the Southland to search for the crew of the wrecked ship *Draak*, as ordered by the India Government. In spite of all these considerations, however, it was decided to abide by the Resolution of 30th May, to obey the instructions of the Directors and send the *Maria* to Batavia at once, as with God's blessing it would be back here in full time for proceeding to the Southland in the proper season, and also bring us our supplies, so urgently required. Whilst proceeding to India the *Maria* may (as she goes) examine the coast between the Cape and Agulhas as far as Rio Dolce. Theurnal and charts of the voyage to be delivered to the India Government. Thence they may be sent hither to be annexed to the other charts, without making it necessary that the vessel should turn to the Cape. The same thing could always be done by all small vessels in the most favourable seasons, when the work of one could also, as Hon. van Goens has ordered, be examined by the other, to make the whole as perfect as possible.

Herry appears before the Council once more. After a long examination, we gathered from him the names of his people, viz:—

Autshumao, called by us Herry, the author of all the evil, &c.
Khonomao Namtesy, alias Claes.

Hemaoa Khatimaä, Herry's great servant; both murderers of the boy David, according to Herry's confession, but out of the way and not to be found.

Khamy, alias Jan Cou, sheep-stealer.

Boubo, alias Symon, also but doubtfully accused of the murder, and therefore imprisoned with Herry.

Arre, Namtesy's brother.

BymamKakoa-Danhou, alias Orenbare.

Humtha Sankhumma.

Khaik Ana Makouka, alias Claes Das.

Thoe Makakoa, hit the other day by the sergeant with a charge shot in his buttocks. He gave as an excuse that the Caapmen and others could not bear him from sheer hatred and envy, because he alone was usually admitted to the ships, where he received bread, &c. For this the Caapmen had on 4 distinct occasions, and the orachouquas once, ruined his camp and robbed him of everything. He therefore requested permission to build a hut near the fort for his wives and 3 or 4 milch cows and sheep, as he had been allowed to do on our first arrival, and again to serve us as interpreter.

But as Doman tells us that Herry had struck the first blow on the murdered boy five years ago, and the chief of the Caapmen and other natives protest that he has been the cause of all the evil

1858. and misunderstanding, it was resolved to convey him to Robben Island by the first opportunity with the two other prisoners, Khamy, alias Jan Cou, and Boubo, alias Symon, as hostages, with the promise that they would be released as soon as the real murderers shall have been placed in our hands. Regarding Herry, that we would wait for the orders of the Directors about him, &c. Should he wish, however, that his wives and hut shall also be transported thither, it would be allowed, whilst everything would be notified to the Caapmen and the other natives.

Though peace has been concluded with the Caapmen, it is considered advisable to retain the 20 soldiers for the present, drafted on shore from the *Prins Willem*, and until the first ships shall have arrived from Holland, expected within 4 or 6 weeks' time, as we do not know what conspiracies the natives may not secretly hatch.

As soon as Herry has been placed on the Island peace is to be offered to his people and to the watermen, that we may be clear of all enemies, and able to journey safely from one spot to the other, and if any one does us any injury to come down upon him for damages, &c. *As Robben Island is so sandy and dry that three months in the year there is very little pasture for the sheep, it was decided whenever a vessel went thither to put on board of it as much green grass and clover sods as it could carry, that the said Island may in course of time be made as green as the tract in Tayouan between the Fort and the "quarter," about 6 or 700 roods (and done in 44 and 45 by Mr. Caron), and as successful. A poor heath has thus been converted into a fine green field, with long grass, that in future there might be no want of food for the sheep.*

The skipper Bordingh represents to the Council that certain promotions should be made, viz., Jan Struys of Dordrecht to be trumpeter, Jan Zacharias, freeman and resident within the Fort, cook of the fiscal and clerks, *to be janitor and messenger according to the conditions and salary usual at Batavia. He consequently had to swear according to the Batavia Oath.* — Signed by Riebeeck, Bordingh, de Man, V. Harwarden and Gabbema (Secretary).

Riebeeck having told Doman that he intended to visit the Caapman Captain to-day in his camp situated on the east or other side of the Salt River, said Captain sent one of his sons to ask Riebeeck to do so to-day, as he intended to move to-morrow to the Leopard hills, for new pastures. The answer was that Riebeeck had no time to-day, but would visit Gogosoa immediately after his return. The messenger left with a present of tobacco and brandy in a can.

July 9th.—Fine, calm weather and sunshine.

July 10th.—Fine warm weather. The ex-interpreter, or, as the English used to call him, King Herry, was removed in the sheep's boat out of his kingdom at this furthest corner of Africa to Robben Island, with two of his comrades, the one named Jan Cou, who whilst the Hon. Cuneus was here, stole 15 sheep, and the other

Boubo, alias Simon, who is suspected, but without much certainty, of having had a hand in the murder of the boy 5 years ago. As we have however been informed, the chief murderers have gone out of the way. Time will produce more certain information, as the removal of the prisoners seems to be agreeable to the natives as far as we can gather.

The cattle boat also took to the Island 20 young ewes and some green sods, hay, and clover seed, &c., that in course of time the Island, instead of being sandy, may be converted into quite a green field, and so have sufficient pasture for sheep in dry and wet seasons.

After having discharged its cargo and also Herry, the boat was to proceed to Dassen Island to look for the *Penguin*, belonging to the freemen, and whose long absence makes us fear that some disaster has befallen her; she was to bring from that Island a cargo of oil and seals' flesh, *as is stated in the following letter* to Rijk Overhagen:—
 “We send you some turnip seed, crisp lettuce, purslain, 3 bags of oats, “dawicq,” spurge, and some old and new clover. All to be mixed and sown over the whole Island. Also 2 lbs. of tobacco to be given to Herry and the other Hottentoos now and then. As there is sufficient grass on the Island at present in consequence of the rain, you are to scatter the hay sent you before on such spots where there is no grass, and do the same with the two bags of hay seed now sent, in order to get more food for the sheep. You also receive green grass, quitch grass, and clover sods, to be laid down on the sandy spots, just as bleaching fields are laid out, in order to convert the Island, in course of time, into a green field. We also send you the ex-interpreter Herry and the Hottentoos Jan Cou and Boubo or Simon, *who are to be employed on such work as they like, and not to be compelled to do anything*; but they are to search for their own food, in the shape of penguin eggs, klipfish, &c., as no provisions will be sent for them; if, however, they are inclined to herd the sheep, you are to give them some tobacco, but nothing else. And you are to let us know, that we may send them some bread or other food if they deserve it. Jan Cou is a good fisherman, and you may encourage him in this matter; the others should be urged to mind the sheep, or do something else, just as they like, but they are to be kept there and not be sent on board any ship without our express orders.

Only after New Year you shall commence lighting your beacon fires for the ships, and for the rest carry out your instructions on this point.

We also send you 20 ewes as stock. We are confident that you will diligently discharge your trust. The Island being now provided with a good many sheep, we believe that the manure will gradually fructify it for the growth of the seed already sent. You may also use it for your small gardens. You must always tell us about the increase of the rabbits, and how many sheep are born, &c. This boat will proceed to Dassen Island to look for the *Penguin*.

1658. — Another boat is being decked, to be ready in 8 or 10 days' time, and which will bring you some sods. It can bring us the information wanted."—(Signed) J. Van Riebeek and R. de Man.

Arrival of the *Penguin* with eggs and 720 lbs. salted seals' flesh; she had been thrown on shore at Dassen Island by a heavy N.W. storm, and much damaged; will require much repair.

Doman and Eva told to-day that now that Herry is away all the watermen are to be told to come to the fort if desirous to take part in the peace made with the Caapmen. They were also instructed to tell Gogosoa, Captain of the Caapmen, and Osinghkimma, alias Schacher, his eldest son, that they would receive the chieftainships over all, and that Herry's and the Watermen people would be made their subjects. Should they refuse to fall in with this, then some plan must be adopted of proceeding in their case. This order Doman promised to carry out, and it seemed likewise acceptable to Eva.

July 11th and 12th.—Fine weather. Doman and other trusted Hottentoo sent to the Caapmen's camp for the purpose stated, but found that they had left for the Leopard Hills and new pastures, &c.

July 13th.—Fine weather. The *Schapenjacht* returns from Robben Island with 9 scabby sheep and a letter from the superintendent, viz:—"The orders contained in Riebeek's letter would be carried out. We will sow the hay and the seed, but wish that you were here. You would then see that the whole place is covered with clover and wild sorrel, and can provide pasture for one or two thousand sheep. During the dry season the animals find more to eat here than at the Cape in the form of dry grass and bushes, which are always green. The seed sent will in the dry season be (blown away) by the strong S.E., and as the Island is only sand, whatever does come up will be scorched by excessive heat.

The three Hottentoo sent over by you do not seem inclined to herd the sheep; they say that they are to find their own food. If however, they show any zeal, it will be communicated. No beacon fires will be lit before the New Year. The last hard weather has killed many sheep, viz.:—32, but the last 20 sent are better than the former 23. The dead were lean ewes, too old to rear lambs, dying with their young along the road. The new grass causes them to purge, and when rain falls upon them after that, they die in numbers, and we see and fear that there will be no end to this.

The Hottentoo rambling over the island in search of penguins and eggs found a dead sheep, and asked whether they might have it to eat. Under cover of this they might seize living sheep, so that from daybreak the two boys are looking after the troop until the stars are visible in the heavens. At night they sleep in the sheep's shed. The house for the herds should be sent, as they make a fire in the shed when we are all asleep. A fire may be caused in that way, and moreover I want the whole shed for the ewes and lambs, when the former refuse to suckle the latter. There were three hundred and one or two and ninety sheep; by death the number had been

reduced to 330. Thirty lambs were born ; so that we have 360. We send 10 old ewes, so that including those sent with the Hottentoos we have 370.

1658.

—

Four of the rabbits have gone inland, *i.e.*, of the young ones. The white doe has littered again below the house but we have not yet seen them. We wish to have some reeds to make a cover for the boat, which is cracking to pieces from the effects of the heat." Robben Island, 12th July, 1658.—(Signed) R. Overhagen.

The *Maria* receives its despatch for Batavia and the despatches.

July 14th.—N.W. wind. Marriage of the following persons as per Resolution :—Wouter Cornelisz : Mostaart and Hester Weyers Van Lier. (See above.)

July 15th.—Same weather. Riebeeck went out to examine some Hottentoo approaches, and find means of fortifying them in the best manner and with the least expense, that they might no longer steal any of the cattle or that of the free men. For this purpose the Liesbeeck River seems to offer a favourable position ; as because of its depth and marshiness it can only be forded in a few places. We therefore believe that if a little trouble be taken with it, the cattle (stolen) could be easily stopped. The examination was, however, stopped by heavy wind and rain, but is to be resumed again as highly necessary for our protection and that of the free-men. For if the latter's cattle are stolen, agriculture would at once cease.

July 16th.—Heavy rain, hail and N.W. storm. The Caapmen gone further inland. Though it is said that they have gone to fetch more men to attack us, we have decided to send 11 of the 20 soldiers drafted out of the *Prins Willem* to Batavia in the *Maria*. We have a good many sick who will soon be well again and able to assist us.

July 17th.—Dirty, cold weather from the N.W.

July 18th.—Fine. The *Maria* leaves for Batavia. The *Schapenjacht* leaves for Robben Island with grass sods and 30 young ewes, of which notice is given to the Superintendent, " who is to allow the Hottentoos to take for themselves the sheep found dead on the island, provided that no robbery is tolerated. The scabby sheep are to be cleaned and rubbed with tar ; those that cannot be cured are to be sent hither. You are to return with the boat and give us oral information, and we send you a tarpaulin to cover the boat. You also receive a convict from Batavia, viz. :—Domingo of Bengal, who will be serviceable on the island. In his place you can send back a salaried servant, either Jasper Jansz : Duyff, or Pieter Jansz : Sampus."—Signed by J. v. Riebeeck and R. de Man, 17th July, 1658.

July 19th.—Dry, S.E. wind. Khuma, alias Jan, third son of Gogosoa (sent by the latter), came to warn us to be on our guard, as it is rumoured that Herry's people intend to retake the cattle. We told him they might come, for they would be expected with powder and lead, as our men had been ordered to shoot down every

1622. — Hottentoo who approached the cattle without a little flag. The dead were to be brought into the fort to find out of what tribe they were, as we no longer cared about trifling on the subject, and would no longer stand any annoyance from the Hottentoo's, though we intended to do them every kindness possible. The Capmen were therefore advised not to mix themselves up with any thieves if they did not wish to be treated similarly. Harry's people, consisting only of 9 or 10 fighting men, will not dare to do it alone.

This has also been told to Jan, and we conclude that if the attempt is made the others will most likely assist. However, they were welcome to try; we felt comfortable.

July 20th.—Riebeeck and others proceed to the Salt River to inspect it for the purposes mentioned on the 11th.

The *Schapenjacht* brings 5 sheep from Robben Island, and Overhagen states that he wants a large shed for the sheep in rainy weather. The number now is 400, that at the Cape 227. Unadvisable to send any more as yet to the Island, the dung being required for the lands. The sheep might be kept at the Schuur, 1½ hours' walk from this.

Marriage as per resolution of to-day of Jan Zacharias of Amsterdam and Maria, born in Bengal, bought into freedom by her bridegroom. See Resolution.

July 22nd.—Dirty, wet weather, N.W. wind.

July 23rd.—Better weather. Riebeeck again proceeds to Salt River and sails all about it in a little boat to find out everything about the depths, shallows, &c., in order to find out the spots impassable for cattle. The doubtful spots to be tried by sending a few cattle across, that we may be sure where the cattle of the Hottentoo's may be stopped, or ours, should they venture to steal them.

July 24th.—Fine wind and weather. Riebeeck proceeded as far as the Bosheuvel to see how far, by means of the enclosure mentioned, the cattle of the Company and freemen could be protected. It was found that the Hottentoo's could be stopped or warded off near where the Company's forest is situated below the river Liesbeeck, opposite Vasagie's house and brewery, about 2 hours away from the fort—i.e., if the Liesbeeck is as unfordable for cattle as is stated; but to be certain the Commander in person went from beginning to end through all the shrubs, flag flowers (*fleurs de lis*), reeds and marshes, whenever the weather was favourable.

He also inspected the farming of the freemen, and sowing time for Dutch grain being now past, everyone had to do his best to put into the ground a large quantity of *milie* or *Turkish wheat*, obtained from *Guinea per Hasselt*. The slaves know well how to plant it. Some having shown a disposition to refuse, thinking that there is grain enough, the Commander threatened to close the depôts, if every farmer did not plant at least a muid of this seed, which would be too old to plant next year, whilst at the same time no more could be obtainable.

July 25th.—Dark, calm weather. Arrival of the *Nieuwjaer*, from Texel on the 16th April: brought a small letter from Amsterdam dated 14th April. Drizzling rain in the evening. Boat leaves for Robben Island with 20s. and a steenbuck ewe with young, caught to-day by the dog. We wish to see whether these animals will not thrive and breed on the island. Overhagen promised a six-dollar for every lamb born during the first three years. Heavy S.E. during the night.

July 26th.—Same wind. The *Perryman* leaves for Dassen Island thoroughly repaired.

Riebeek goes out again to examine the forest between the mountains and the Liesbeeck. *He found that forest so thickly grown from the one point to the other that no other opening could be found than the wagon road, which might be easily closed with a bar. No cattle could pass through this road even if thousands of Hottentots were driving them.* It is about 2 hours distant from the Fort, as far as Vassie's dwelling, just below the foot of the Bosheuvel, where the Commander one morning showed Com. v. Goens, when they were walking over the Bosheuvel with a Hottentoo who did not wish that land should be cultivated there, a spot on which to build a small redoubt or watch-house to protect the lands in the neighbourhood, and to which spot the river Liesbeeck could be made navigable for small boats from the fort and through the Salt River. But as the Liesbeeck is thickly studded with reeds, &c., 1½ and 2 feet high, it will be necessary to make a clearing on the sides, in order to examine the whole even more carefully. For this some men of the flute might be used, but we prefer them to finish the lands first and clear them of trees on which to sow the wheat received by that vessel. Though a little late we trust that it will still answer. The rye, however, was spoilt, and will be used for bread.

Resolution of this day's date, 26th.—The Council found that the breeding of pigs, in spite of all efforts to promote it, has hitherto been a failure, so that the number is really diminishing, there being only 24 left out of the 50 alive when the books were closed off, instead of showing an increase of 1½ p.c. The reason seems to lie with the carelessness of the herds, who have been urged by kindness and all sorts of ways to do their duty. It almost seems as if they poison them, and then think that they no longer need looking after them. We have therefore often offered the pigs to the freemen, that they should feed them and sell them to the Company at 2½ st. when alive, being weighed 24 hours before they are killed. The farmers, however, would not take them, as they could not very well keep them out of the lands, and it would be too expensive to keep them in styes. Resolved to offer them to the married servants of the Company and burghers about the fort, who are mostly tradesmen, and easily live upon what they earn. For this reason they have not been allowed, ~~as the~~ burghers, to keep cows. The burghers are to make many ~~expensive~~

1658.

and have to work hard, so that without cows and sheep they could not very well subsist, requiring the manure for their lands. The pigs are therefore, on the conditions stated, handed over to the following persons, viz., 3 sows with young at $7\frac{1}{2}$ gl. selected by Wouter Corneliz Mostaert, free miller and brick maker, married, and with his wife living near the fort.

One sow with young, at $7\frac{1}{2}$ gl., chosen by Hendrik Van Zurwarden, free tailor, ditto.

Twenty-one sows and boars, the remainder, small and big, sick and healthy, lame and cripple, just as they are, selected by Janneken Boddys, wife of the sergeant of the fort (on condition that she shall also have gratis the first Dutch sow arriving from Holland without young), for 4s. each. We further stipulated that no one shall kill more than one fatted pig for his household annually, but deliver everything to the Company at the fixed prices, until the stock has largely increased. In this way we trust to get into a stock of pigs. To prevent the pigs from doing any damage to gardens the owners shall place round their necks a triangalar collar, already prepared by the Company lest they should go through any hedges. Owners to pay for offending porkers 12 st. as pound fees to the gaoler, and satisfy all damages; on condition that every one shall enclose his garden so well and strongly that no pigs can possibly get in with their collars.

As W. C. Mostaart of Utrecht was in partnership with Jan Reyniersz, and which was dissolved on the arrival of the latter's wife, Reyniersz remained in charge of all the milch cows, draught oxen, wagon, plough, and other agricultural and dairy implements, excepting the half, viz.: 7 Dutoh sheep, with which he does not know what to do; but as he is versed in making pearl barley and grinding wheat, and requests that the horse mill may be given to him in order to produce barley and meal, to supply the Company and free men with his own servants; and likewise 4 or more oxen to drive the mill, it was resolved that, considering that three men would be spared if the offer be accepted, and that the only wheat to be ground is the spoilt stuff received from Holland, that these three men do not do more than what they are pressed to do, that they spoil the stones or badly chisel them, a carelessness not unusual in some of the Company's servants, especially when we cannot be personally present, to say nothing of the fraud, which often is bad enough, that the mill should be granted to Wouter Cornelisz, a good, industrious and sober man, at present also married, and as we believe, to an industrious woman anxious to get on. Agreement consequently made with him as follows:—That he shall have for his wheat or rye grinding 2 stivers, and for his malt 1 st. per bushel, also 1 lb. on each bushel for flour dust. The making of pearl barley to stand over until after the harvest, to try whether the grain can be dried without going into an oven (or kiln) or whether, as in Holland, it is to be kiln-dried. Fuel being scarce this would be a consideration.

As for the present all wheat and rye shall remain at the disposal of the Company alone, and private traffic be prevented, he is expressly forbidden to grind for anybody, freeman or otherwise, as all are bound to deliver their wheat, &c., only to the Company, which is to supply them with meal, and take care that no one gets more than what he requires for himself, lest they barter any away to their friends on board, proofs of which have already been patent, and by which this place is deprived of its sustenance and the Company is hampered in supplying the vessels with fresh bread, barley, &c. Likewise no other bakeries shall be allowed, excepting those baking for the Company, until such a time when grain shall be so abundant that it can be spared without inconvenience.

The furniture for the mill will be given to the free miller, who will provide all labour at his own risk. He will be responsible for the consequences of fire or for what may break in the mill and all other losses. The mill to remain the property of the Company, and with its furniture to be only granted for use to Mostert, who is to replace whatever breaks, that he may the better keep careful watch over the whole. W. C. Mostert being also a good brick and tile maker, and the prospects of grinding at present very poor, excepting the spoilt lot received from Holland, he is allowed to start brick making, provided that he burns them hard and according to approval of a committee appointed by the Council, 8 inches long, 4 inches broad, and 2 inches thick, delivering them to the Company for 5 gl. per 1,000, but to the freemen for 6 gl. The price of tiles to be settled afterwards. He further remains subject to such imposts, &c., as the Directors or the Government here may find proper to decree, &c.—Signed by Riebeeck, de Man, Harwarden and Gabbema.

July 27th.—Fine weather. Doman and 2 chief Caapman wish to go on board to get their usual supply of 2 bags of bread, a keg of brandy, and 2 or 3 pieces of pork and tobacco from each ship, but he was told that the Caapmen were first to fulfil their promise, viz: to supply the cattle and sheep agreed upon to the ships and on Sundays to the fort. As long as they failed in this they would get nothing, for they had already given sufficient cause to us to seize hostages from among their chief men and so force them to carry out their agreement.

July 28th (Sunday).—Fine, dry cold weather. Ice in some pools about half a finger thick. 60 men of the *Nieuwpoort* landed and sent to the lands to work until Wednesday in order to root up the trees there. 29th, the same weather.

July 30th.—Misty, wet, W. weather. The boat returns from Robben Island with the following letter:—"On the 25th we left in the dark; the current was strong and we missed the island; we were driven so far into the sea that we could no longer see the island. The following night we could not reach the island, and had to anchor on the opposite shore. On Saturday afternoon only we reached it. *We thought that Eva was dead, she having been so*

458. — *sea sick*, but the sea calming down, she recovered. The rheebuck came over safely, runs over the whole island, and eats well. We send you a Dutch ram. We would have sent you more but the ewes are commencing to lamb." 29th July, 1658.

Signed by R. Overhagen.

S. and W. wind and rain. As no sheep can be taken to or from the island at present, the boat is to be used for carrying soda thither and bring back shells for burning lime.

July 31st.—Stormy, S.S.E. wind.

August 1st.—Fine sunshine and calm. Our despatches for Batavia sent on board the *Nieuwpoort*, which leaves at midnight with a S.E. breeze.

August 2nd.—Fine S.E. weather. The Chainouquas Captain, viz., Chaihautma, arrived with 13 cows, which we bought. He said that he did not come, as before, with a larger number because the natives were everywhere provided with copper, and that henceforth not many more would be brought. We showed him various kinds of beads taken from the Guinea cargo, but he and others before him did not care about them, and least of all the fine ones. He asked some of the bad red ones as a present, but would pay nothing for them, so that copper is the best article, and tobacco, brandy, bread, or rice the same, as presents where a bargain is concluded.

August 3rd.—This morning he left with presents of copper, beads, tobacco, iron, bread and brandy, promising soon to come back with a small quantity of cattle. The rye and wheat received per *Nieuwpoort* distributed among the freemen for sowing. We hope that they will thrive better than the former lot. The boat brought 3 sheep and a cargo of shells from Robben Island, and the *Penguin* birds, eggs and above 1400 lbs. salted seals' meat for the slaves, from Dassen Island. Overhagen writes that he had as many shells collected as the boat could carry, and wants two shovels for picking them up; 16 lambs have been born; some of the ewes are unable to rear their young. "I send you the note which you wished me to find when I spoke to you about the little enjoyment we had of the brandy. I also send three sheep unfit for breeding." 3rd August, 1658.

August 4th (Sunday).—Fine, cloudy, N.W. weather.

August 5th.—Dirty, wet weather. *Resolution*. Offer of the free Saldanha traders to buy from us the *Schapenjacht*, as the *Penguin* alone is too small for their purposes, and they desire to sail to Saldanha Bay and the neighbouring islands and so provide the Company with more seals' meat, &c. It was considered that we were building another boat quite sufficient for communicating with Robben Island, that by selling the boat mentioned we would save the 3 or 4 men for the new vessel, and that this saving would cover all the expense twofold incurred by buying seals' meat, &c., and that therefore the said boat should be sold as requested for 300 gl., the

buyers undertaking to supply the Company permanently with seals' meat for the slaves.—Signed by Riebeeck, de Man, Harwarden and Gabbema.

1668.

August 6th.—The name of the *Schapenjacht* altered into that of the *Zee Leeuw*; it leaves for its destination.

August 7th.—Arrival of the *Leerdam*, consort of the *Nieuwpoort*, from Texel on the 16th April; 172 men on board; 3 dead Refreshments sent on board. The seed corn landed at once for sowing, and 60 men ordered on shore to clear more land for ploughing, in order to get as much into the ground as possible. The *Penguin* leaves to fetch eggs, &c.

August 8th.—Fine weather, S.S.E.

August 9th.—Rough, wet weather. The *Zee Leeuw* arrives with birds and eggs for sale among the burghers and the crews. Brought also 6 half aums oil and 1,400 lbs. seals' meat. In going to and returning from Dassen Island the boat only took 3 x 24 hours.

August 10th.—Dirty, N.W. weather. 11th and 12th, the same.

August 13th.—Full moon; wet weather. The *Penguin* leaves, also the *Zee Leeuw*.

August 14th.—Fine, sunshine.

August 15th and 16th.—The same weather. Our despatches sent on board the *Leerdam* for India.

August 17th.—Fine N.W. weather. Some water supplied to the *Leerdam*. Both slaves of the free fisherman Marten Jochumsz ran away; the Hottentooxs sent after them.

August 18th.—Dark, cold N.W. air and drizzling rain.

August 19th and 20th.—Same weather. The Hottentooxs report that they have not been able to capture the slaves.

Resolution, 20th August.—As the Company possesses 240 head of cattle, including many too young for work, and as there would be enough besides for abundantly refreshing the ships, if it were not indispensable to provide for the necessary increase, seeing that nothing or only bad cattle can be obtained from the natives, and as the Directors in successive letters have earnestly advised us not only as much as possible to promote agriculture, but also the increase of cattle, as this is the chief object of the Company at present here (consequently the freemen have the fullest liberty to keep cattle, on condition that they do not get any from the natives), it was resolved to provide the freemen with a large number of cows in calf, i.e., those employed in agriculture, that the manure may serve them for their lands, and they in that way may be able to subsist on the fruits of their labours. The others, viz., fishermen, tailors, millers, hunters, bakers, carpenters, sawyers, &c., who earn daily wages, and seem to prosper, are for the present to have no cattle; they are only to be provided with it when the agriculturists have been thoroughly supplied. Every farmer is therefore, in addition to his draught oxen, to be provided with 6 cows. Those who have their wives and children with them are to have 12, in order to breed cattle, and so

1668

— also gain a living from milk and butter, which give a fair return. With the rest we hope to get on for ourselves in order to refresh the ships as far as we can, and further add to the number by barter with the natives.

The Company having also above 600 sheep, whose manure is also necessary for the lands, and the herds being very negligent, even going so far as to kill old sheep in the veld, keeping up their number by means of the lambs that are born (when the troop is somewhat large), it was resolved to provide every farmer with 50 additional sheep, viz., good breeding ewes, on condition that every one shall keep at least one Dutch ram that we may gradually get into the Dutch breed, as it is already seen from the cross breed that they produce more young and have more milk for their offspring than the Cape sheep. All the Cape rams born are to be castrated, and when full grown sold to the Company for the ships at 3 gl. each, the price they are to pay for the ewes. This will give the farmers good work and a fair prospect of success ; besides, they also draw a good profit from their garden produce, eggs, geese, fowls, ducks, turkeys, &c.

W. C. Mostert having before this received seven Dutch sheep, it was considered unnecessary, although he is no farmer, but a miller, to take them away from him, as he takes good care of them ; on condition that he shall not buy any more, but be satisfied with his own increase. All other craftsmen may earn a living by breeding pigs, which the farmers cannot keep on account of their lands, and by cultivating their gardens, rearing fowls, geese, &c., or whatever they like.—Signed by Riebeeck, de Man, Harwarden and Gabbema.

August 21st.—Fine weather, S.S.E. The *Leerdam* left. For the first time the Commander, after his illness, went out to inspect the lands, &c., everywhere visiting all the freemen and acquainting them with the resolution of the Council. They were also told that they could each plant as many vines as their lands could carry, or their house could bear. Some, however, stated that they were not in a position to accept the offer ; some pleaded their ignorance ; only a few undertook to plant the stocks against their houses. Not one was willing to plant his lands with any ; the Commander consequently decided to plant with the assistance of his private agriculturists and slaves, during the waning moon, a large portion of the *Bosheuvel* with young shoots, that no delay should take place in the increase. The freemen might do the same thing, as all their seed is in the ground, and they have time enough for the work. They however prefer to let their lands, now ploughed, lie fallow, in order to be able to sow corn on them next year. This is also good, especially as they also are building houses, barns &c.

August 22nd.—Same fine weather. Those settled on the further side of the *Liesbeek*, on the *Groenveld* and in the neighbourhood, viz., *Harman's*, *Brinkman's*, and *Vasagie's* company, told us that as they have been so well provided with cattle, one of them (a European) is every day told off with proper firearms to herd the lot, as they are

more exposed to Hottentoo depredations than those on this side ; *that the cattle may not be stolen, as has already often happened.* For the Company cannot afford to supply others, seeing that cattle is with difficulty obtained from the natives for supplying the ships. What the latter bring is old and useless. Every one is carefully to look after the increase. That the above order may be carefully carried out, the freemen are told that if found negligent, the Company will take back the cattle, and that a daily inspection will take place, especially to find out how the stock increases.

Arrival of the *Henriette Louise*, from Zealand on the 5th May ; 252 men on board ; 3 dead. Provided with fresh meat and vegetables.

August 23rd and 24th.—Fine weather. Daily some sheep and small calves brought in by the Caapmen and Gorachouquas, and bought with a certain kind of beads which they seem to like and long for more than copper. Whether this will last remains to be seen. *The sheep obtained in this way do not cost us quite as much as one stiver.*

August 25th.—Lovely weather.

August 26th.—Cloudy weather, W. wind and fog. *Riebeeck planted about 1,200 rooted branches as well as unrooted ones from the cut vines on the Bosheuvel*, about 3 hours distance from the fort, by means of his own overseer and slaves. He also gave to the freemen as many as they wanted. The original stocks were left standing in the Company's gardens. Some of them already bore fruit last year ; others will bear this year. Next year more cuttings will be obtainable from them and those now planted for himself by the Commander.

For this purpose Riebeeck was out to-day, visiting also the freemen's farms and the Company's lands, which are on the road to his place, encouraging all to do their duty. He was told that 14 slaves of the free sawyers had deserted, and also one of his own, who, with 2 females, had been recaptured. Some soldiers given to the sawyers to recapture the others. No Hottentoo at hand for the purpose. Besides, Doman, being a bit of a rascal, tries to thwart the Company in everything, and is thrice as bad as Herry ever was during his whole life ; as we find out every day from evidence and what Eva plainly states. She calls him the chief opponent of the Company, and says that he calls her a lickspittle and makes her hated among her own people, because she is always speaking more in favour of the Dutch than the Hottentoo. When she comes to interpret, the latter say : "Behold the advocate of the Hollanders ; she is coming to tell her people some stories, and will finally perhaps betray them all," &c. It is therefore a pity that the scamp was ever out of Africa, and very desirable to find him safe quarters on Robben Island.

The two boats arrive from Dassen Island with oil and 3500 lbs. salted seals' meat, eggs, fish, &c.

August 27th.—Dark, cloudy weather.

1859.

August 28th.—Clearer weather. Two female slaves recovered, who signified that their husbands had intended to cut the necks of the sawyers during the night, if they could only have obtained knives.

Harman Remajenne came in with 2 slaves who had absconded and received a chain in which to clinch them. The recaptured females had been seen by the Commander's workmen from the top of the Bosheuvel, where they were busy ploughing, and had a view over the whole flat. They had thereupon been followed and taken out of the brush-wood; the track of the others is now being followed up. Two slaves of the chief gardener also absconded during the night; they had been locked up in the house standing outside of the fort, and broken out of it.

Eva and Doman were told to inform the two Caapmen now at the fort of this desertion, that they should tell their people of it and urge them to try and recapture the fugitives, now about 30 in number, that we might chain them, otherwise they would very likely kill the Caapmen also, and rob them of their arms and cattle. When once armed no Hottentoo would master them, but continually be plagued by them. They would continually murder and steal, and in course of time multiplying, having about $\frac{1}{2}$ of their wives with them, they might become masters of all the Hottentoes, who only possess small mat huts, and are not so well protected as the Hollanders, &c.

Resolution.—It becoming plainer every day that the Guinea and Angola slaves are apt to desert, and that 14 have run away from the sawyers, who have treated them better than the freemen do theirs; that also two of H. Remajenne's have run away but been recaptured and placed in irons; that 2 of the free fisherman, Marten Jochumez, also ran away on the 17th last, not yet recaptured; and that last night one of the chief gardener absconded from the brick house outside the fort, so that at present the number has increased to 28, a formidable collection; further, that it is to be feared that they will all gather in one place and become a source of danger to us greater than that to be feared from the natives, as they are sharper, bolder and more courageous than these Hottentoes, unless steps are taken in time: it was resolved, seeing that the Hottentoes are afraid of the slaves as they pretend, and afraid also to tackle them, and in order to prevent future desertions, which would cause great loss to the Company, greater than any other evil to be feared, to order the blacksmith, setting aside all other work, to make as soon as possible a sufficient quantity of chains in which to confine all the male slaves, excepting the old and sickly and the children. The freemen also to be provided with as many as they want in order to prevent all desertion.

Runners and soldiers to be sent on the track of those who have lately run away.—Signed by Riebeeck, de Man, Harwarden and Gabbema.

Notice given to the freemen that they are allowed to put their slaves in irons.

August 29th.—Fine weather; W. breeze. The two fugitive slaves of the Company recaptured; also two females belonging to the free sawyers. The latter again assisted with soldiers, provisioned for four days, to pursue the deserters.

All the Company's slaves put in chains to-day, excepting the old men, boys and women.

August 30th.—Fine weather; W. breeze. The two recaptured slaves, after being chastised, were also, at the request of their own countrymen, put in chains and ordered to do all the dirty work.

The two boats of the Saldanha fishermen proceed to Dassen Island.

August 31st.—Fine weather; the men of the *Henriette Louise* busy putting on board the refreshments and stores for the voyage. She likewise receives our letters for Batavia.

September 1st.—Lovely weather; *H. Louise* leaves.

September 2nd.—Same weather. Riebeeck visits the freemen's farms for inspection, and to encourage them. Returning at night-fall he found the Chainouqua Captain, viz., Chaihantima, at the fort with 31 cattle, which were bought for copper and tobacco. He was also well treated, and said that he would return to-morrow.

Resolution, 2nd Sept.—Whereas Chaihantima (as he says) in the name of his Master the Chief of the Chainouquas, and of some of the Chief Caapmen and Gorachouquas, again earnestly requests that Chamy, alias Jan Couw, and Boubo, alias Simon, may be liberated and brought back from Robben Island, and also surrendered to them, promising, as the Caapmen cannot carry out their undertaking to supply us with cattle, off and on to bring to us more cattle than the number required of the Caapmen; the more so as the latter were afraid to come near the fort, and should the prisoners be liberated, they would feel more secure against us, whom they greatly dread; and whereas all this was confirmed by Eva and Doman, who added that more cattle would assuredly be brought and the owners made more favourably disposed towards us, it was resolved, considering that satisfactory evidence (the true story) cannot be obtained proving that Chamy and Boubo were the murderers of the boy, and further that Chamy and Jan Couw, when the Hon. Cuneus was here, did no other mischief than stealing the 15 sheep, to let Jan Couw come over alone to see what good that would do, the heaviest suspicion resting on Boubo. The chief murderer is kept in hiding, and will most likely never be discovered. Everyone, however, cries out that Herry should be killed. He will therefore remain a prisoner where he is.—Signed by Riebeeck, de Man, Harwarden and Gabbema.

September 3rd.—Fickle wind. The boat sent to Robben Island with a letter to Overhagen informing him "that he will receive 3 months' provisions; amongst others 60 lbs. bread and 60 lbs. rice for Herry and Boubo, besides the extra quantity of brandy asked

1658

—

for. The shovels were also sent for collecting shells to be gathered by 3 Dutch and one slave sent over purposely, but who were to return. Khamy, alias Jan Couw, is also to return, but the others not; Herry is to do no other work than minding the ewes and lambs, *as he is old and unable to do any work.* The rice and bread sent must serve him and Boubo for 3 months. They also receive 3 lbs. tobacco. They are to come out with that and with the fish and birds on the island. Now and then they may smoke to encourage them to take care of the ewes. Herry can castrate very well, and Boubo may help to collect shells.

“ You are to send us full particulars about the sheep, rabbits and coneys, and whether the clover and other seeds are sprouting out. You must also let us know whether the antelope still lives and has brought forth.” 3rd September, 1658.

To-day 6 cattle and 1 sheep were bought from Chaihantima, who is presented with some copper, tobacco, beads, a knife, bread and brandy.

September 4th.—Lovely weather.

Resolution of this date:—From the letters of the Directors, dated 16th April last, it appears that they have been told that much ivory is to be had at the Cape, and that it has been sent over even by private parties, a thing which could not happen, unless it was sold by the freemen to the ships’ crews. The freemen moreover, living in the country had been allowed by us to barter this article from the Hottentoo's on condition that they would receive from the Company four times as much as they gave for the tusks. In this manner we hoped to obtain a quantity, but instead we find that not 3 or 4 tusks during all the time had been obtained, a proof that some underhand selling has been going on. It was therefore resolved to forbid this barter, and for that purpose to publish the following *Placaat* (14th September, 1658), which is to be strictly enforced: “Whereas it is presumed that the freemen, before this allowed to barter for tusks, rhinoceros horns and ostrich feathers (*obtainable here only in small quantities*, though we trust to get into a larger supply) on condition that they were to sell them only to the Company at 4 times the value of what they paid—slyly sell what they get to the ships’ crews and others. It was resolved, in order to prevent this for the future, to forbid this barter completely as regards tusks, horns and feathers, &c., directly or indirectly, or under whatever pretext it might take place. Should the Hottentoo's bring any of these articles to them, they were to convey them to the fort, for the Company. Offenders to be fined 20 reals of 8.” This prohibition does not extend to such trifles as tortoise-shells, egg shells, milk, &c.

Because of his special knowledge of gardening, tree planting, grafting, &c., and especially because of his extraordinary diligence, Jan Bundervoet of Gent, who arrived here as soldier in the *Meese* on the 12th April, 1658, receives a testimonial accordingly, and is appointed master garden servant at 14 gl. per month for the heavy

work which he is doing.—Signed by Riebeeck, de Man, Harwarden and Gabbema.

1658.

September 5th.—Lovely weather. Two slaves of the sergeant and 12 of the Company ran away, each with a chain on his leg and an iron ball at the end. Of the gardener's slaves, 5 men and 7 women also escaped. The remaining two men appear not to have found sufficient time to escape. People sent in every direction to look for them, but Corporal van Bemmel only found 2 men behind the Gevelbergen on the other side of the kloof, between two rocks towards the sea side. We could not gather from them where the others were, but guessed that they were scattered about in different directions. (The search party) was therefore also sent as far as the Leopard Mountains, or the Mountains of Africa, opposite (Het overgebergte), to search for the other 7 women and 3 men. They were not to return before being relieved by a fresh company. Locks were also sent to the cornlands to chain the slaves to each other during the night, and to the forest and everywhere where they are working for the Company, whilst the slaves in the neighbourhood were to be confined in the fort every night. The freemen having also become afraid, wished to return some of their slaves to the Company. This request was granted; the rest they were allowed to chain. (See Resolution of 28th August.)

The boat arrived from Robben Island with shells and a letter from Overhagen. He thanked us for the goods sent. The rhebuck he had found dead. The white doe rabbit only will succeed in raising young ones. The grey one, which came last, littered twice; all dead. "The black one is too old; the old grey one I can't find; the white one has 4 young ones 10 days old. The coney sent are seldom seen; sometimes only 1 or 2. There are 440 sheep, about 44 have been born; there are only a few ewes incapable of rearing their lambs. Herry says that it is not his work to castrate the lambs. He only castrates bulls (Koebeesten) and minds sheep. From early morning till late at night the boy and the black attend the sheep. Herry is surprised that they do it so well. We shall now and then give some rice to the Hottentoo. We send you as ordered the Hottentoo Jan Couw. 5th Sept. 1658."

Return during the night of the sergeant and fiscal. They had been as far as the mountains behind the Leopard hills. They had found the footprints of pedestrians, but did not know whether they were those of Hottentoo or slaves. If, however, the fugitives have gone in that direction their recapture is impossible. It is a wide and broad flat where they cannot be surrounded as in the country behind the Cape mountains, whence Corporal Jan van Bemmel brought 2 fugitives. The sergeant and fiscal reported that they had seen at the Mountains mentioned (the opposite Mountains) thousands of antelopes, steenbucks and elands, but it was as impossible for horses to come up with them as a bird could be caught when flying.

1635. September 6th.—Fine weather. The soldiers who had guarded the kloof and neighbourhood brought back two slaves of the sergeant. They stated that the others were scattered about everywhere, but as the others said the same thing, we conclude that it was pre-arranged among them to say so, and therefore kept close watch everywhere.

Resolution, 6th September :—According to the order of the Hon. Cuneus and his further letter received from St. Helena, that the Sergeant Jan van Harwarden should be urged to give up his tap business and hostelry (to conduct which he received permission from the Hon. R. van Goens during the preceding year) and to accept the post of ensign; said sergeant gratefully agreed to do what was wanted, being prepared to be employed in agriculture, for which and for many other things he is very fit and has shown great knowledge and zeal. He is therefore made ensign with a salary of f36 per month, on condition that he abandons the liquor trade as too vile for a person in his position. He shall likewise continue to discharge his duties as sergeant and head of the soldiers. (The deed containing his promotion follows here).

It was further decided to pay a reward of 6 reals for every recaptured male and 4 do. for every recaptured female slave.—Signed by Riebeeck, de Man, and Gabbema

At night 2 recaptured females were brought in, having been found behind the kloof on the beach. They were sent back with more men, and 5 women and two men were found at the same place about midnight; only one is wanting now, the worst of all, besides those deserted from the sawyers, and who are still being sought for.

September 7th.—Dry, windy weather, S.S.E. wind. The runaways chained in couples and the links made thicker—the others having been broken by them. The boat sent to Robben Island. Some of the Caapmen and Gorachouquas brought an ox and a sheep for the release of Khamy or Jan Kouw and 2 young bulls and 3 sheep for that of Boubo or Simon. They promised to take care that the Hottentoo's from the interior should bring down a large number of cattle. They begged us to release the two men. Jan Kouw was then released, and they were told that we did not want anything for it; but they urged us to take the ox and sheep. We, however, paid for them exorbitant prices in copper and tobacco, treating all with brandy and bread, so that with their stomachs full and their heads drunk, and altogether happy, they left. We told them that Boubo could only be brought back after the return of the boat now away. In the meanwhile we would wait and see whether such large numbers of cattle would be brought to us for sale as they said. They replied that a beginning would be made to-morrow.

September 8th.—Dark, grey, but good weather. The freemen brought the half of their slaves back; they did not dare to keep all any longer, as they were naturally inclined to run away, although they are well treated.

September 9th.—Fine weather. The *Penguin* and *Zee Leeuw* arrive from Dassen Island with 3,230 lbs. seals' meat and 4 half aums oil; also about 4,000 fresh eggs and fish to be sold to the ships. The last Company's slave recaptured to-day. Only the 7 Angola ones, who had previously deserted, are still at large. Arrival of the *Hardt* of Rotterdam; left on the 27th May with 134 men; one dead.

The boat returns from Robben Island with shells.

Bought 13 oxen and 31 sheep for beads and tobacco. According to Doman and Eva, more will be brought daily.

September 10th.—Dark, cold, W. weather.

September 11th.—Full Moon; lovely sunshine. Arrival of the *Goeree*, consort of the *Hardt*, 160 men, 2 dead. The *Penguin* and *Zee Leeuw* leave for Dassen Island, having sold all their fish and eggs.

Bought 6 cows for copper and 26 sheep for beads and tobacco.

September 12th.—Same weather. A similar lot of animals obtained.

September 13th.—Dark, N.N.E. weather.

September 14th.—Clear sunshine, S.S.E. breeze. Obtained 4 cows and 26 sheep.

The boat leaves for the Island.

September 15th.—S.S.E. wind. Obtained 6 cows and 31 sheep from Cochoqua's people, who are daily begging for the release of Boubo, alias Simon, as he is one of them.

About Herry they shake their heads, saying that he is welcome to remain on the island all his life, as the "causa movens" of all the troubles.

September 16th.—Lovely sunshine. The ships busy taking on board refreshments. Sent on board our despatches for India.

During the night 3 of the Company's best sheep were stolen from the granary, three hours' distant from this, whilst the sentries, who had neglected their duty, found two others in the morning before the door, tied together with a plaited garter. These thefts have not apparently been committed by Hottentooes, but most likely by some of the freemen. Matter to be investigated. Return of the boat and a letter from Overhagen. He requests some butter for castrating 25 rams, not castrated in season. "Three or four have been rubbed with snake lard (*slangensmout*), which has also been dropped into the wounds; it is too thin, however, and runs out. Simon the Hottentoo is ill and can hardly carry shells; he is getting very thin. Please send us two blacks to keep the boat going. The shells are to be brought from the other side of the island." 15th September, 1658.

September 18th.—Fine, warm weather.

Resolution, 18th Sept.:—As the cattle trade has revived and is proceeding nicely since Khamy, alias Jan Kou, has been discharged, and as the natives appear more favourably disposed to us in consequence; and as daily the Cochoquas especially (viz., the real

1658.

— Saldanhars) beg for the release of Boubo, alias Simon, one of their own tribe, promising to bring on cattle, and associate with us on confidential terms; further, as it is considered that a closer inquiry into the murder of the young man will be of little use, and that as soon as the matter is spoken of a terror falls upon them, whilst they think that we are still keeping our eyes upon some of their chief men, it was decided that it would be more advantageous for the Company to associate with them on friendly terms, so that their confidence in us may grow stronger, and we in course of time be enabled to discover what is now a secret.

The danger is also to be considered to our intercourse with the natives should Boubo die, who is now very ill. It may be thought that we have killed him; and therefore it was decided to get him back from the Island as soon as possible, and give him back to his friends, and so thoroughly secure their confidence.

No one, however, says a kind word for Herry, excepting his niece Eva, who, living in the Commander's house, is continually, even as Esther did in the case of Mordechai, begging for her uncle. She is however told that he does not wish to return, but desires to remain there always, as his countrymen hate and wish to kill him. Consequently we show him a kindness by protecting him and providing for him, &c.—Signed by Riebeeck, de Man, J. v. Harwarden and Gabbema. Doman caused great joy among the Hottentoes when he informed them of this Resolution.

The ensign and fiscal went out during the night to search for the stolen sheep. Arriving at the house of Vasagie's company, they found there, after a long search at daybreak near the house, in a square hole near a tree on their land, two extraordinarily fine wethers, still with their hides on, and the insides only shaken out a little. They were brought home by the soldiers, and already smelling a little, they could therefore only be used by the slaves. The thieves therefore stole more than they could very well eat.

The men of Vasagie's summoned to the Fort by the messenger, in order to be examined, one of them having already let the cat out of the bag. The following appeared:—Pieter Visagie and Hendrik Janz: Schayck of Montfoort. The latter at once declared that he was guilty, but that neither Visagie nor any of the others had had a hand in it; only Willem Pietersz of Nymegen, free servant and agriculturist of the Commander on the Bosheuvel, 3 hours distant from this, had last night taken away and brought home the third sheep. The ensign and fiscal were at once sent to fetch him, and Schaik was imprisoned under the gate.

The men in search of the slaves returned after 10 days' absence. Had found none; but everywhere many rhinoceroses and elephants in troops of hundreds, elands, harts, steenbucks, &c.; also wild horses, which the Hottentoes are daily urged to get for us. They are however not inclined to catch any, whatever we may promise them. Willem Pietersz brought in at midnight and imprisoned.

September 19th.—Lovely weather. The two prisoners examined confessed that they alone had done the deed, but did not know how to roast or cook them. One whole sheep was still lying with its entrails entire at the "Bosheuvel" in the bushes, and already decomposed.

The boat leaves for Robben Island in a strong S.E. with a letter to the Superintendent, ordering him to send Boubo back and load the boat with shells. "Said Hottentoo is not to be employed on the work, for which a slave and his wife are sent. With the next trip somebody will come over to see how many half bred ewes there are and how many wethers. You are to give us regular information. If Jasper Jansz Duyff wishes to see us about his free papers he is to be sent hither. We send the butter for castrating the sheep." 19th September, 1658.—Signed by Riebeeck and de Man.

September 20th.—Calm, cloudy weather. Riebeeck inspects the farms, and also beacons off lands for new freemen. Fine rain in the evening.

September 21st.—W. rainy weather. The sheep thieves re-examined. They adhere to their former confession. Dry weather in the evening. The boat returns with Boubo, who is joyfully received by his friends, who had two fine bulls and three sheep ready for his liberation. They were accepted, but paid for with copper, beads, and tobacco. This was considered by the Hottentoo's as a great piece of courtesy on our part, and they promised to do their best to bring more cattle. They were greatly satisfied, and did not wish to talk about Herry, who had only, they said, done them mischief and been the cause of all the unpleasantness. For their part he might stay on Robben Island all his life to prevent all future quarrels and such suspicious thoughts as prevented them from approaching and trading with us. They were also ready to catch some wild foals for us; but did not know how to manage antelopes and tusks, a subject on which we had been pressing them from the commencement. The antelopes ran too fast and the elephants were too formidable.

The superintendent of the granary examined about the careless manner in which the watch had been kept, and to transmit the matter to the fiscal.

September 22nd.—Bleak, cold, dry, windy weather; S.E.

September 23rd.—Warm, calm weather. Pieter Otegno, the youngest son of Gogosoa, the fat Captain of the Caapmen, sold us 3 sheep. Doman and Eva request to visit their friends, and ask us for some presents for them, which would go in payment of their services as interpreters. They received some copper, iron, beads, tobacco, bread and brandy, &c., as presents for Eva's mother, friends, and all the natives to be visited by her, who promised to urge them to bring on a larger quantity of cattle, likewise young horses, tusks, civet, amber, pearls (samples of which were shown her), hides of elands, harts, steenbucks, &c. They promised to do their best, and in the evening they gratefully thanked us, when

1658.

leaving, in nice Dutch terms. When, however, Eva had arrived outside at the hut of Doman, she at once dressed herself in skins, and sent her clothes home, intending on her return to put them on again. She promised, however, that she would not forget God the Lord, whom she had learned to know in this house, but always think of Him, and do her best to learn, &c.

September 24th.—Calm, oppressive weather. Eva left early, leaving word that she hoped to bring with her on her return natives with much cattle. Doman said the same thing. Riebeeck having visited the corn lands, de Man buys 5 cows and 15 sheep for copper and beads from the Cochoquas. Death of a free servant of the sawyer Leendert Cornelisz, without leaving anything except debt incurred in Holland.

September 25th.—Cloudy, N.W. weather. The *Penguin* and *Zee Leeuw* return from Dassen Island with 5 half aums oil and 3,210 lbs. salted seals-meat for the slaves, also some fish and eggs to be sold among the burghers. Fine serviceable rain for the crops, &c., it having been dry for a very long while. The sheep thieves again examined; more of their kind discovered.

This evening a foal was caught by a large leopard near the fort, and not 4 yards from W.C. Mostaert, who was busy with his slaves cutting some wood. The female slave seeing the foal under the feet of the leopard, approached the brute with an axe and cut it so thoroughly in the head and neck that it remained dead on the spot. The foal's throat had however already been bitten off and its blood sucked out. As horses are very scarce here, the Company's loss may be calculated at f100.

September 26th.—Fine wet weather, W. wind. At night Doman returns with 3 of Gogosoa's sons, viz., Oringhkimma, alias Schacher, the eldest; Khuma, alias Jan, the 2nd; and Peter Otegno, the 3rd, who had before this been seized with Schacher, and since remained away on account of fear. However seeing that Khamy and Boubo had been released, they had recovered their confidence, and brought 4 cows and 13 sheep for sale. They promised to bring more, and stated that they would confide in us as long as Henry is kept on the island.

September 27th (New Moon).—Rainy weather; in the afternoon S.S.E. and dry. Chaihantima, one of the Chainouqua Captains, brought 14 cows and 21 sheep. Would not undertake to catch any wild horses or harts, &c., though we offered him big presents, stating that the animals ran too fast, and the Hottentots were not accustomed to do anything which causes them any trouble.

September 28th.—Dry, S.E., would have liked more rain. The sheep thieves again examined; it was found that the servants of the free carpenters Pieter Cley and Dirk Vreem were accomplices, according to their voluntary confession before the Council strengthened with the two free burgher councillors. Their names are Bartholomeus of Swol and Dirk Corn. Jonge-Noteboom of Bodegrave.

Ten cows and 70 sheep obtained from the Cochoquas for beads and tobacco. Eva seems to do much good among them. Doman and some Caapmen told us yesterday that she intends visiting other tribes to encourage all to come down with cattle and make the acquaintance of the good-natured Dutch. She is therefore a much better instrument for the country's benefit than Herry has been. Death of a marine left on shore by the *Louise*, and named François Isaacs of Ghent.

September 29th (Sunday).—Strong S.E., damaging the crops. The *Penguin* and *Sea Lion* return to Saldanha Bay to catch harders to be dried, the Company being provided for 4 months with seals' meat.

September 30th.—Calm, sunshine. Death of 5 slaves and 1 female do., very likely because the men are mostly old and cannot bear the cold climate as well as the younger ones, who have, according to orders, been sent to Batavia. At present, including those recaptured, the entire number of slaves is 83—viz., 34 men and 49 women. The greater number are old and weak; and many half mad and cripples, who can do no work, and are merely a burden. They will, however, soon die off.

Resolution, 30th September, 1658:—Whereas the pigs have very much increased since they have been distributed among the freemen, and it has been found impossible to let them go about with collars round their necks, as ordered by us on the 26th July; further, that many have died in consequence, and the increase has thus been very considerably interfered with; also that the herdsmen are greatly inconvenienced, and the pound fees have become very considerable. Likewise that it is too troublesome for some to enclose their gardens with strong poles, they being not able to keep their own pigs out of them, so that to get rid of the trouble, they have sold them to others, after having selected the best out of the troop, boldly asserting even to the Commander that having sold their own pigs, and finding those of others in their open gardens, they would kill them; and whereas such a proceeding would greatly interfere with the increase so much wanted by the Directors, and as necessary as the growth of grain; and finally that whereas we have as yet not seen them display the zeal required; therefore, according to orders from home, in order to encourage the people to keep and breed pigs, we have, contrary to our Resolution of 26th July, decided to relieve the pigs from their collars and their owners from fines; and to order those who have gardens, and wish to keep pigs out of them, to enclose those gardens so thoroughly that the fiscal may be satisfied, and also the constable. Those who believe that this will be too much trouble must bear all losses which may be sustained, as it is impossible to herd so many pigs so carefully that some cannot escape into a garden; such vagrants moreover are not to be hurt in the least. Offenders to be corporally punished and fined fl00. for each porker *hurt* or killed. The owners however shall keep a Dutch boy or slave for every herd, to keep the animals from the

1654.

—

gardens and properly confined during the night. No one however shall be allowed to hurt those who may break out and get into the gardens. They are to keep them until the morning and then take them to the fiscal, who will investigate the case and do what is required. Those who wish to suffer no loss are to enclose their gardens, just as the Company has been obliged to do. All are warned that there is not the least dissimulation in this order, as the interests of the Company and the public demand that it shall be carried out implicitly. That no one may plead ignorance, this ordinance is affixed at the usual places. (Affixed on the 1st October).—Signed by Riebeek, de Man, Harwarden and Gabbema.

October 1st.—Lovely weather. The 4 sheep thieves mercifully sentenced by the Council, assisted by the burger councillors, because it was the first heavy offence committed by Cape Freemen—as follows: *The chief offender to be thrashed and put in irons for 16 years; the other for 5 years; and the two others, as aiders and abettors, 6 years each. Every one, moreover, is to stand exposed with a sheepskin on his head and shoulders, and all their property to be confiscated.*

October 2nd.—Same weather; sentences carried out. Obtained 3 cows, 1 calf and 12 sheep from the Hottentots; more would have been brought, but it was stated that all the natives were suffering from great sickness. Doman sent out to discover the truth, who is sure to tell us a lie. Eva, we were told, was doing her best to invite every native to visit us, going from one camp to another.

Resolution 2nd October:—As it has been found that the forests which have not yet been given out, except provisionally, are very much destroyed and good timber cut down and left to perish to the great injury of this growing colony, it was decided, that, as the present freemen are already provided with good dwellings, out-buildings, &c., and considering the necessity to provide timber for the free-men who are still to come—also that at present two free sawyers have taken their discharge for fifteen years, who have each received an allotment of forest from which to saw planks, &c., and upon which they have various Dutch servants as carpenters, wagon-makers, sawyers, and slaves—all, whether Company's servants or freemen, shall be forbidden to make use of the forests mentioned, and should they require any timber, that they shall buy what they want from the freemen mentioned at a reasonable price, who have for that purpose become free and obtained pieces of forest land. Further, as some people take wood for fuel from all spots, and generally more than they require, often selling it at high prices to the English and the brickmakers, by which means their draught oxen given them for agriculture are very much exhausted, and not one of these people shows the least grateful feeling for the Company, it was resolved that everyone taking fuel from places beyond his own boundaries shall pay 10 st. for the same, until freemen shall be found willing to take the lease of the fuel forests. However, everyone shall be at liberty to burn and sell what is on his own property.

Branches for peas or beans may freely be fetched from the lower cripple (under) wood and downs-bushes, and also whatever fuel may be required for the kitchen. Everyone, however, shall refrain from cutting the smallest bit, even from the bush standing alongside the *Bosch Rivier* as far as the *Liesbeek River* inclusive, as the whole is a natural protection and close partition formed of different kinds of wood to guard the cattle, which one day or another the Hottentoo's may again attempt to steal. Neither lime nor brickmakers shall be permitted to use the small bushes growing in the downs for their industries, to prevent their destruction and the inconvenience which would be caused to the farmers, who are accustomed to plait the walls of their houses with the same. To carry out their orders effectively the corporal at the granary, the fiscus, and the provost have been strictly ordered to look out for offenders, to confiscate their timber and fuel taken from forbidden quarters, and fine them 3 reals for each offence, viz., $\frac{1}{3}$ pro fisco, $\frac{1}{3}$ for the poor, and the rest for him who makes the seizure. This plan is supposed to be the most serviceable for the Company and this infant colony, and this *placcaat* is to be affixed in the usual way.—Signed by Riebeeck, de Man, Van Harwarden and Gabbema.

October 3rd.—Fine weather. Riebeeck goes out to see what lands are already prepared for sweet potatoes, an important vegetable already abundantly grown in the Company's gardens. As sowing time is past, it is now the right time to transplant it. Everyone was urged to come and fetch a large quantity, and also to bring to the blacksmith at the fort all their sieves and seythes to be repaired, in order to be well prepared when harvest time arrives in November and December. Everyone also busy planting his garden with cabbage, water and other melons, also cucumbers and Indian vegetables to be ready for the Christmas, winter, and Batavia return ships.

October 4th.—Dry weather. The ensign busy brewing beer, and making yeast.

October 5th.—Lovely weather. The beer rising nicely in the cooler; placed in a half aum, it commenced to ferment well. Ordered that more should be brewed to be sent to Holland and Batavia as samples that we may know how long the article will remain good at sea.

Return of Doman. He says that he has been among the Cochoquas and Chainoquas, whom he has invited to visit us with their cattle. We obtained 60 sheep for beads and 10 cows for copper and tobacco.

October 6th (Sunday).—Dark, cloudy weather, calm and dry.

October 7th.—Cloudy and strong W. weather; a little rain; nice for the grain.

The following Placcaat affixed—As it often happens that planks, spars, oars, hooks, empty casks, &c., are washed on shore from the vessels, much of which is still fit for use, and as the freemen take possession of all these things without

1658. — permission ; and further, as independent of the Company's rights to the beach such articles are the Company's property, all are warned at once to show whatever they have found to the fiscus when he visits them, and deliver the whole at the fort within 24 hours, that everyone may be rewarded for his trouble, or that the free-men may receive back what the Company can spare. It is not forbidden to secure wreckage, but everyone is to give notice of the same at the fort, or at the Duinhoop at Salt River, that it may be inspected by the fiscus and a commission, and it may be known what can and what cannot be spared, and in what way the finders are to be rewarded. Offenders to be fined 10 reals. Given and done on the 7th day of October, 1658, &c.—Signed by J. van Rieb-eck.

Dry in the evening ; S.E. wind ; wished for more rain for the crops.

October 8th.—Dry, S.E. Bad for the crops.

Doman arrives with some Chainouquas, bringing 16 cows and 48 sheep, which were bought with copper and tobacco. He reports that Eva is among the Cochoquas, persuading them to visit us with cattle. This Doman, though disliking her, is obliged to confess, and seeing her efforts in our favour, pretends to return with the strange Hottentots and to make himself as agreeable as Eva. We however do not believe that he ever went further than the Caapmen camp, about 5 hours' walk from here, behind the Leopard mountains. When seeing Saldanhars approaching he makes it appear that he went to fetch them. This is plain from the fact that more natives come to us than he is able to inform us of. He seems to lie in wait for them, and follow as they approach without making their acquaintance. More than once the Commander detained him in conversation so that de Man had bought all the cattle before he could interfere, though he begged to go outside, alleging that he was anxious to get the natives to trade. There is however more evidence to show that Eva alone is doing her best for the Company.

October 9th.—Dry weather. Doman absent ; 5 cows and 7 sheep bought from strange natives.

October 10th.—Same weather. Two slaves deserted when the gates were opened this morning ; an old and sickly couple, almost unable to walk without a stick, and incapable of doing anything. They must therefore perish miserably.

October 11th.—Full moon. Lovely weather. Death of a soldier, Simon Sy.

The Commander, with the officials and their wives, go out to enjoy themselves by looking at the beautiful lands. De Man takes charge of things at home, and buys 8 sheep from the natives for beads and tobacco. More expected to-morrow.

October 12th.—Boisterous S.E. weather and drizzling rain. Nothing heard of the missing slaves ; bought 5 sheep.

The following Placard published :— Whereas yellow-wood (the most serviceable for planks and the scarcest in the Cape forests) is cut down and destroyed by everybody ; and whereas there is enough

timber for beams, &c., and the yellow-wood should be economized for planks, for which other trees do not provide the required article, the Governor and Council have decided to warn and forbid freemen and Company's servants, especially the free carpenters and sawyers, henceforth to cut down any yellow-wood except for planks and only in their forests, as according to the *placcaat* of the 2nd all ingress into the forests of others has been forbidden to free carpenters and sawyers, who have each large plots of forest sufficient for their requirements. The *fiscus* charged with seeing that this *placcaat* is strictly carried out. All illegally cut wood to be confiscated and offenders to be fined 3 reals for each offence. This Resolution agreed to as in the best interests of the public and the Company.—Signed by J. van Riebeeck

October 13th (Sunday).—Warm sunshine. Return of Doman with some Caapmen, and only 9 sheep, which we bought. He could not say why more were not brought, but that in 5 or 6 days more would arrive. Others say that he had not dared to go beyond the Caapmen's camp. Eva was said to be with Oedasoa, the chief captain of the Cochoquas, doing her best to invite them to visit us.

October 14th.—Dry, S.E. weather.

The following secret Resolution adopted for the reasons stated.
*Monday, 14th October, 1658:—Whereas all the agriculturists are sufficiently provided with draught and milch cattle, and everyone has at least 50 sheep; and whereas now and then a Company's cow calves, which is not so well looked after by the herds in order to provide for the calf; and whereas no more cows can be given to the farmers, because their debts are running too high, having already exceeded the sum fixed by the Directors in their despatch of 16th April last; and whereas a large quantity should be kept on hand as a necessary refreshment for the ships and to provide food for the residency; but whereas it is also necessary that the breeding and better keeping of calves should be provided for, and it is found that everyone is unwilling to keep pigs because of the great trouble and cost connected with them, &c.; and further, whereas on that account some have sold their pigs to others who have also for the same reason grown tired of them, and among them the Ensign Jan van Harwarden, who possesses the largest number, and for that reason was privileged with a large *gardeu*, above all the other Company's servants, in order to grow carrots, &c., for the pigs; and whereas the said ensign has often proposed to buy some milch cows from the Company in order to use the butter-milk to nourish the sucking pigs, not caring to spend money to buy the milk; but whereas such further privileges above those allowed from time to time to a Company's servant so high in office, though rewarded for extraordinary service and merit, would cause other married servants to murmur, and also the freemen, giving offence to all of them—the Council, having considered the matter without the presence of said Harwarden, could not agree to*

1658.

—

allow the request, as on the 20th August it decided only to allow the farmers to keep cattle, that most of the freemen might be encouraged to take to farming, and other freemen to keep pigs. But as the latter class are getting indifferent about these animals it was, after careful consideration, decided that all freemen and married servants who are willing to keep pigs besides the cattle which each freeman has, shall be benefitted with such cows as may calve among the Company's troop, by way of lease or hire to the highest bidder. The cow and calf to remain the Company's property, and to be returned when the cow is dry. By this plan it is hoped that more inclination will be roused for keeping pigs and that it will go better with the rearing of the calves; so that the cattle will increase in numbers, and as much got out of the cows as the Company paid for them. By this plan the cattle will in course of time cost nothing to the Company.—
(Signed by) Riebeeck, de Man and Gabbema.

Obtained 2 cows and 7 sheep from the Caapmen.

October 15th.—Cold and strong S.E. The cadet Jurrien Bettel-Meyer and company return with the 2 runaway slaves, found near the Leopard hills, N.E. by N. from the Fort, near the salt pans, where no water can be found in the neighbourhood. They would have died there from hunger and thirst, and were very weak and much exhausted. It is evident that they naturally desert and are not harboured by the Hottentooos.

October 16th.—Dry W. weather. Two head of cattle and 8 sheep obtained from the Caapmen.

October 17th.—Rainy weather; W. wind. Bought 18 sheep and 7 cows from the Gorachouquas (tobacco thieves).

October 18th.—Dry, S.E. wind. The boat sent to Robben Island with J. v. Harwarden and the Fiscal to inspect the sheep and the station there. They take the following note to Overseer Overhagen:—"The bearers will inspect the sheep and the station; you are therefore to communicate everything to them, and assist them in all respects, giving them as many sheep as they deem necessary to take with them. Men to collect shells will be sent afterwards. Jasper Jausz: Duyff will remain here until he is restored to health. You receive 1 lb. tobacco, of which you may give Herry a little now and then, also 6 pipes." 18th October, 1658.—Signed by Riebeeck and de Man.

October 19th.—Dry, N. W. weather. The boat returns with 16 fine ewes and the report that Rijk Overhagen takes a laudable care of everything. There are still 444 sheep on the Island, mostly ewes, fine and young, looking like picked animals; with the 16 brought we now have here 573 sheep; so that we have 1022 in all. The freemen have also 300, so that we can command above 1,300. To this number others are daily added; to-day nearly 23 were obtained. Then there is the increase; every day some sheep lamb, so that this industry is at present in a flourishing condition. Then we have the cattle, about 350 in number, whilst the freemen have

00 besides. Total, about 600. The increase is fairly good, and so is the barter, &c.

To-day the two free servants or farmers of Riebeeck reported that last night the 3 male and 3 female slaves attempted to kill them and run away with the draught oxen. For that purpose they had already succeeded in getting one of the two men aside among some bushes, where they would have killed him if he had not been rescued by the other, a strong, determined man.

October 20th.—Cloudy, N.W. wind; rain necessary. God however does not seem to give much this year; rain at night.

The Commander's slaves above mentioned brought to the Fort, and the matter having been further inquired into, it was found that they had arranged with others at the corn lands, who were in hains, to kill the Company's servants there also, and then to run away together; knowing how to take the chains from each other's legs.

The slave of de Man, from the Coast of Guinea, had also been persuaded by a slave in the forest to run away, and told that excepting the few in prison they had 5 men and three women who had decided to run away, but that the boy mentioned had refused, as he stated in broken Dutch. They further stated that they intended to live on Hottentoo flesh, whom they would kill here and there, as they were accustomed to do in their own country, where the victors ate the conquered. He was asked how they would manage to overpower the Hottentoes, who were armed with assegais, arrow and bows, whilst they were unarmed? and the reply was that they would first try to overpower a few and take their arms, and in that way they would gradually be able to attack more powerful parties and take their cattle. Besides there were herbs and roots enough to live on. They had however enough knives to kill the first Hottentoes. This was found to be the case; some had as many as nine, others less, even the women had some stolen here and there. It is therefore necessary to take good care of the Guinea slaves, who are strong, daring fellows. The women are equally courageous. If one of the Commander's servants, the chief cultivator of the lands, had not been a man of courage, or had lost heart in any way, he and many other Company's servants would have been murdered. This treachery has, thank God, been discovered, and therefore a better watch has been provided over the slaves, who, as stated by the boy, believe that they will be able to reach their own country. Some of them had even calculated upon seizing a boat off the ships in the river or on the beach and escape with it, searching for their country by sailing along the coast, &c.

October 21st.—W. wind, no rain. To our surprise Jurien ansz of Amsterdam and 3 men of the *Westfriesland* arrive overland from Saldanha Bay, reporting that their vessel had arrived on the 14th in a desolate condition and full of sick; 12 sheep had been obtained from the natives for the sick, and the freemen there had further supplied them daily with geese, fish and greens from

1658.

— the islands by means of the *Penguin* and *Sea Lion*; 150 sick were in tents on Schapen Island, and 72 had already died. They are therefore in a miserable condition, as they cannot weigh their anchors and so proceed hither, as will be seen from the following letter to the Commander:—"We cannot refrain from informing you of the miserable condition of our men; 72 are already dead, and 150 are very ill on shore with scurvy. We shall not be able to obtain sufficient refreshment here, as we have sent men inland, who have returned without seeing any natives or cattle. We therefore ask you to provide us with such greens and vegetables as you may think will be of service. The *Penguin* could not leave with our letter. We arrived in such a melancholy condition on the 14th that we could not manage the sails. On the 18th May we left the Vlie with 357 men, of whom at present very few are in good health. We are so weak-handed that we cannot weigh our anchor to go deeper into the bay. We do not doubt that you will succour us. We wait for it with great longing. On board the *Westfriesland* 18th October, 1658."—Signed, Jacob Jansz Houtschip and Jacob Syms.

The following Resolution at once taken, 21st October, 1658:—"As it is evident from the verbal report of Jurriaan Jansen and the letter that the men of the *Westfriesland* are in a miserable condition and suffering severely from scurvy, so that help is urgent, notwithstanding that they have already been well supplied with greens, birds and eggs by the Saldanha Bay freemen, it is resolved to send the *Schapenjacht* thither at once with carrots, beet, turnips and radishes, also with as much milk and as many eggs as can be hurriedly collected among the freemen, that the men may the sooner recover and be urged to come hither as soon as possible. It would have been desirable to have sent some cattle also, but the boat being too small, this was impossible. The boat itself is of a small size though decked. Had we a vessel like the *Robbejacht* or the *Tulp* the case would have been different, and the vessel might have been supplied without calling here. This being impossible they are to be ordered to do their best to come hither as soon as possible."—Signed by Riebeeck, de Man, Gabbema and Harwarden.

Bought 14 cows and 24 sheep from the Chainouquas. Doman, after 3 days' absence, returns with the request of the Caapmen and Gorachouquas to be assisted with 20 soldiers, that with them they may attack the Cochoquas, lying in strong force behind the Leopard hills, and capture their cattle, as the latter were doing them mischief and had perpetrated hostilities. He further told us that Eva was at present among the Cochoquas and the wives of Ngonomoa, the chief of that tribe, which is governed by two great Captains, viz., Ngonomoa the chief, and Oedasoa the second. We are sure that she will do her best to invite them to visit us, as they have never been so near. We further believe that the Caapmen and Gorachouquas are doing their best to keep them back, but finding that they cannot do it, they ask for our assistance, promising to provide us with much cattle. Doman was therefore

told that the chief men of the Caapmen and Gorachouquas should visit the Commander to confer with him, &c.

1658.

However, our object remains fixed to get them with their cattle in the drum-net behind the Gable mountains, and after that to invite the Cochoquas and other Saldanhars to come as near as possible, that we may be able to trade and communicate with them without hinder from the others, and keep these Cape fellows in better subjection, that they may carry out their agreement made with us. Appearances are already favourable, though prudence is required.

Nor is it inconvenient that Eva is now among the Cochoquas (the right Saldanhars). She will certainly tell them of our wish to trade with them in all amity. Doman also told us that Eva would only return when the Cochoquas were near us, but as they were showing a hostile feeling towards the Caapmen and Gorachouquas, the latter would not like to see them so near, and therefore requested some soldiers from us to stop them and take their cattle. Doman sent away with our answer.

Death of a female Angola slave.

October 22nd—Calm weather. The boat, well filled with greens, prepares to leave for Saldanha Bay and takes the following letter to the officers:—"Last night the freeman J. Jansz brought your letter of the 18th, and we were informed of your miserable condition caused by scurvy; also that the free Saldanhars had provided you with 12 sheep, &c.; also greens from the different islands, from which various ships, and 3 years ago, the *Salamander*, which had also been in a miserable state, had been well refreshed, so that after a few days they could come up to the Cape. We hope that it will be the same with you. But in order to assist you from here also we send you the boat with the following greens: 9 bags carrots, 10 do. turnips, 39 do. radishes, 50 artichokes, tit-bits for the saloon, 45 bundles leeks and garlick, 35 cans of milk in a cask, 564 fresh fowl and duck eggs in a large and small cask, both open and filled with sand, for the sick and the saloon; also 6 sheep. We would have sent more cattle, having, thank God, an abundant supply; but the boat is too small. If we had a galliot or our lost *Robbejacht* we might have sent you enough to have made it unnecessary for you to call here. You are to do your best to get on, and make use of every favourable breeze. The intervening coast has good anchorage everywhere. We are already expecting you, for experience has shown that the greens mentioned bring a rapid cure. The boat is to return at once to take another cargo for you. Or, if you are ready, it is to come on with you and may be of assistance in calms. You may employ Jur. Jansz, or Jochum Elbertsz, as pilots when you come hither, they know the coast well, &c." 22nd October, 1658.—(Signed by) Riebeeck and de Man.

After the above was written the hunters brought 6 geese, 1 duck, and 2 curlews, which are also sent on as a treat.

1658. The boat leaves in the evening with a S. breeze; we hope that it will reach its destination in about 24 hours.

— October 23rd.—Clear, calm and warm weather; S.E. during the night. To-day a draught ox was carried away by a lion in broad daylight and from the herd. It was quickly followed up and compelled to abandon its prey, and hide in the bushes. It had however already devoured about 4 or 5 lbs. of the meat, and received a bullet through the body; but not being mortally wounded, it had turned towards the shooter, and roared so awfully that the shooter's companion climbed into a tree, and whilst the former was again loading, the lion had gradually and in a stately way marched towards and crept under some bushes. More men coming up with guns, he was not to be found. This occurred about 5 p.m. near the granary. When the Commander passed that way on the road home, he ordered that the lion should again be searched for with some soldiers, and killed if possible, lest, having tasted, he should come again.

During Riebeeck's absence to the corn valleys, de Man bought 2 oxen, 3 cows and 2 calves, also 29 sheep from the Cochoquas. Doman did his best to make these people hateful to us, speaking disparagingly of their cattle, and when the Commander came home in the evening, endeavouring to prejudice him against the said natives, and saying that Eva was only speaking evil of us among the Cochoquas. We, however, believe the contrary.

And as Doman begged hard for the men, he was again told what he had been told before, and that also the lame "Schaapman" should come, in order to confer with us. He replied that he had already sent messengers for the purpose.

October 24th.—Warm sunshine.

The following Resolution adopted, 24th October, 1658:—Whereas notwithstanding by our placaten of 4th May and 13th September last, according to orders from the Directors, the freemen have been forbidden to trade in cattle with natives, but some still continue the practice, especially the freeman Jan Reyniersz, who continues boldly to disobey the orders mentioned, and for the purpose detains the natives at his house, so that seldom any cattle reach the fort without his obtaining some sheep, sometimes amicably, and sometimes even by force, as he lives on the road, killing and eating, instead of doing like the other burghers, and before all looking after the increase; and whereas such private barter has been found to be prejudicial to the interests of the Company and the trade, at present placed on such a favourable footing; it is resolved by the Council, and approved by the burgherraden, in consequence of the boldness and the offences of Jan Reyniersz, to warn and order all for the third time, not to barter any living or dead cattle, directly or indirectly, and under no pretext whatsoever. Offenders to be fined instead of 6, 25 reals for the 1st, and 50 do. for the 2nd offence, $\frac{1}{3}$ to go to the informer. At and after the 3rd offence the fiscal shall proceed against the

offender for disobedience and opposition to the lawful orders of the Government, as ordered by the Directors in the interest of the Company.

And as the Hottentooos have complained that said Reyniersz : calling them to his house and unable to come to terms with them, takes their property by force and beats and thumps them, which naturally causes ill-feeling instead of friendship; and as it is observed that by means of the visits of the Hottentooos at the houses of the freemen somewhat distant from the fort, this forbidden cattle trade is greatly facilitated, and the natives, becoming more clever, find means of discovering in what way they can harm the freemen and rob their cattle during the night—Doman having 2 or 3 nights ago stated that the Cochouquas (to prejudice us against them) had asked him whether the houses of the Dutch could not be set on fire, and whether the Dutch kept watch during the night, &c.—it was further decided to order the freemen henceforth not to allow any Hottentooos *at* and much less *into* their houses. Offenders to be fined 6 reals, that all such injuries and inconveniences besides the burning of the ripe wheat may be avoided as much as possible. Therefore everybody is admonished to keep a good watch at his house —(Signed by) Riebeeck, de Man, van Harwarden and Gabbema.

Only obtained 4 sheep to-day.

October 25th.—Calm hot weather, scorching much young fruit. A slave of the sawyer Leendert Cornelisz : deserted, although he treats his slaves better than all the other freemen. A female slave reported that the fugitive had often threatened to murder his master; so that it will not answer with these Guinea slaves. Everyone is to keep a strict watch in order to prevent his being murdered by them. The same is done in the case of the Company's slaves. Obtained 11 sheep from the Cochouquas for beads, whilst 3 were killed by a lion near the granary, in presence of the herds, who were in imminent danger. A good look out is kept for the brute, in order to kill him, as he does great mischief, having also eaten a sheep of the burgher Steven Jansz.

Cloudy N.W. weather, which we hope will bring us the *West Vriesland*. Some rain during the night.

October 26th.—New moon. Dark westerly weather. One male and one female slave of Steven Jansz ran away, having stolen a pistol and the value of about f40 in clothes. The slave of L. Cornelisz recaptured. Boat returns from Saldanha Bay, bringing the following note:—"Received your letter, and the garden produce, &c, in good order, which we trust will be of service. 113 men are still very weak on shore; hope they will soon improve, but we are too weak to leave. If possible we shall weigh with his spring-tide, and keep Jurriaan Jansz with us. As soon therefore as the sick are a little better, we shall endeavour to move. It would be beneficial if the boat could return to us with another load of refreshments for the speedier recovery of the sick. We had a

1658. — Hottentoo on board to-day, and hope to get some cattle from him. On board the *West Vriesland* the 25th October, 1658."—Signed by Jacob Jansz ;, Houtschip and Jacob Sym.

The quartermaster of the boat reported that the officers intended to leave with the first fair wind, and were preparing the boats to get the sick on board, so that they may already be under weigh.

Death of a Guinea slave.

October 27th.—Cloudy W. weather. Vessel in sight. The wife of Jan Reyniersz : reports that during the night a lion had killed a cow in the kraal, which only having been injured in the neck she wished the Company to exchange for another, as the carcase might be used for the ship. This was allowed, and another cow was given her, the animal, being in calf, to help her further on, &c.

This lion has for some days been going on famously. All the freemen complain that they are dreadfully annoyed by the beast, and have enough to do to protect their cattle, especially at night, when the lion threatens to pull the enclosures to pieces or to dig a passage underneath. They have not been able to catch him in the dark in spite of every attempt. Arrival of the *West Vrieskund*; lost 2 men since writing their first letter. The rest were going on favourably; only 60 still poorly. Refreshments of fresh meat and garden fruit sent on board at once. The sick to be landed. Most of their troubles caused by the long calms at the line. Obtained 7 sheep this day.

October 28th.—Warm sunshine. Strong S.E. at night.

October 29th.—Same heavy wind. Bought 1 ox and 39 sheep from the Cochoquas, who arrived at the fort with Eva. She told us that the Caapmen, when she left the fort, had taken all her things away, and that her mother had not taken any steps to have them restored. She had therefore gone to her sister living among the Cochoquas, and the wife of one of the chief captains named Oedasoa, who had not seen her since she was a baby, and received her with great joy. She had taken the opportunity of fully explaining to Oedasoa our desire to trade with them on friendly terms, and that she had been educated by Mrs. Riebeeck, and that she had learned the Dutch language and also partly our religion, &c. Oedasoa felt favourably disposed towards us, and to show this, had during some days been sending sheep to the fort and also cattle. He also wished to enter into an alliance with us, but was prevented by the Caapmen and Gorachouquas, being afraid that we would help the latter. For that reason Oedasoa did not dare to visit the Commander, in spite of all her efforts to persuade him and the examples adduced by her to prove our patience under the continual wanton acts performed from time to time against us by the Caapmen and Gorachouquas.

She thought that it would be good to send a commission with some presents to Oedasoa, which should take some cinnamon with them, which the Hottentooes had been asking for, also cloves, &c.,

to see whether they also liked the latter, and the very strongest tobacco and brandy obtainable; also one or two persons who could play on the fiddle and (other) instruments, the Hottentos being very fond of music; in short, whatever might serve to draw them nearer and amuse them.

She was told what Doman had said about the Cochoquas, but answered that he was a liar and worthless fellow with a double tongue, endeavouring to prejudice the Dutch against the Cochoquas and *vice versa*; therefore Oedasoa would not come hither. He could easily rout them, but they continually threatened him with our troops, which all the natives are so afraid of, that if they hear us talked about and even see the houses and the fort from afar, they commence to shiver and shake from fear; how then could they meditate any harm against us? *Oedasoa told her also that we should not assist any of the Hottentoo tribes, but leave them to one another in war and peace to do just as they liked.* She was told that such was our intention according to the conditions of peace made with the Caapmen, who did not carry out their part of the agreement, as they kept the Cochoquas back instead of bringing them to us. She replied, "Yes! I was present at the time and told Oedasoa about it;" who said, "Well! Why don't the Dutch take their cattle?" and that she had answered "because we were such good patient people," &c. She added that she would have returned sooner but had been very ill, also her sister, whom she had taught to pray to Our Lord, which all the natives listened to with tears in their eyes, instead of laughing like Doman and the Caapmen, who if spoken to about God always laughed at her. The Cochoquas had however told her to learn everything attentively from us, that afterwards she might be able to teach them, for, she said, she had always prayed, day and night, if she was not sleepy or had not fallen asleep, until her sister had recovered. After that she had instructed her about God and how He was to be thanked for that mercy of restoring her. All this was very pleasant to the natives as already stated, whilst they desired to have further instruction. The Caapmen and Gorachouquas were, however, too angry with her, and would have killed her long ago if they had not been afraid of us. We told her that we had been partly afraid of this, because she had stayed away so long. She replied, "No, sir, have no anxiety; they dare not, they are too afraid of master's people," &c., adding also other reasons.

October 30th.—Same heavy S.E.

The following Resolution adopted. Wednesday, 30th October, 1658:—Eva having made us acquainted with the kindly disposition of the Cochoquas towards us, and with their request not to assist their enemies with our arms, a threat they must hear every day from the Caapmen and Gorachouquas, who further added that we intended to rob them (Cochouquas) of their cattle and capture their chief, just the reverse of what Doman generally says, who insists upon our assisting the

2268. — Caapmen and Gorachouquas—the necessity was felt of obtaining more cattle for the Company by means of barter than could possibly be obtained from the Caapmen, so that it was consequently resolved, as advised by Eva, to send a large present to Oedasoa, now in the neighbourhood, with the ensign Herwerden, and 15 well-armed soldiers, with offers of our friendship and favour, and the declaration that we were prepared to make an alliance with him. Both the ensign and Eva were ordered to do their best to bring Oedasoa to the fort, to enable us to treat him well, and bring about an interview between him and Riebeeck, that eternal friendship might be established, &c. —Signed by Riebeeck, de Man, Harwarden and Gabbema.

Every arrangement at once made for the expedition, which leaves with 4 of Oedasoa's men about 10 a.m. They had a pack-ox carrying the presents, which were:—Seven copper plates, 4 pieces thin and 4 pieces of thick wire, weight, 5 lbs.; 2 "mas" beads of different colours, red, lavender, violet and milk white "quispel greyn"; $\frac{1}{2}$ gross tobacco pipes, 7 lbs. tobacco, 1 box containing 4 tin bottles with Spanish wine and brandy, and another with beer, 100 lbs. bread in two bags, some cinnamon, cloves, &c., in paper parcels, also some white and black sugar. Eva had spoken of all these articles, and neither she nor the 4 men of the Cochoquas wished that any Cape men or Gorachouquas should go or return with them, but that everything should be done without their assistance. This entirely agreed with our view, and was carried out accordingly, trusting that God will bless this effort.

The Caapmen did not know what was going on and dared not ask for whom the presents were. Moreover, as good luck would have it, Doman had been detained on board by the weather, who would otherwise have hindered us with his presence. He is very impertinent, sticking his nose into everything, and when he had landed, and been told of what had occurred, he was very angry, and asked us why we made friends with the Cochoquas, the enemies of the Caapmen and Gorachouquas. *He was told we wished to live on friendly terms with all the natives, none excepted*, who wished to trade with us and be friendly. If, however, Caapmen and Gorachouquas feared annoyance, they might, as they had often been offered, proceed to the back of the Gevel (Gable) Mountains, where we told them that we would protect them well, and where we thought that we would do so thoroughly. He and Peter Otegno, 3rd son of Gogosoa, replied that the Caapmen had already retired to the Steenbergen and the Kloofpass, and should the Cochoquas come nearer, they intended to retire further into the Hout Valley.

October 31st.—Fine fickle weather. Death of Jasper Janaz Duyff in the hospital. *He had been banished from Batavia to Robben Island.* Doman told Riebeeck this morning that the ensign and his men would never return, but would be killed by the Cochoquas, so that we must not blame Caapmen and Gorachouquas for the murder. He was told that we knew better, as the real Saldanhars only cared

for a friendly trade, but that if any harm came to the men their deaths would be revenged on the Caapmen, who were therefore to take care what they were about. Doman said, "Yes! I see the Commander wishes to make friends of the Cochoquas and all the Saldanhars; this is not good, and Eva's fault." The Caapmen are very angry with her. He, however, acknowledged that the chief wife of Oedasoa was the sister of Eva. This will be of great service to the Company. Chaihantima, one of the Chainouqua Captains, arrived in the afternoon without any cattle, requesting to go on board the *West Vriesland*. This was allowed to earn his favour, for he has much cattle, and brought us much, but Doman says he is very friendly disposed towards the Cochoquas, and only for our sakes entered into an alliance with the Caapmen and Gorachouquas.

Return of Harwarden and his men with one of the Cochoquas bringing 3 cows, 2 calves and 19 sheep as a present to the Commander from the great Captain of the Cochoquas named Oedasoa. They were, however, paid for. "The chief had with pleasure accepted our gifts and treated the men well. He however could not make up his mind to come to us, saying that his chief wife was ill and in the family way. She was Eva's sister. He was a beardless man, beyond middle age, small and thin, very stately, and a man of authority among his people. It appears that none of them had ever seen a Christian before. They had asked whether the Dutch Captain was also of high descent, and what sort of people they were, and who the ancestors were of the ensign. Answers were given as required. The whole night was passed in recreation to amuse the ensign, who amused them with the fiddle, whilst a certain soldier made a lot of fun to the great amusement of all. Only at daybreak a little sleep was indulged in. After that, and the enjoyment of a lot of sweet milk, the party left, accompanied by Oedasoa and about a thousand human beings, a distance of fully half an hour on the road. The chief declared that he desired to live in friendship with the Commander, and allow his people to sell as much cattle as they liked, but as there was no pasture in the neighbourhood for their cattle, and no water to drink, a statement confirmed by the ensign, they could not very well come nearer; but if copper and beads were sent, his people would be allowed to trade."

The Ensign, who had served in the States' Army, declared further, "that he had never before seen so many people living in so many encampments all on one spot, all full grown powerful men, living in large round houses made of mats, 30 or 40 ft. in diameter. Oedasoa had 3 houses for himself, much larger even, and so full of assegais, arrows and bows as if they were armour rooms. *His sleeping place was on a very fine mat in a hole in the ground.* Like all the Hottentoots he was dressed in skins, and so besmeared that the fat dripped down his body. This is their greatest pomp.

Their cattle were in such numbers that the end could not be seen. In half a day they would clear all the pastures of the Cape, and whatever besides the Company and freemen possessed.

1658.

— This morning the sheep alone took 3 hours to leave their kraals, and the cattle not less. The latter were bigger than any oxen ever seen at home, and about $2\frac{1}{2}$ ft. broad on the back and the buttocks. They were also so high *that he, being a very tall person,* could scarcely look over the backs of the animals, or reach them with the elbow. In short it was a nation rich in cattle, and able, as they said, to drive the Caapmen into their holes whenever they liked. They, however, did not care about them (?attacking) unless they made too much bother." We have therefore no reason to dread them, for we would be able to trade freely with them if we went to them. For the reasons stated they could not come nearer to the fort. The Eusign further stated that if last night, when he arrived, he had had enough beads and copper he could have bought many oxen. But he stated that he had only brought presents to the chief. Upon this he was fetched in, his pack ox was driven among the others, and orders were given for the protection of our men and their goods.

The following Resolution adopted, 31st October, 1658:— Having heard the favourable report of Harwarden and the reason why the Saldanhars cannot come nearer, their camp being about 9 hours away from this towards the N.E. right across the bay, and that Oedasoa's wife is Eva's sister, and these natives are kindly disposed towards us because of our kindness to Eva, and lastly in order to open trade connections with them—it was resolved to prepare a good lot of copper, beads, tobacco, &c., for the Ensign to take to the Hottentoo's, with another present for Oedasoa, that a large number of cattle may be obtained, &c.—(Signed by) Riebeeck, de Man, Harwarden and Gabbema.

November 1st.—Cloudy weather. Everything prepared for the expedition. Two slaves desert from the service of Steven Jansz, but voluntarily return half starved. Death of a slave woman.

November 2nd.—Harwarden and company leave early for the Cochouquas. He took 17 men and 1 wagon with 6 oxen laden with merchandize for trading with the natives, viz.: 1,000 strings red beads, 3 copper chains of four, 866 lbs. plate and wire copper, 60 doz. tobacco pipes, 105 lbs. tobacco. The present consisted of 7 bottles brandy, $2\frac{1}{2}$ do. sherry, 12 lbs. plate copper, 13 copper bells, 10 do. (smaller ones), 1 copper chain, 1 lb. tobacco, 1 Mas beads. We trust that God Almighty may be pleased to enable us to obtain a large number of cattle. The ensign was ordered to treat Oedasoa in the kindest possible manner, and by means of Eva explain to her sister our case in the most favourable manner, that we may obtain men from them to help our people in the protection of their merchandize and the bringing hither of the cattle bartered, with the promise that they would be well rewarded. This work could be ill performed by our men, as the cattle are unaccustomed to them. We hope for success in 3 or 4 days.

In the meanwhile these Cape Hottentoo's strangely stared when they found that our men had left early in the morning with the

Coccoquas before they had become aware of it. The Chaihantima likewise, who also left to-day with the promise that he also would return and bring a large number of cattle to retain our favour more than the Coccoquas. To encourage him, a small present was given him. We trust that success may crown our efforts.

1658.

-

November 3rd (Sunday).—Fine weather. The Commander and the officers of the *Westvriesland* visit the lands.

November 4th.—Strong N.W. The boat of the *Westvriesland* driven on shore to the east of Salt River. In the afternoon, the weather, having abated somewhat, another boat was sent to Salt River to fetch the one on shore, but it capsized in the surf and 4 men were drowned.

November 5th.—Quiet weather, but heavy seas. Supposed that it must have blown harder at sea than here.

November 6th.—Fine N.W. weather. Hendrik Boom cutting his barley.

Whereas the wife of Ensign van Harwarden (according to the nature of women) is getting anxious about her husband, whose return was expected to-day, we offered her some burghers, not agriculturists, to go and see where the Ensign and his people might be, the Company providing them with food, powder and lead, and also merchandize to see whether they could not also buy some sheep and cattle for the Company, receiving a percentage on every sheep brought. The following volunteered: Elbert Dirksz of Emmerich, married to Harwarden's wife's daughter; H. Hendricksz of Surwarden, both free tailors; Christian Jansz: of Hoesum, free hunter; Jurrien Jansz: of Ameterdam, free Saldanha trader and pilot; Martin Jochemsz: van der Goude, Pieter Jacobsz: of Bodegrave, free fishermen; and Dirk Rinckes, free mower.

Having agreed to give them 30 st. for every sheep, they left this evening (taking also a present for Oedasoa) *via* the fisherman's house at Salt River, in order to be with the Ensign to-morrow and at once bring back some tidings. Elbert Dircksz: to be chief of the expedition, because he had been there once before with his father-in-law.

November 7th.—Calm, warm weather. Return of the Ensign with all his men, bringing 203 sheep and 25 head of cattle; 100 sheep and 7 oxen had been obtained from Oedasoa, and the rest from the chief Captain of the Coccoquas, namely, Ngonomoa. The natives were soon over-supplied with beads, whilst the wire copper quickly came to an end. If more had been at hand, no doubt twice the quantity of sheep would have been obtained. The Hottentots however parted with difficulty from their cattle, however much plate copper was offered. Moreover the trade with Oedasoa would have succeeded better if some of the Gorachouquas, or tobacco thieves, had not arrived among them and caused an immediate hindrance, as translated by Eva. Upon this the Ensign resolved to proceed to Ngonomoa, where he remained until he had sold all his

1658. — wire. He then returned with 2 Caapmen, who had served as interpreters at Ngonomoa's.

The ensign reported that the latter chief's cattle were as abundant as the grass on the fields, so that necessarily they cannot long remain on the same spot, but must move from one place to another. With 20 or 30 good soldiers, 15 or 16,000 sheep or oxen might be taken from them without a blow. This Ngonomoa we knew as the Black Captain, who was at the fort five years ago, in the evening, when the next day, five years ago, Herry stole the cattle. He had asked after Herry, and quietly smiled when he received the reply. He may be considered at least as one of Herry's advisers, upon whom the Commander always had his eye, and from whom by way of reprisal good booty might be obtained. Since that time he has never been here, and consequently it was always believed that he had a share in the deed of Herry.

Oedasoa, though only the 2nd Captain, and of smaller stature, is a more stately and commanding man, and by no means the niggardly and beggarly fellow that the black captain is, who has most extraordinarily trained his men for the begging business, which men were also the same persons against whom the Ensign (when the Hon. Cuneus was here) had in March last been warned, because they had attempted to waylay and rob him of all the copper and tobacco, and then to murder him. Further, when the ensign a few days previously to the theft of Herry had been fishing in the Salt River, he had been driven away to the side of the stream by them, as it was their intention to kill him. It is therefore plain that this black fellow owes the Company something, and that necessarily an eye is kept on him with the hope that he may again one day come to the fort with as few men as he had with him in 1652, and likewise with 200 head of cattle between Salt River and the fortress, none of which he would sell to us, and as he did in 1655, which the Hon. van Goens was a witness of, and when in the same autumn he was stationed in the neighbourhood, when he was visited by the Hon. Frisius and the Commander in his camp, and would not sell a single cow, but as now helped himself by wheedling and begging.

November 8th.—Fine warm weather.

The following Resolution adopted, Friday, 8th November, 1658:—
 As it appears from the report of Ensign Harwarden that Oedasoa's people are abundantly supplied with beads, whilst those of Ngonomoa wish to have copper wire, but also that neither parties are willing to part with their cattle, preferring to sell sheep, and as it appears also that because of the multitude of their cattle they can never stay more than a fortnight on the same spot, and must move like flying armies, so that they can only be caught like birds in the air, and must be taken advantage of whilst here, if we wish to get as much cattle as possible, it was resolved to send as soon as possible another expedition to Ngonomoa with enough copper wire for 1,000 sheep, and beads for those who may want them. Also, enough plate

copper for 80 or 100 head of cattle, and should not enough be obtained there, the expedition is to proceed to the Chainouquas, about 10 or 12 hours' distant on foot in the direction of False Bay, where these two chief captains of the Cochoquas are camped in the middle of the land of Africa, and the Charugriquas towards the sea side of Saldanha. *Therefore these three tribes, of which the Cochoquas are the most powerful, enclose, or with their encampments enclose, the whole region between both the seas of India towards the East and Ethiopia on the west. The whole breadth of the land between the Mountains, and the beautiful valleys, are travelled over by them, and therefore as they are here now, the chance is to be taken advantage of.* The Ensign is therefore again to be despatched with 17 or 18 men, a wagon and oxen, and also a present to the chief, &c.—Signed by Riebeeck, de Man, van Harwarden and Gabbema.

The *Westvriesland* leaves during the night with our papers for India, and a half aum of beer as a sample; also 12 young ostriches as presents for Indian Princes, especially for the Emperor of Japan.

November 9th.—Fine, but too warm for the fruit, corn, &c. Strong S.E. at night.

The free fisher Martin J. Vlockaert and another, viz., J. Adriaensz., both of de Goude, were searched for on board the *Westvriesland*, but not found. Their house at Salt River had been denuded of everything—fowls, &c., all gone. This Martin owes the Company f395 6 10, part of which is debt contracted in Holland. The other has f24 to draw, but many of the freemen are also great losers. Therefore in order to prevent such desertion by sea and their injurious results, it will be necessary to forbid the freemen to go on board.

The volunteers who had gone in search of the Ensign return about 9 p.m. When they arrived in the morning at Oedasoa's camp, they found all busy packing the oxen and preparing to leave. They therefore only obtained 30 sheep for beads, and Eva told them that the natives had parted with all which they had intended to sell; moreover that she would proceed inland with her sister and after that pay a visit to the Commander; that she would also keep faith with us, as she had a Dutch heart inside of her, that she would never forget us, but do for us what she could, &c. Like her sister and brother-in-law she had, as if she were a lady of quality, been placed on an ox according to the native custom. The others had to walk. Heavy S.E. during the night.

November 10th (Sunday).—Full moon. Harwarden leaves early in the morning with a wagon load of merchandize and 17 soldiers for the camp of Ngonomoa. He has also with him two trusted Caapmen, one named "Little John" (Cleijn Jan) a clever little fellow of about 13, and the other called Siginman, more than 30, who ere this has more than once accompanied the Ensign inland and been very true. They are to serve as interpreters. Little John performed this office last time at Ngonomoa's, as he can fairly speak Dutch. Doman dares not go, as Eva has made him stinking

1658.

among the Cochoquas, whom she told that he was always urging us to attack, with the assistance of the Caapmen. He is therefore obliged to remain near the fort, and dares not go $\frac{1}{2}$ a league from it for fear of being killed. No one thinks of Herry or cares about him, but in consequence of our action in his case they have become dreadfully afraid of us. Eva, being so thoroughly loved by her sister, seems to have forgotten Herry; very likely because she is so young, not being more than 16 or 17 years old. When last here, she told us that her sister was going to give her a husband, the owner of much cattle and sheep and a great Captain. Time will show.

Heavy S.E. during the night and very dry weather. As it is clearly the case that the two fishermen above named have run away in the *Westvriesland*, their land and house, nets, boats, &c., were seized for the Company and the following notice affixed on the land:—"Whereas M. J. Vlockaert and J. Adriaensz, fishermen, both from de Goude (or Ter Gouw), have absconded to Batavia in the *Westvriesland* and showed their faithless character by leaving a large debt behind them, all their property has been seized for the Company; and as some have already been so bold as to take the fowls and other articles in the garden and the house, it is notified, in order to check such further spoliation, that everyone is expressly forbidden to do the least damage to the houses of these deserters or to anything on the place. Offenders to suffer corporal punishment and to pay all the debts left behind by the runaways, or even to undergo heavier punishment. Should anyone however having no land of his own, be willing to buy said land (6 morgen), a part of which has been ploughed and dug, and planted with vegetables, and also the boats, nets, &c., he is to apply at the fort to the Commander for the conditions. Tell this to others." A ship anchored off Lion's Rump because of the S.E. to wait, just like the whole return fleet in 1656 under Commander Crab, until the wind abates, which never lasts longer than 3 or 4 days.

November 11th—Same S.E. wind. In order to prevent further desertions the following notice was published prohibiting freemen from boarding any vessels:—

That to prevent such desertion of freemen, so injurious to the interests of the Company in consequence of the losses they leave behind, not one of them, their servants, or slaves, is allowed to go on board of any vessel, home or foreign, whether not with their own boats, or those of the Company, and who have beforehand received special written permission from the Commander. Offenders to be fined 20 reals, and to be punished more severely for the future.

All, especially the freemen, are likewise told and expressly warned, that if any of them, and without injury, within 24 hours, shall be taken out of the dwellings, or shall be compelled to leave them, in consequence of this order they will be required to pay 20 reals.

and persecuted as robbers by the fiscal in the ordinary way. 11th November 1658.—Signed by Riebeeck.

1658.

H. Boom reports that during the night a slave of his had run away, and that the one of Visagie had returned, quite famished, like those of Steven. It was ordered not to punish them, that seeing that there is nothing to eat in the country, and voluntarily returning without being punished, they may be encouraged to come back after desertion.

November 12th.—Same S.E. wind.

November 13th.—Ditto. Death in hospital of Willem Lammertsz of Waert, late arquebusier on the *Westriesland*.

Resolution 13th November, 1658 :—Whereas M. J. Vlockaert and J. Adriaensz of Gouda have deserted on the 8th inst., and the first-mentioned, amongst other debts owing to various freemen, left behind a debt of f395 6 10 (f250 of which he contracted in Holland and owes to a certain H. Egbertsz, and for which the Company can no longer be responsible), f247 14 4 of which he owes the Company, and which cannot at all be realized out of his assets, as he took away what he could carry; and whereas his partner Pieter Jacobsz of Bodegraven is likewise responsible for the debt, and consequently claims the half of what is left, requesting that the house, ground, &c., may be given to him alone for the f247 14 4, as he had helped to cultivate everything, &c.—it was resolved to grant his request and make him alone responsible for the whole debt. Further that the debts of the fugitives shall not be written off until we have received instructions from Batavia. Extract of this Resolution given to Bodegraven and likewise the title deeds of the ground, none having as yet been issued in consequence of the travels of the surveyor inland.—(Signed by) Riebeeck, de Man and Gabbema.

H. Boom finds his slave among the corn, where he had been lying down from laziness, which is very much observed among the slaves.

November 14th.—S.E. wind. Doman arrives with one of the Cochoquas despatched yesterday by the Ensign from Oedasoa's camp, with the following note:—“We have not reached our object, though we obtained from Ngonomoa 80 sheep and 11 cows; thence we proceeded northwards as far as under the Klapmuts, where we found Oedasoa, where we got nothing. *It is not advisable to visit others, as the roads cannot be passed by the wagon*, besides it would take about 12 days to find them. We are therefore obliged to return. We are still well, and commend you to the (care of) the Supreme Being.”—(Signed) J. v. Harwarden.

P.S. After two days we intend to return.

November 15th.—Heavy S.E. Bad for the corn, which is ripening and suffering much, so that it must be cut before it is thoroughly ripe. The Hottentoo left *with the following letter to Harwarden* :—“We received your letter and regret that you have not succeeded in your design to secure a large number of cattle, and that you have obtained only 80 sheep and 11 oxen. It is evident

that the Hottentoo's only sell what they wish to get rid of, viz., all their worst animals; for daily some die. You should therefore proceed no further inland or delay any longer at the camp of Ngonomoa lest you run any risk of being surprised and massacred by his tribe, just as they tried to do in your case when the Hon. Cuneus was here in order to obtain the copper. His evil deeds are still fresh in our memory even after the lapse of 5 years. You may, however, visit *en passant* the Gorachouquas (or tobacco thieves), if not too far out of the way, to see what you can get from them. But be on your guard everywhere, especially among the latter, as they also are faithless rascals and thieves. Do not delay longer than necessary. The harvest is ripening and the men are wanted. 15th November, 1658."—(Signed by) Riebeeck and de Man.

The wind having abated somewhat, the boat was got ready to take refreshments to the vessel anchored outside since Sunday last and *the following note* :—

"As the S.E. wind has prevented you from coming into the bay, and we believe that you are *De Harp* from Zealand, we send you with the boat 2 sheep and some vegetables. It is extraordinary that the S.E. has blown such a long time in succession; should it blow again, then please take good care of our boat, as it is small, and not well able to ride out a South Easter." 15th November, 1658.—(Signed by) Riebeeck and de Man.

Heavy S.E. again in the afternoon.

November 16th.—The boat leaves and reaches the ship in safety. Vessel makes an attempt to reach the bay, but is obliged to anchor about 3 leagues to the N.N.E. from the Fort.

The Ensign returns with 105 sheep and 11 cows. He reports that no more cattle could possibly be obtained, as the natives were fast retiring inland, not staying more than 2 or 3 days on one spot. More than 3 or 4 weeks' travel would have been necessary to reach the Chainouquas. Nothing could be obtained from the Gorachouquas, and it is evident that all are over supplied with beads and copper, or had sold whatever cattle they wished to get rid of—*the refuse of their flocks*, as is evident from the deaths occurring daily. They however ascribe these deaths to a mortality which had ravaged their flocks this year; this may be true to a certain extent, but they have as much grass as there is cattle. Nevertheless they will not part with any; we must therefore await their return next year.

Only 2 or 3 tusks had been seen, also some rhinoceros horns, but the latter had not been bought. They had been encouraged to collect tusks and catch some young horses, which are so extraordinarily coloured or marked as is seen nowhere else in the world, and as rarities would be above price. This is seen from two pieces of skin brought by the Ensign, one of a young colt and one of an old horse, of which they make shoes similar to those worn by the Minorites. *They sang their old song about catching harts or bringing the skins hither, declaring that the animals ran too*

fast, and that they were not in the habit of taking so much trouble. They were satisfied with the increase of their stock, whose hides they required for clothing, so that the prospects on this matter are getting beautifully less. The prospects for agriculture however are very fine. Everywhere fine lands for agriculture have been found, and not subject to the heavy S.E. winds. *The Ensign had during his absence encountered no wind, but from afar had seen Table Mountain covered, and concluded that it was blowing great guns here, which was the case for 8 days,* an occurrence which had never taken place during the $6\frac{1}{2}$ years of our stay here. Good land for agriculture is therefore not wanting at a distance of $\frac{1}{2}$, 1, 2, 3, or more days from this per wagon. Every day more is discovered. *Moreover we are finding out more about the Hottentoo's, and as the number of freemen increase, we shall be able better to get on without them, and have less fear of them.*

November 17th.—Calm sunshine. The *Harp* anchors in the bay, from Zealand 31st May; 128 men on board, 5 women and children included; 4 deaths, 1 man jumped overboard. Called at Sierra Leone; had been becalmed on the line 8 weeks; the men suffering from scurvy; unpleasantness between the skipper and officers; charges handed to the Commander. S.E. in the evening.

November 19th.—Calm. The charges examined. Found that the officers wished to have greater liberty with the wines than the skipper would allow, and such-like quarrels, interfering with the authority of the skipper. Commander goes on board to enquire further into the matter and not needlessly get the parties on shore. W. wind and cloudy weather.

November 20th—Arrival of the *Zeeleeuw* from Saldanha Bay, bringing 700 lbs. dried fish and some eggs. The *Penguin* arrived leaky and empty.

November 21st.—Calm. Riebeeck visits the lands. The freemen and Harwarden, with Company's men, busy reaping barley. Some of the seamen *busy clearing the fresh river Liesbeeck*, which in many places was found to be the depth of a pike, and if deepened everywhere will become a fine enclosure for the cattle of the Company and freemen. *Those seamen who were agriculturists were used as reapers and exchanged for others.*

November 22nd.—Same weather.

Resolution, 22nd November, 1655:—The Council of the Fort, having at different times read over the charges against the skipper Conwallis of the flute ship *De Harp*, brought by the bookkeeper Joost de Vos, c.s., consisting of different absurdities and dissipations of which said skipper has been guilty, and also the notes of the skipper referring to what passed at table among the guests and other officers; likewise having taken full evidence and made personal inspection; further, having noted the personal comportment of the parties interested, concludes that the skipper takes more brandy than is becoming to one in his station; that the chief mate is as bad as the skipper, if he can only

1658.

— get liquor, going at it for 4 or 5 days at a time, and should he get it always, would always be drunk, so that it is difficult to say who of both is the best (or worst) as appears from the evidence (which however, mainly refers to the skipper's irregular conduct), though it is also evident that said skipper is blameless as a navigator in discharging his duties. Resolved, as there are no competent men at hand to make a change with, and the ship cannot be delayed, to leave the officers mentioned in their respective offices and maintain the skipper in his position; further to advise the officers, instead of finding fault with the skipper (especially the first mate, who also takes too much) and divulging his failings to the crew, to keep proper discipline and respect the orders of their superiors, a most necessary thing to do on such a long voyage, for the safety of all and everything. And as it has further been found that the bookkeeper took, according to the opinion of the skipper, and on his own authority, with the mate and others at table, more than their share allowed them of French and Spanish wines, and which the skipper wishes to reduce somewhat, though unable to do so; he is admonished to refrain from doing so any longer, but to help the skipper in the maintenance of his authority, and to drink less. He is likewise with the skipper to keep a proper account of the consumption. This the skipper seems to have always properly done, in spite of his dissipation. And that all might sail with the least amount of quarrelling towards Batavia, the following saloon passengers, considered to be the most quarrelsome and of the least importance in the ship's management, are to remain here and wait for other ships, viz.: the corporal of the soldiers, to be exchanged for ours; the chief surgeon, ditto for ditto; the boatswain, always drunk and quarrelsome, and the gunner. Further, some peasants on board to be exchanged for some of our men here. And whereas the steward, C. F. de Graaff, has forgotten himself so far as to lay hands on the bookkeeper Joost de Vos, he is sentenced to fall three times from the yard and to receive 100 lashes before the mast, also to pay 20 reals, and to be kept on shore until the fine has been paid. He is however to proceed with his ship as steward in order to account for a leakage of some casks of Rhine wine shipped for Batavia, in whose hands he is left with the whole case between the skipper and bookkeeper. (Signed by) Riebeeck, de Man, Harwarden and Gabbema. Death of P. Bruyn of Caspelhem. To-day a man of the *Harp* busy working in the river (Liesbeeck) to clean it somewhat, was bitten by an adder on the side of the foot, which began to swell very much and to get inflamed, but when brought into the Fort and doctored by the barbers, the swelling decreased and also the fainting fits. We hope for the best. The Hottentots know of efficacious and immediate remedies, but none of them were at hand, otherwise we would have employed them, having had sufficient proof of what they can do.

November 23rd.—The steward undergoes his sentence. Death of a slave girl.

November 24th.—The boat sent to Robben Island with the following letter :—“ Boat sent for the spars washed on the Island, which she is to bring hither; you are also to come and state how many sheep there are on the Island; Elias Giers to take charge in your absence. Your provisions you will take with you on your return. Peter Heynse goes with the boat; let him inspect the Island thoroughly; he has promised to help in carrying the spars. You are also to report on the rabbits.”—Signed by Riebeeck and de Man.

November 25th.—Cloudy weather and calm; at night as yesterday a heavy S.E.

November 26th.—Ditto.

November 27th.—Wind abates during the night.

November 28th and 29th.—Calm W. weather. The boat returns with the timber and Overhagen, who reports that there were on the Island 474 sheep, which added to the 932 here gives the number of 1406; with those of the freemen the quantity is now 1756. The Company further has here 420 oxen and the freemen about 200, mostly consisting of draught oxen and milch cows. The rabbits were multiplying, and the snakes were nearly all killed. Things look bright.

November 30th.—Cloudy weather. The *Harp* receives her despatch and our papers for Batavia.

Resolution 30th November, 1658—“ Whereas Overhagen has reported that last year more than 120 sheep had died from rain and cold (on Robben Island) through want of sheds, and that the remaining 474 are as fine and large as calves, and that to keep them in condition and for breeding, proper sheds should be erected; the Council, considering the necessity of making those sheds, resolves to order the men in the forest to prepare the following timber for a shed 100 ft. long and 18 broad, the present one being too small viz.: 35 poles 6 ft. long and 5 or 6 inches thick; 500 ft. for girdings, &c., 200 spars of 15 ft. each, 2 frames and doors through which to remove the dung, which is to be brought hither by boat for the gardens. The sides to be closed with planks. It was also resolved to prepare wood for a large kraal at the granary, where the best pastures are, in which to keep the cattle during the night; so that during the day they may feed in the neighbourhood and as far as Boschheuvel, or on the large flat beyond the Liesbeeck. This is not only necessary to keep them from the lands of the freemen, but likewise to secure the latter’s cattle. Moreover a change of pasture is necessary, as we have such a large troop now, for as long as they feed on one spot, the other has time to grow again. Besides the country behind the Lion’s hill, granted to Riebeeck by Com. van Goens, has been entirely eaten off, so that a broad road must be made from H. Remajenne’s dwelling in order to enable the cattle to proceed to the pastures.

Whilst the wood for Robben Island is being prepared, the carpenters here are to finish off the stables, with corn lofts above, for

1658. the sheep and cattle, on both sides of the kraal, which must also be renewed, the wood for which is also ready, the earthen walls being too weak.—(Signed by) Riebeeck, de Man, van Harwarden and Gabbema.

December 1st (Sunday).—Warm S.W. weather.

December 2nd.—Cloudy N.W. weather; some rain fell, greatly to the benefit of the fruit.

December 3rd.—Dark weather. The *Harp* leaves, but only after a gun had been fired from the fort.

Resolution 3rd December, 1658:—“Whereas the steward Jacob Beekman, finding the work in the stores too much for him, has proceeded to Batavia as cooper, it was resolved that as the work in the stores, in consequence of the growing requirements of freemen, &c., is much heavier now, instead of a steward a dispenser should be appointed, and to select Jochum Blancq of Lubeck for the office, as he is an experienced man, at f24 per month. (Here follows copy of appointment). And in order to economise labour as much as possible the trumpeter is to command the *Schapenjacht* and to have another man with him. He is likewise to be second Superintendent on Robben Island, so that if Overhagen comes over he may remain there, Overhagen taking his place on board.—(Signed by) Riebeeck, de Man, van Harwarden and Gabbema.

December 4th.—Fine weather. Riebeeck visits the corn lands to look after the reapers, who were all hard at work. His vineyard on the Boschheuvel look splendid, so that others may perhaps be urged to do likewise.

December 5th.—Cloudy N.N.W. weather and rain.

December 6th.—Calm clear weather, during the day W.S.W. wind. Death of Jan Bundervoet, master gardener, in whom the Company has lost a faithful and industrious servant. During the first year after our arrival we also lost such a man a few months after he had come here. The rest are all a lazy lot, and out of 100 two like the deceased will with difficulty be found.

December 7th.—Same weather. Two free carpenters, Pieter Bulussen Cley and Dirk Vreem, fought with knives; the latter dangerously wounded in the side. Cley fled inland.

December 8th (Sunday).—Fine lovely weather.

December 9th.—The same. P. Cley caught.

December 10th (Full moon).—All busy riding their grain home.

December 11th.—Dark N.W. weather and a little rain. Cley examined, and confesses; escapes with the chain on his legs from above the gate, whilst the provost was getting the tubs. Not yet found.

The Saldanha freemen's boats arrive from Dassen Island with oil and eggs.

December 12th.—Fine weather. The shepherds find the chain of the prisoner, which had been sawn off. The boat leaves for Robben Island. Bought a poor cow and 9 sheep from the tobacco

1658.

—

thieves (Gorachouquas). Among them were some of Oedasoa's people, who were treated with bread, tobacco and brandy.

December 13th.—Fine W. weather. The boat returns from the island with report that 13 lambs had been born, so that we have there now 487.

Resolution 13th December, 1658:—“As much salt is annually required for the Company and freemen, and the collection in the pans, if done by the Company's servants, is too expensive, and very hard for the garrison, which being at the saltpans and not under the eye, do as little as they like, and as, if everyone is allowed to collect as much as he wishes, the salt would soon be spoilt and become as impure as the stuff collected by the Hottentos, who only take a very little at a time; and as according to Hon. van Goens' instructions salt should also be sent to India, it was resolved to hand over to the free Saldanhars for this season all the saltpans of the Cape, big and small, wherever they may be, on condition that they are to take the salt out of the pans as cleanly as possible and protect the heaps under matting. &c., that the salt may not melt and may be fetched the whole year, in dry or wet weather, by the Company's wagons. The collectors however not allowed to sell salt to anybody, or give any away, but only to the Company, which is owner of everything and of the land, and at the rate of one real per full leaguer. And in order properly to maintain the rights of the Company, the following interdict is published:—

“Whereas (as stated above) the saltpans have been given over to the free Saldanha men on the conditions mentioned, all are again, in accordance with the prohibition formerly published, expressly forbidden to take any salt from the pans, and neither by means of the Hottentos, directly or indirectly, or under any pretence whatever, and however near the salt may be to their own dwellings. Offenders to be fined 10 reals for the 1st, 20 for the second offence, and to be arbitrarily punished after that; also to be prosecuted for stealing Company's property. The pans given to the free Saldanhars for their profit and for the convenience of the Company and all the freemen; $\frac{1}{3}$ of the fine to go to the free Saldanhars, $\frac{1}{3}$ to the Fiscal and $\frac{1}{3}$ to the poor.—(Signed by) Riebeeck, de Man, Harwarden and Gaboema.

December 14th.—Rough N.W. rainy weather. Death of Dirk Vreem in the hospital. Post-mortem examination held by the surgeons in presence of commissioners; “Liver found wounded and mortified, causing death. Surgeons astonished that he lived so long.” 14th December, 1658. (Signed by) William Robbertson and Pieter van Clinckenberg, in the presence of us R. de Man, J. v. Harwarden and A. Gabbema fiscus, and secretary.

December 15th.—N.W. wind and rain.

December 16th.—Ditto. The boat proceeds to Robben Island with the timber for the sheds, and a letter:—“We do not know whether any good stone exists on the island as supports for the stands, and will send you some if required. We send

1658. — you some heavy wood for beacon fires to guide the ships; and to serve instead of pitch rings, which are costly and not so good. *A load of fuel only costs £3 if brought to the fort.* With the last portion of timber Riebeeck will come over himself, to select the site for the kraal and shed. Should you get serviceable stone we can send you fuel for ballast. You are to remain on the island until Riebeeck's arrival. Elias Giers is to return with the boat. Let us know whether the island produces grass for geese." 16th December, 1658.—Signed by Riebeeck and de Man.

The boats return to Dassen Island and Saldanha Bay for oil, fish, eggs, &c. Four of the Saldanha men remain here to work the saltpans. Another is said to have been found near Saldanha Bay.

December 17th.—Fine sunshine. The boat returns.

December 18th.—Boat again leaves with timber for the Island. Riebeeck goes with her, and arrives at 1 o'clock. He fixes the sites for the stables, and on another spot for a battery for the cannon to prevent any boats from landing in the sand bay. The present site has been indifferently selected. Astonished that the 489 sheep were thriving so well, there being no grass on the island, only a few bushes. It being the dry season the whole island is like a sand desert. In winter it yields grass, wild sorrel and spinage. The rabbits were increasing and tame, but no rock rabbits were found.

December 19th.—Riebeeck returns; 4 sheep bought from the Caapmen.

December 20th.—Fine sunshine; Riebeeck visits all the corn lands; one man was reaping, another sowing, another gathering into garners. The boat takes fuel and timber to the Island.

December 21st.—Dry S.E. weather. 22nd, do.

December 23rd.—Ditto. Arrival in the afternoon of the burgher councillors Steven Jansen of Wageningen and H. Boom of the Overtoom with the following petition:—

1.

Seditious request of the free-men, and what was replied.

They commence with using the word respect, but end with that of force.

The burgher councillors and undersigned freemen, no one excepted, respectfully shew to Commander Riebeeck and his Council, and according to our agreement request.

2.

Their papers read to them, from which it appears that

That we became free in order to support ourselves by agriculture, according to our title deeds.

They became free, subject to the conditions that they would submit to all rules existing and still to be made by the Government, subject to confirmation by the Directors, and whatever else the latter might further deem necessary, as stated in the title deeds, first signed by the Hon. van Goens, and the conditions made with him.

We forbade the trade by order of the Directors, and consequently also the barter of meat, in order to prevent the dearness of that food, and further because what the Hottentoo's bring is only meat of dead or sick scabby animals.

They were told that this was untrue, as they had received the finest young oxen, and the strongest cows, because more oxen were not at hand. Moreover they had the pick from the herd, until this morning, when Simon was allowed to select some in the veld, and a few were offered to Jan Reyniersz: Yea! so many and such good animals were given, that all, without exception, could manage well, in accordance with the amount of work to be done, &c.

Here they appear to be desirous of compelling the Company; they were told to leave the making of the law to those placed over them as

Vol. VI.

3.

Also that we should have a free trade in cattle, and no exception be made in the case of trade with the Hottentoo's, but now that we have slaved on the lands, the trade is forbidden us.

4.

Yea! what is more, we are not allowed to barter any meat, now or henceforth, which the Hottentoo's may bring.

5.

We were told when Hon. van Goens was here, that we should have the best cattle for our work, but we get the worst, the one has oxen as large as mastiffs, and another cadaverous looking cows to work with, which is impossible. And we must get on in that way until we receive others.

6.

A portion of our lands we have ploughed with these animals, and the harvest has been brought home by them. Every day now we must thresh

O

1658. — obedient subjects, and not to compel the Company to do one thing or another, as the latter had helped them with food out of hand (fed them with the hand) and supported them and raised them up from a low condition, at great expense and under serious difficulties ; or to threaten the said Company, as has at present been done pretty seditiously and rebelliously. There would be no objection to take over the corn at f10 per muid, but when it is threatened, that in case the Company will not give that price, they do not intend to cultivate any longer, &c., an attempt is made to use force, and this the Company cannot suffer from her subjects. Everyone is therefore warned to desist from this, lest the Company be compelled to take the necessary steps to put this movement down.

This refers to 2 or 3 muids of corn belonging to Herman Remajenne, according to his own statement exposed a whole year to the air, consequently neglected and spoilt, and only lately threshed, because he had been told that he would receive no stores from the depot, so that he was compelled to thresh. Because also the said corn had become rotten and unfit for bread, the Ensign had received permission to buy it for feeding his pigs, no one else wanting it.

Our reply to this threat was, that the well disposed should keep out of this combination, and not lay down the law to

to get our corn and barley clean. We therefore, before delivering our corn to the Company, wish to know what we are to get for it. Our price is f10 per muid. The barley will be averaged in course of time, as we cannot as yet fix a price ; we have no mind to sell the corn for less, and are determined not to cultivate one foot of land more. Please fix a price, and what is more, with black on white, by your full Council and our burgher councillors, that we may have something to depend upon, for we no longer believe in words. We are put off on all sides by fine words, but the deed is wanting.

7.

Ryck the Ensign tries to get the corn from us at f4 per muid, and so means to cheat us.

8.

We, however, do not intend to sell our corn for less than the sum stated.

those from whom they are to receive it, but obey the constituted authorities like upright, honest burghers.

1668.

As the Company cannot allow her subjects to prescribe laws or to fix prices on anything, a right belonging to her alone, and as she will take care that the well disposed will be protected, who are not treated or looked upon as slaves, it is questionable whether the ring-leaders in this conspiracy can be protected by her, because of their offences and evident mutiny. They should look out, as it is a serious matter to attempt to compel the Company to anything; and remember their free papers and title deeds, from which they will learn that they are to be loyal and obedient to the Company according to rules already existing, or still to be framed.

9.

Therefore fix a price, for as long as we do not know the price we shall not cultivate any land, as we do not desire to be slaves of the Company.

They were answered that this calculation has already long before been made by the Directors, who, as they insist upon knowing it, have decided that as they have the land for nothing, they ought to get on with less than f6 per muid, and are bound to deliver to the Company wheat and other grain as required. The price, however, has hitherto been communicated to no one, but a few days ago the Commander spoke as follows to the junior burgher councillor H. Boom: "Boomtjen, I wish for their own sakes that all the burghers were sure of f6 per muid, which would still pay them, but we shall try and get

10.

Just calculate what expenses we are annually to incur; the one has 3, the other 2 servants, &c. All have to be paid, so that if we do not get more for our wheat than f6 we can never come round.

more when the Hon. Commissioner arrives from India, and also by means of our letters to the Directors, as the Commander himself is allowed to carry on agriculture, and, like the burghers would like to get the highest price, and would be prepared to assist the burghers in this matter. What reason then can the latter have to bring compulsion to bear on a chief who is so favourably disposed towards them. Instead of being seditious they should show proper obedience, and this the well disposed should bear in mind. *However, as most of them cannot write and the seditious document does not agree with their better and good intentions, no blame will be attached to them, but only to the writer and 2 or 3 others of the most seditious conduct and language, who are afraid to act up to what they threaten and are well known to the Commander (these will be held responsible). These men have up to date entirely neglected themselves and loitered away their time, although they have received many advantages above others, &c.*

They were told to point out the oppressors, but they remained silent, and brought the charge home to no one, stating that they did not mean it in that way, as the document had not been read to them in those violent and strong terms.

When, after reading this threat, they were asked whether, if the fixed price of the Directors were made known to them, they would be willing, though

11. For instead of being helped we are oppressed.

12. Nevertheless, if we do not get a fixed price for our wheat, we shall bring back all our cattle and slaves and everything that we have in hand, for we do

in their own mind it might be too little or sufficient, to deliver their grain for it, and again plough as honest burghers, the Commander reiterating his often expressed promise to get for them the highest possible sum, and they replied, "Yes"; the letter of the Directors of 16th April, 1658, was read to show them what rates had been fixed for the grain when delivered to the Company, viz.: "We have authorized you to take over for the present the grain mentioned as follows:—A last of rice from f70 to f100, do. wheat from f70 to f100, do. rye from f50 to f70. Every last calculated at 3,600 lbs., smaller quantities in proportion." After having heard this they immediately lost heart, but the Commander gave them some courage by promising to lay before the Directors that they would not be able to come out with it, and to speak in their favour. This seemed to revive them somewhat.

not intend to remain in this 1658. condition.

13.

They were told that the sum required from the sureties by the Company had been communicated to them, and that most of them had been able to pay it off; whilst some of them wish to get out of the Company what they can, unwilling to cultivate wheat for payment, especially Harman's company, which, entrusted as we are with the care of the Company's means, we have been compelled to ask more sureties of, than we did in other cases, and which likewise we were compelled to warn that we would close the depots against them, though it has

We cannot get our stores unless we give a guarantee. This was not said before, that we were to give sureties for our food; we were only told that we were to pay in grain when it had been reaped. We therefore do not wish to be compelled any longer. We were forced to sow peas, barley, mealies, and beans if we did not wish to see the doors of the depot closed against us. There the lot is lying now, and we have not been able to get rid of it. If therefore we are to remain on our lands we decline to be ordered in our farming arrangements; in fact, in nothing.

1658. never yet been done, in order to
— urge them on to better efforts
in agriculture, in which Har-
man's company have been found
to be the most lazy. This is
evident from the fact that he
was the first who could pick the
most and best draught oxen,
but in two years time had only
ploughed 9 morgen of land. H.
Boom, on the contrary, had in
this, his first year, and with the
youngest and smallest oxen
among all the freemen, ploughed
more than 10 morgen, and so
nicely filled his granaries with
corn. Again, Jan Reyniersz
ploughed more than 11 morgen
with 6 little oxen; Steven
Jansz 15, and Otto van Vreede
16 morgen, all with less and
weaker animals than those of
Steven Remajenne. Caspar
Brinckman also did fairly well,
having ploughed 12 morgen
with less oxen than Herman
Remajenne, who cries out the
loudest because of his laziness,
for the threat that the depots
would be closed was simply
intended to urge them to do
their bounden duty. It was also
intended to compel Herman
Remajenne especially to put his
hand to the plough, as he is the
essence of laziness, and to thresh
his corn, left outside a whole
year exposed to rain and wind,
and so thoroughly spoilt that it
could not be delivered to the
Company, and is quite unfit for
food. On that account only the
ensign had been allowed to buy
it for his pigs. It was therefore
submitted to the consideration of
the industrious and well disposed
burghers, who are the best
esteemed among the number,
whether it was not necessary to

bring such lazy grasping fellows to their bearings with all the power at our command, and to compel them henceforth to take better care, that the Company for the reasons stated might not be too heavily taxed above the sums fixed as advances allowed to the freemen.

1658.

—

They were told that they themselves would be the cause of the danger, and remain so, as long as they, contrary to orders, allow the Hottentoo's to call at their houses to look about, &c. Likewise the redoubt *Courenhoop*, with 2 cannons, had been erected for their defence, at the cost of the Company, which had also commenced to clear the river *Liesbeeck*, and to make it so that no cattle could be driven across. They were also informed that all the Company's cattle would graze on the other side, and alongside of their corn lands, cared for by soldiers expressly ordered to look after them and the property, &c., of the freemen. This is something different from the statement that they are their own protectors, seeing that many, through sheer laziness, were not even inclined to look after their own cattle unless compelled to do so by us, though we had no wish to make use of compulsion were it not that it was highly necessary. In consequence they lost and allowed to be captured by the Hottentoo's, to the great inconvenience of the Company, a good many cattle. The Company was obliged to give them others to prevent them from becoming

14.

For we suffer great danger from the Hottentoo's, and any day or night may suffer great loss through them, which the Company cannot suffer, as we are the defenders of our country.

1668. impoverished, and likewise had great trouble with the Hottentoes, and to such an extent, that there had been war with them on that account. Thank God however there is again peace, and the Hottentoes have been brought to such subjection that they will not again venture to trouble any freemen or others, a great thing indeed for the Company, and no small source of security to the burghers. From the above it is evident what little danger the freemen have to dread, if only like all subjects they submit to the law. However if they refuse to do so, judicial steps may be taken against them, for which we are every moment prepared, &c.

They were told, that if anyone required what was necessary and which had been refused to him, he should speak, but all were silent except some of the most industrious, who declared that they had been fully satisfied. It was further proved to them, that hitherto they had been allowed freely to take from the forest their fuel, *and timber for the sides of their houses, garden sticks, &c.*, likewise salt, though no one on earth had ever promised them such a privilege, and certainly not for 12 years. It was only stipulated that they would have their lands free for 12 years without taxes, as is evident from the title deeds and the conditions made with the Hon. van Goens. And whereas the forests containing serviceable timber are most shamefully destroyed, and carpenters and

15.

It comes to this, that if we ask for a thing which we require, we expect to get it, because it has been promised to us. Moreover that which we ask, should be allowed us. We were told that we would get free fuel, salt and what else we require for 12 years: also our rations of meat, pork, rice, oil, vinegar, and the right of slaughter. Further that we could have our corn ground to our own satisfaction, &c. Therefore we wish the Commander to show us a forest whence timber may be fetched freely, so that everyone may make what is necessary.

It was also said when Hon. van Goens was here, that the freemen were to get sheep, though they wanted a thousand. They can get none now, unless they pay cash, whilst it is known to the gentlemen that

sawyers have been placed there to cut and prepare wood in the proper manner, that posterity may also have some wood for their benefit and not be at a loss ; they were ordered to obtain and buy from the free carpenters and sawyers their wood at a reasonable price, as the latter must make their living by it. Moreover the salt was taken from the pans in such a disorderly way, that the latter were handed over to freemen, who were bound to deliver salt clean and dry to the Company and the burghers at reasonable prices, and from whom the article can be obtained cheap and clean.

Meat and pork were only allowed them for 3 months by the Hon. Cuneus. We extended the time contrary to orders, though there is fish enough to be had, and every one can fish as freely as he likes. This is more than what the Hon. van Goens allowed them. According to the reasons now read rice is to be sold them for $\frac{1}{2}$ st. per lb., the price paid in India ; oil and vinegar they still fetch. This complaint is therefore all moonshine, like all the others, as we feed the Company's servants with garden produce in order to provide the freemen with rice, which is cheap food to them at $\frac{1}{4}$ st. per lb.

It is rather early to speak of grinding now, but these impatient people can't bide their time and wait and see what orders will be issued on this point. But the chief mover in this is Master Hendrik Boom, who would like to have everything in his own way, and

we have no money. It is always money, money, where no money is received. We have to pay heavy interest accordingly and therefore request that we freemen may be apportioned equally in cattle, as we cannot till with cows. It was told us that we would be helped, and if we are not, everything will be abandoned, the one with the other.

1668. — swallow what he can get, being never satisfied in spite of the benefits which he has enjoyed from the Company and what he has scraped and scratched together.

Regarding the thousands of sheep promised them by the Hon. van Goens, it must be confessed that there is some apparent truth in the statement, subject however to the condition that they would be given, when the Company was well provided and the freemen were prepared to pay for them. No cash however was required; only sureties were asked by the Directors, but because of the avarice of these freemen so much debt was incurred that the amount fixed was far exceeded, and we dared no longer to extend the credit in the interest of the Company. We know that they have and can get no money, except at high rates; they therefore promise so much and would even give more if there were only men willing to advance, and place an immovable yoke on their shoulders. This would certainly have been the case if we had not provided against it in time. Now, however, they have conducted themselves in such a way that no one trusts them any longer, &c.

Everyone has received as much cattle as he requires for his lands, and if all were to use them only for the purposes of agriculture, instead of working the oxen down by conveying reeds, bricks and fuel for others, they would have about double of what they require, and they know that that is the case. The

young cattle given them is above the number really required, whilst the Company was in need of it to provide the other freemen - agriculturists who offered themselves every day, and until this moment cannot be accommodated. It appears now that some of the present agriculturists would like to have the game in their own hands, and so create a monopoly, as even yesterday some of the strongest cows were given them for the yoke to the injury of the breeding stock, and to replace the oxen that were required. Now they say that they cannot work with the cows, though the Company as a rule used cows for her own culture and wagons, instead of oxen, which were generally given to the freemen as soon as they were fit for use. In the face of this they dare to say that they cannot farm with cows, adding the threat that if not otherwise helped (though as stated they have been abundantly helped) they would abandon everything, and leave it where it is. Where was such a complaint ever heard of from well disposed and honest burghers brought against the Company, which offers such a fine chance to secure prosperity, and from the beginning has supported all with everything, and on credit, for such a long time, accommodating everyone with what he wanted, &c.

16.

This is also untrue. The ensign keeps the largest number of pigs — others, as stated, declining to have any, because of the trouble. He only had five

For we see that the ensign takes the best milch cows out of the kraal, and also Hendrik, whilst it has never been laid down that they should have the

1658. cows, which he publicly leased in order to feed the young pigs on the butter milk, as we encouraged (all and) him to do. The five mentioned are the worst, and likewise animals which with great danger and inconvenience he had obtained for the Company far inland.

The cows in possession of Hendrik, the free tailor, are not his own, but those of the Commander, whose wife had given them in charge of said tailor's wife, with a servant paid at f16 per month by the Commander. Moreover the tailor's wife enjoys all the privileges, as the freemen know. They mention Hendrik, but they mean the Commander, and so kick against all lawful and proper authority vested in the head of the Government here. The best cattle, which they say have been promised them, they have taken away long ago; for the Commander purposely postponed cultivating his own lands until they had been helped. Only after this had been done, he chose the best for himself in 1658, after he had first selected the very best for the Company. There is therefore no reply to this, as the petitioners are telling no end of untruths, greatly to their dis honour. The freemen were likewise not promised that they only would be allowed to have, as agriculturists, milch cows and sheep, whilst all others would have to do without them. They ought on the contrary to have been grateful to the Commander who, on the 20th August last, with the Council, took the Resolution to their own personal advantage.

best pick. On the contrary we have been promised the best cattle. On that we became free.

This has also been allowed, after the third day, without a question being asked; but after the desertion of the burgher Martin Vlockaert, it was found necessary that the consent of the Commander should first be obtained, according to the conditions made with the burghers by the Hon. van Goens. However, it is evident that the freemen would very much like to be their own masters and over-rule the authorities placed over them, yea, even the Company. Care will however be taken, that the ringleaders of this seditious opposition are discovered. Some are already known; that is, if they do not endeavour henceforth to make up for their bad behaviour by good conduct.

Answered above.

We also request that we may be allowed to go on board when the ships have been three days in the roads, free and untrammelled, without being prosecuted by the Fiscal.

The upshot is, that as stated, we wish to know as soon as possible what we are going to get for our corn and barley.

They were told that the Company had forbidden this barter by letter read to them; this they were bound to submit to, as they do not obtain any good cattle from the Hottentoo's, and unnecessarily raise the price. Moreover by making expeditions inland they neglect their work on their farms, and for that alone they had been made free. They are also sufficiently provided with cattle, according to the confession of most of the subscribers to the request, excepting

We further request the liberty to barter cattle freely, so alone will we be able to get some oxen to get on with. The Company's kraal at present is full of cattle, but we can get none of them. We therefore request that the trade may be allowed us. Please give us an answer to this petition. We have nothing more to say and remain together, your obedient servants. Dated at the Cape, 22nd December, 1658. Signed by

Steven Jansen.

This mark X of H. Boom.

1668. — the lazy, disobedient Herman Remajenne and Rietveld, who wrote the request with too sharp a pen, and as we think in a form disliked by all the rest; also that they persuaded and compelled the others to sign, according to the confession of all the others, in a body, and afterwards, when they separately called on the Commander, declaring their innocence and begging pardon, &c.

This mark *V* of Simon in 't Veld.
 This mark :*f.* of Jan Reyniersz.
 This mark *F* of Otto Jansen Van Vrede.
 Caspar Brinkman.
 This mark *J.R.* of Jacob Rosen-daal.
 This mark *M* of Warmar Cornelisz.
 Do. of (*Anchor*) Pieter Vasagie.
 Frans Gerritsz.
 Herman Remajenne.
 Jan Martens.
 Johannes Rietveld of Breden-rode.
 Jacob Cloeten.

It also appeared that no one had still in his possession a single one of the sheep bartered whilst the trade was free, but that the whole had been neglected; excepting Boom, Jansen, and Vrede; the rest had eaten what they had obtained.

All these answers given by us were publicly read three times in the Council room to the petitioners, plainly and carefully. Upon this they confessed their faults, and requested that the Commander would not be too much offended. They had made a mistake, and now saw that the Commander had all along worked in their favour and endeavoured in every way to help them on their legs, &c. The Commander replied that he could overlook the matter as regarded himself, but that the Company would take it amiss that they had endeavoured to compel her to do certain things; in her case they had managed to run against the wall, and the Commander wished that they had taken better counsel. They still had time to do so, and should henceforth do their best with the plough; that the answer of the Hon. Van Goens, given to the Council in reply to the first memorial of the freemen was ready for them, viz., that those who will not cultivate for themselves will be compelled to do so for the Company. Besides, other freemen are ready to take the ground, should it be confiscated because of the rebellious conduct of the present owners. They are even prepared to pay rent. Everyone is therefore warned to take care of what he is about; the Commander will do his best for them with the Commissioner soon expected from India, and in his letters to the Directors, that the price may be increased somewhat, only let the plough go on and the threshing floor be kept warm. But he would also see that no shirking of work shall take place on the Company's or his *vn* lands. Everyone's courage seemed to revive, and all promised

to do their best, and each received a few goblets of wine from the Commander. Peace and quiet were restored, and everyone went home with a smiling face, the one chaffing the other, because everyone had got his due, &c.

December 24th.—New moon. Heavy S.E.

December 25th.—Christmas. Hot, dry weather.

December 26th.—N. breeze. The boat returns from Robben Island, having in the S.E. lost both its lee-boards.

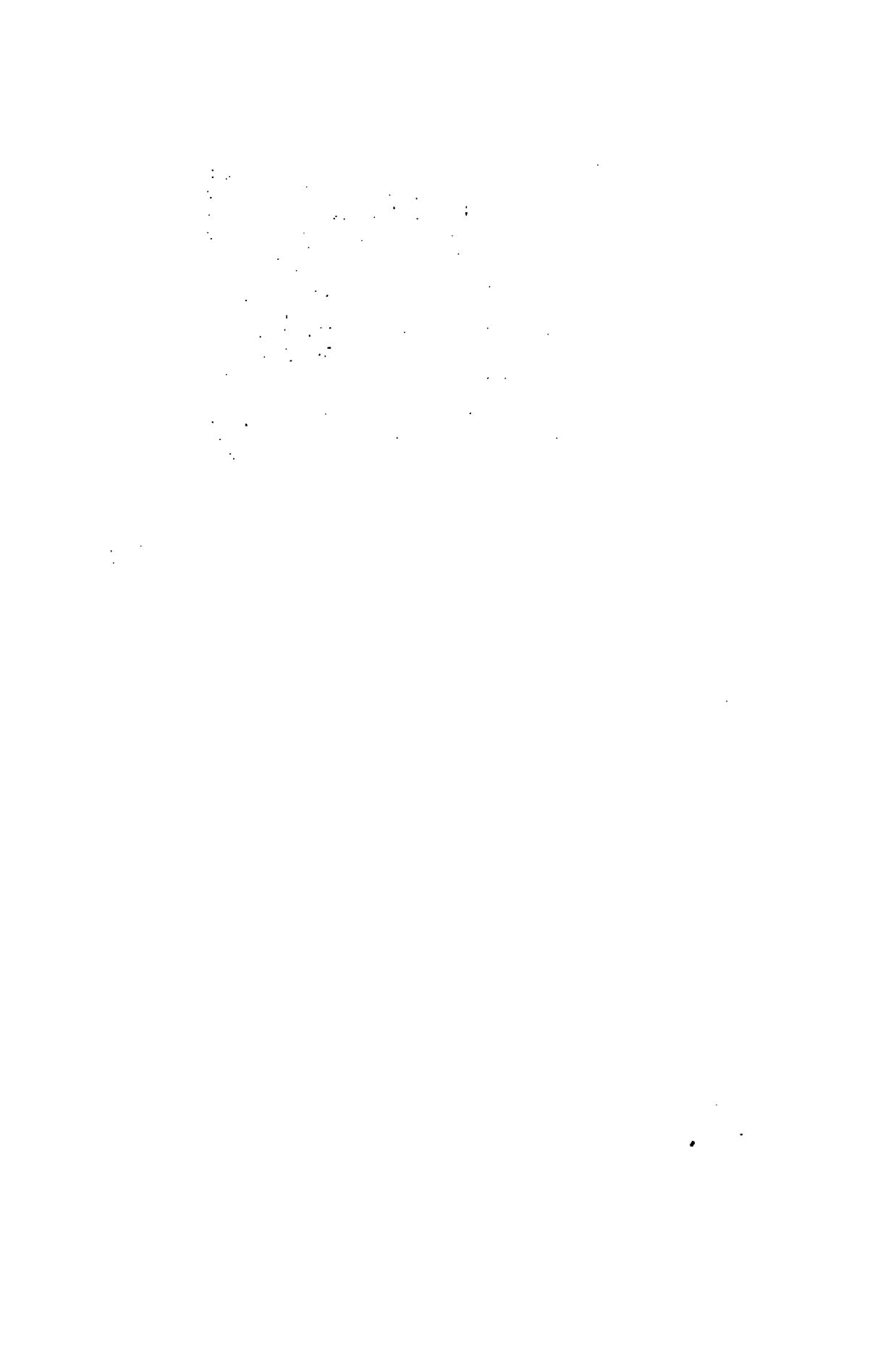
December 27th.—Hot as yesterday. The boat laden with fuel and timber, 5 geese and 1 muid oats for the island, to be sown there for the geese, which greatly injure the gardens here, and can with difficulty be protected from the wild animals. *A letter to Overhagen* informs him of what is sent, and he is advised to take good care of the geese, and would receive a hollow tree to serve as a trough; and some ducks would also be sent. The boat leaves in the evening.

To-day the freemen and their arms, cattle, &c., were inspected. The following was found:—

	Morgen.	Bulls.	Draught oxen.	Draught cows.	Milch cows.	Heifers.	Calves.	Dutch sheep.	Cape sheep.	Bengal sheep.	Pigs.
The Commander	101½		24		12		6	10	15	28	
4 Saldanha freemen on the island, not farmers						2 vessels			7		
J. Reyniersz ..	16½	6	2	10	3	4	6	6	2		
H. Boom ..	40	1 old	10		11	2	7	6	37		23
Stevens Company	26½		10		6		5	2	47		
Vreden's ..	26½	1	10		6		5	4	58		
Harmen's ..	26½	yo'ng					4				
Vreelandts ..	25½	do.	5	5	6				63		
Brinkman's ..	26½	do.	4	4	6		1				
Vasagies ..	30		10		6		5		50		
Simon in 't veld ..	30				6		4				
Wouter Cornelisz, free Miller ..		nothing									
Hendrik van Surwarden, free tailor ..		nothing, but he has a garden to feed									8
The Ensign ..		nothing, but he also has a garden to feed									41
Total ..	350½	4	89	21	75	5	44	41	279	28	80

Total of cattle 238, and sheep 348. Everyone has fowls, but these are not counted. Turkeys and geese do not as yet seem to thrive.

December 28th.—Cloudy, and cooler weather. Riebeeck visits the saltpans, where fine salt was in abundance. The free Saldanhars had been shown the wrong spots by the other freemen; Riebeeck told them how to set to work as he had seen it done in the West Indian and Caribbean Islands. If they carry out his instructions, a good quantity could be shipped to Batavia as desired by Van Goens.







Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 013 612 564

DT
821
C2
v. 6

STANFORD UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES
CECIL H. GREEN LIBRARY
STANFORD, CALIFORNIA 94305-6004
(415) 723-1493

All books may be recalled after 7 days

DATE DUE

MAR 04 1991
REFS

